ARABIC VERBS

AND ESSENTIAL GRAMMAR

John Mace

TEACH YOURSELF BOOKS

CONTENTS

Introduction

Aim of this book 1

How to use this book 1

Form and use of the Arabic verb

1 General 3

2 Sentences without verbs 3

3 Roots and radicals 4

4 Classes 4

5 Principal parts 5

6 Measures 6

7 Government: Intransitive, complemented, transitive and prepositional verbs 6

8 Complemented verbs 8

9 Forms 9

10 Form I 10

11 Form IQ 10

12 Form II 11

13 Form IIQ 11

14 Form III 11

15 Form IV 12

16 Form V 12

17 Form VI 13

18 Form VII 13

19 Form VIII 14

20 Form IX 15

21 Form X 15

22 Tenses 16

23 Perfect indicative tense ('Perfect') 16

24 Pluperfect tense 18

25 Imperfect indicative tense ('Imperfect') 18

26 Continuous perfect tense 21

27 Agreement 21

28 Nominal and verbal sentences 22

29 Imperfect subjunctive tense ('Subjunctive') 24
30 Imperfect jussive tense ('Jussive') 26
31 Imperative mood ('Imperative') 27
32 Participles 28
33 Verbal nouns 30
34 Auxiliary verbs 31
35 Questions 32
36 Indirect speech 32
37 Expressions of circumstance 33
38 Conditional sentences 34
39 Passive voice ('Passive') 35
40 Indirect expressions with the verbal noun 37

Verb tables
Sound verbs, **1-23** 39
Hamzated verbs, **24-57** 63
Doubled verbs, **58-70** 99
Assimilated verbs, **71-87** 115
Hollow verbs, **88-113** 133
Defective verbs, **114-126** 161
Doubly weak verbs, **127-152** 177

Verb list 205

Appendix A - Nouns, adjectives and adverbs
1 Nouns and adjectives - general 231
2 Gender 231
3 Number 232
4 Relative and abstract nouns 233
5 Indefinite nouns and adjectives; Direct object; Cases 233
6 Definite article 234
7 Dual 235
8 Sound plural 235
9 Broken plural 237
10 Diptotes 238
11 Demonstrative adjectives 239

12 Possessive adjectives 240
13 Construct 242
14 Collective nouns 244
15 Nouns of activity, person, place and instrument 245
16 All, every, some, other, any 245
17 Comparison of adjectives 246
18 Colours and physical defects 248
19 Un-, in-, im-, non- 249
20 There is no ... 249
21 Compound adjectives 250
22 '*ab* etc. 250
23 Defective nouns 251
24 Improper agreement 251
25 Adverbs - general 252
26 Derivation of adverbs 252
27 Negation of adverbs 253
28 Comparison of adverbs 253
29 Absolute object 254

Appendix B - Pronouns and prepositions
1 Pronouns - general 255
2 Subject pronouns 255
3 Direct object pronouns 256
4 Demonstrative pronouns 257
5 Prepositions - general 258
6 Pronouns after prepositions 259
7 To have 260
8 Relative pronouns 261
9 Interrogative pronouns 262
10 Independent object pronouns 263
11 Indefinite pronouns 264
12 An exceptional preposition 264

Appendix C - Numbers
1 General 267
2 Simplified cardinal numbers 1 to 10 267

3	Simplified cardinal numbers 11 to 99	268
4	Simplified cardinal numbers above 99	269
5	Formal cardinal numbers - general	270
6	Formal cardinal numbers 1 to 10	270
7	Formal cardinal numbers 11 to 99	271
8	Formal cardinal numbers above 99	272
9	Ordinal numbers 1st to 10th	273
10	Ordinal numbers 11th to 19th	273
11	Ordinal numbers above 19th	273
12	Fractions	274
13	'I', 'II', 'III' etc.	274
14	Adverbial numbers	274
15	Clock	275
16	Calendar	275

INTRODUCTION

Aim of this book

The main aim of this book is to help students of Modern Standard Arabic in that part of the language usually found the most difficult, namely the verbs. The book also summarises other essential elements of grammar.

How to use this book

The **introductory chapter** explains the verb's structure and working.

The **verb tables**, numbered **1** to **152**, show all common verb patterns, arranged first by class and sub-class and then by Form, I to X. These tables are listed in the contents.

The **verb list** (pp. 206-230) shows alphabetically, by the the 3rd person masculine singular of the perfect tense of the verb (not the root):

- the 152 verbs whose full conjugation is shown in the tables indicated,
- 1095 further verbs, with a reference showing where to find the identical conjugation in the tables.

The text preceding the verb list shows how it is used. Using the list and the tables, you can find the conjugation, meaning and use of almost any common verb. The same system of reference numbers is used throughout.

The **three appendices** explain other essential grammar.

The transliteration is that of the Encyclopedia of Islam, with some modifications.

Page 2 shows the layout of the information given in each of the tables. The explanations are superimposed, in frames, on a typical table (no. **23**).

The abbreviations and symbols used in this book are:

acc.	accusative	intr.	intransitive	s.	singular
adj.	adjective	m	masculine	أ	complemented verb
conj.	conjunction	neg.	negative	أَنْ أن	+ subjunctive verb
def.	definite	nom.	nominative	ه	direct person-object
f.	feminine	pers.	person	هـ	direct thing-object
gen.	genitive	pl., ج	plural	I-X	Form I to X
inan.	inanimate	prep.	preposition(al)	α	used as auxiliary verb
indef.	indefinite	Q	quadriliteral	°	impersonal passive

For the meaning of the terms used, see the introductory chapter, pp. 3-37.

Layout of typical verb-table

No.	Form	Principal parts, meaning, government	Root
23	X	اِسْتَقْبَلَ يَسْتَقْبِلُ istaqbala yastaqbilu to receive ه، ه	قبل

ACTIVE

Imperfect					Perfect
نَسْتَقْبِلُ		أَسْتَقْبِلُ		اِسْتَقْبَلْنَا	اِسْتَقْبَلْتُ
تَسْتَقْبِلُونَ	تَسْتَقْبِلانِ	تَسْتَقْبِلُ		اِسْتَقْبَلْتُمْ	اِسْتَقْبَلْتُمَا	اِسْتَقْبَلْتَ
تَسْتَقْبِلْنَ						اِسْتَقْبَلْتِ
يَسْتَقْبِلُونَ						اِسْتَقْبَلَ
يَسْتَقْبِلْنَ						اِسْتَقْبَلَتْ
نَسْتَقْبِلْ					Subjunctive
تَسْتَقْبِلُوا	تَسْتَقْبِلا	تَسْتَقْبِلُ	تَسْتَقْبِلُوا	تَسْتَقْبِلا	تَسْتَقْبِلَ
تَسْتَقْبِلْنَ	تَسْتَقْبِلا	تَسْتَقْبِلِي	تَسْتَقْبِلْنَ	تَسْتَقْبِلا	تَسْتَقْبِلِي
يَسْتَقْبِلُوا	يَسْتَقْبِلا	يَسْتَقْبِلْ	يَسْتَقْبِلُوا	يَسْتَقْبِلا	يَسْتَقْبِلَ
يَسْتَقْبِلْنَ	تَسْتَقْبِلا	تَسْتَقْبِلْ	يَسْتَقْبِلْنَ	تَسْتَقْبِلا	تَسْتَقْبِلَ

4 active tenses:	Plural	Dual	Singular
1st person m./f.		(no form)	
2nd person m. 2nd person f.			
3rd person m. 3rd person f.			

Verbal Noun istiqbāl اِسْتِقْبَال — singular, uninflected

Participle mustaqbil مُسْتَقْبِل — masculine singular, uninflected

Imperative istaqbil اِسْتَقْبِلْ — m. s.

Imperative:	Pl.	Dual	S.
2nd pers. m. 2nd pers. f.			

PASSIVE Imperfect yustaqbalu يُسْتَقْبَلُ — 3rd pers. m. sing.

Perfect ustuqbila اُسْتُقْبِلَ — 3rd pers. m. sing.

Participle mustaqbal مُسْتَقْبَل — m. s., uninflected

I قَبِلَ يَقْبَلُ (قَبُولٌ) to accept ه، ه\ب 4: III قَابَلَ to face ه، ه 9

IV أَقْبَلَ to ap

VIII اِقْتَبَلَ 14

Verbs with the same root in other forms (I-X); with verbal noun, in parentheses, for I and IQ

قَبْلَ before (prep.) قَبْلَ أَنْ before (conj.) قَبْلاً beforehand

قَبُول\قُبُول acc

Words and expressions with the same root

emuneration

إِقْبَال approach قَبِيلَة ج قَبَائِل tribe مُقْبِل next

FORM AND USE OF THE ARABIC VERB

1. General

In Arabic as in English, a verb is that word or group of words which states what action takes or took place, or what situation exists or existed:

أَرْسَلْتُ رِسَالَةً أَمْسِ. I sent a letter yesterday.

مَاذَا قَالَ لَكَ؟ What did he tell you?

أُكْتُبْ اسْمَكَ هُنَا. Write your name here.

تَظْهَرُ المَعْلُومَاتُ مُفِيدَةً. The information seems useful.

2. Sentences without verbs

The simplest Arabic sentences, however, have no verb at all. Examine:

أَنَا مَرِيضٌ. I am ill.

مُدِيرُنَا مَسْؤُولٌ. Our director is responsible.

هَلْ هُمُ الخُبَرَاءُ؟ Are they are the experts?

الوَثِيقَةُ هُنَا\هُنَاكَ. The document is here / there.

مَكْتَبَتُنَا فِي المَدْرَسَةِ. Our library is in the school.

مَكْتَبِي فِي البَلَدِ. My office is in town.

In all these sentences, the verb 'to be' in present time ('am / is / are') is implied, not stated, in Arabic. The sentence consists of a subject ('I, Our director, They' etc.) and a complement identifying the subject ('the experts'), describing it ('ill') or situating it ('here', 'in town'). (For more about the complement, see paras. 7 and 8 below.)

We omit the verb 'to be' also in sentences which in English begin 'Here is / are ...', 'There is / are ...' or 'Where is / are ...?'. Note the word-order with 'There is / are ...':

فِي المَدْرَسَةِ مَكْتَبَةٌ. There is a library in the school. ('In the school a library.')

أَيْنَ مَكْتَبُكَ؟ Where is your office?

All such sentences must be present in time, and affirmative. For their past

or future equivalents, affirmative or negative ('I was (not) / will (not) be' etc.), we use a form of the verb كان يكون, and for the present negative equivalents ('I am not' etc.) we use the verb ليس. Both these verbs are explained in para. 8 below.

3. Roots and radicals

The simplest form of the verb is the **root**. This is not a word; it is the theoretical base of the verb, and the form under which the verb is listed in the Arabic part of a dictionary. An example of a root is كتب.

Most Arabic roots are triliteral, i.e. they have three letters, known as **radicals**. The radicals of the root كتب are ك ت ب , called respectively the initial, middle and final radical.

A few roots (some of which are important) are quadriliteral, i.e. having four radicals, referred to as first, second, third and fourth radicals. An example of a quadriliteral root is ترجم , with radicals ت ر ج م. In this book, quadriliteral verbs are marked Q.

All reference to verbs in this book is to triliteral verbs unless otherwise stated.

In the Arabic part of a dictionary, all words (not only verbs) based on or derived from a root are listed alphabetically by the root, not by the word. Thus, the verb form علموا 'they knew', the participle معلوم 'known' and the noun تعليم 'tuition' are all listed not under their first letter but under their root علم, preceding the next root علن and all its forms and derivatives. We must therefore know how to identify the root in order to find an unknown word.

Any letter of the alphabet, and ء, can be a radical. In addition, certain letters (and ء) are used to build the forms and derivatives. They are those found in the mnemonic phrase سَأَلْتَمُونِي إِيَّاهُ 'you asked me it', i.e. ا ء ت س ل م ن ه(ة) و ي.

4. Classes

Arabic roots (and hence the verbs derived from them) are grouped in *classes*, according to the nature of their radicals. There are four classes of verb: *sound, hamzated, doubled* and *weak*. The weak class has four sub-classes: *assimilated, hollow, defective* and *doubly weak*. This makes

seven groups in all. They are described briefly below: more detailed information can be found in the preamble to each set of tables.

- **Sound**. The sound class is the most regular class. The radicals of a sound root can be any letter of the alphabet except ا , و or ي . ء is also excluded. The radicals are all different, and are 'stable', i.e. they never change. A typical sound root is كتب . All quadriliteral roots are conjugated like sound verbs; a typical quadriliteral root is ترجم .

- **Hamzated**. Hamzated roots have ء as one of their radicals. For most of the conjugation, the ء is stable and the verb follows the sound pattern. In a few forms, the ء may, however, change to another letter or may even disappear. In the dictionary, ء (however written) is usually listed with ا . Examples of hamzated roots are أكل (initial ء), سأل (middle ء) and قرأ (final ء).

- **Doubled**. Doubled verbs have identical sound middle and final radicals. A typical doubled root is مرّ . The initial radical is almost always sound.

- **Weak**. Weak verbs are those with one or more weak letters (و or ي) as radicals. There are four sub-classes:
  - **Assimilated**. Assimilated verbs have *initial* و or (much more rarely) ي , and two sound radicals or middle ء and a sound final radical. Typical doubled roots are يبس , وصل .
  - **Hollow**. Hollow verbs have *middle* و or ي and two sound radicals, or initial ء and a sound final radical. Typical hollow roots are صير , قول .
  - **Defective**. Defective verbs have *final* و or ي and two sound radicals. Typical roots are رجو , رمي .
  - **Doubly Weak**. Doubly weak verbs have two weak radicals, و , ي or ء . Typical doubly weak roots are ولي , سوى , أتي , رأي , سوء .

5. Principal parts

In most European languages we identify a verb by its infinitive: '(to) write', 'schreiben', 'écrire'. This is the form which we find in the dictionary. Arabic has no infinitive; instead, verbs are identified by one or both of two forms which we can call 'principal parts'. The first principal part is the 3rd pers. m. s. of the 'perfect' (i.e. past) tense; the

second principal part is the corresponding person of the 'imperfect' (i.e. present) tense. Thus in English we quote either or both of the principal parts كَتَبَ يَكْتُبُ as 'to write', although their meaning when used in a sentence is 'he wrote, he writes'.

6. Measures

The comparatively regular nature of Arabic word-patterns allows us to use formulæ or 'measures' for the different forms.

Imagine that the English verb 'write' has a root 'writ-'; we could then say that we add '-er' (writer) to denote the doer of the action and '-ing' (writing) to describe the doer; we change the 'i' to 'o' and add '-e' (wrote) to make the past tense; and so on. The patterns '-er', -ing' and 'o-e' could be described as 'measures'. This is an isolated and far-fetched illustration, not very helpful for a student of the English verb. But in Arabic the principle not only works; it is fundamental to the whole verb system.

The Arabs illustrate their measures with the use of the triliteral root فعل (for quadriliteral roots, فعلل). Thus, when we learn that verbs like كتب 'to write' have the measures:

principal parts	فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ	('to ...')	
active participle	فَاعِل	('-ing')	(participles are explained fully in para. 32 below)
passive participle	مَفْعُول	('-en')	

we can substitute real radicals, e.g. ك ت ب , for the theoretical radicals ف ع ل in each measure, giving us: كَتَبَ يَكْتُبُ 'to write', كَاتِب 'writing' and مَكْتُوب 'written'. And so on for other parts of the verb.

Measures are used not only for verbs but for all words derived from a triliteral or quadriliteral root.

7. Government: Intransitive, complemented, transitive and prepositional verbs

Verbs can be of four kinds in Arabic, depending on their use:

- **Intransitive**. An intransitive verb concerns only its subject. No object (i.e. no other party) is concerned or affected:

  مَاتَ. He died. جَاءُوا أَمْسِ. They came yesterday.

  In the tables and the verb list, intransitive verbs are marked intr.

where this is not obvious from the meaning.

- **Complemented**. A complemented verb also concerns only its subject, i.e. it has no object; but it introduces a statement (the 'complement') about the subject. When the complement is a noun or adjective, it stands in the *accusative* case (see Appendix A, para. 5 for the cases):

  يَظْهَر مَرِيضًا. He seems ill. (adjective complement, accusative case)

  كَانُوا طُلَّابًا. They were students. (noun complement, accusative)

  Complemented verbs are all verbs of being, becoming or seeming. They are marked ً in the tables and the verb list. See also para. 8 below.

- **Transitive**. A transitive verb directly affects a second party, known as the *direct object*. A direct object noun is in the *accusative case*; a direct object pronoun is suffixed (i.e. attached) to the verb:

  يَفْهَم المُشْكِلَة. He understands the problem.

  زَارُوا سَفِيراً. They visited an ambassador.

  مَا وَجَدْتُهُ. I did not find him / it.

  In the tables and the verb list, transitive verbs are marked ه to show a direct person-object and هـ to show a direct thing-object.

- **Prepositional**. A prepositional verb indirectly affects a second party, known as the *prepositional object*. The prepositional object follows the appropriate preposition, as a suffix if it is a pronoun:

  وَافَقْنَا عَلَى الاقْتِرَاح. We agreed to the proposal.

  اسْتَغْنَيْنَا عَنْهُ. We did without him / it.

  In the tables and verb list, prepositional verbs are marked with the appropriate preposition, e.g. عن.

A verb can be of more than one kind at the same time:

طَلَب مِنِّي شَرْحًا. He demanded an explanation of me. (prepositional for the person-object, transitive for the thing-object,)

In the tables and verb list, such a verb is marked first for the person and second for the thing, e.g. من، هـ.

Similary, a verb can be doubly transitive, i.e. have two direct objects:

سَأَلَني اسْمِي. He asked me my name. (direct person- and thing-objects)
In the tables and verb list, such a verb is marked first for the person and second for the thing, e.g. ه، هـ.
A few verbs may be either transitive or prepositional:

يَخَافُهُ\يَخَاف منْهُ. He fears it / is afraid of it.

In the tables and verb list, such verbs are marked with the direct object and the preposition as alternatives, e.g. ه\من، هـ\من.

Be careful with an object which, in English, looks like a direct object but in fact is indirect or prepositional. In Arabic a prepositional object always has its preposition, whereas in English we may sometimes omit the preposition 'to' or 'for':

أَرْسَلُوا لَنَا التَّقْرِير. They sent ('to') us the report.
أَجِب لِي عَلَى هَذِهِ الرِّسَالَة. Answer ('for') me this letter.

The general term for the relationship of a verb to its object or complement, if any, is called in grammar its *government*. An Arabic verb does not necessarily have the same government as its nearest English equivalent:

أَعْطَوْنَا التَّقْرِير. They gave us the report. (in English, prepositional for the person ['*to* us', see above], and transitive for the thing; in Arabic, doubly transitive, ه، هـ)

نَشُكّ فِي صِحَّة الأَرْقَام. We doubt the soundness of the figures. (in English, transitive; in Arabic, prepositional, في)

8. Complemented verbs

In para. 7 above we spoke of 'complemented' verbs. These are verbs of being, becoming or seeming, and they are followed not by an object but by a complement stating something about the subject: 'We were pleased', 'He became president', 'It seems difficult'. Useful complemented verbs are:

كَانَ يَكُونُ	to be	بَقِيَ يَبْقَى	to remain
لَيْسَ	not to be	ظَلَّ يَظَلُّ	to become, to remain
صَارَ يَصِيرُ	to become	عَادَ يَعُودُ	to be again

ظَهَرَ يَظْهَرُ to seem زَالَ يَزَالُ to be no longer, to cease being

When the complement of such a verb is a noun or adjective, as in the English examples given above, that complement stands in the *accusative* case in Arabic (see Appendix A, para. 5 for the cases):

كَانَ مَرِيضًا. He was ill. لَيْسُوا مُعَلِّمِينَ. They are not teachers.

يَظْهَرُ بَسِيطًا. It seems easy. بَقِيَتْ فَقِيرَةً. She remained poor.

عَادُوا طُلَّابًا. They were students again.

The verbs كان, ليس and زال deserve some comment:

- كان يكون 'to be', although regular in form, is irregular in its use:
  - In present affirmative meaning ('am, is, are'), it is omitted altogether; see para. 2 above.
  - Its present negative meaning ('I am not' etc.) is expressed with another verb, ليس (listed above), which exists only in the perfect tense*, but with present meaning:

    لَيْسَ هُنَاكَ. He is not there.
  - The imperfect tense* of كان usually has future meaning:

    عِنْدَ الإِشَارَةِ تَكُونُ السَّاعَةُ ... At the tone the time ('hour') will be ...

  * See paras. 23 and 25 below for tenses. The 'perfect' refers mainly to past time, the 'imperfect' refers mainly to present or future time.
- زال in the negative is commonly used to mean 'still to be':

  لاَ يَزَالُ\مَا زَالَ مُتَأَسِّفًا. He is / was still sorry.

Most complemented verbs can also be used as *auxiliary* verbs; see para. 34 below.

9. Forms

The verbs so far quoted (كَتَبَ , سَأَلَ , مَرَّ etc.) are all in the basic form, called Form I. There are also the so-called 'increased forms', derived from Form I. Triliteral verbs exist in fifteen forms altogether, but modern Arabic uses only Form I and nine increased forms, II to X. Similarly, quadriliteral verbs exist in Forms IQ to IVQ, but only IQ and IIQ are at all common. This book covers triliteral Forms I to X and quadriliteral Forms IQ and IIQ. The use of Roman numerals in this context is a Western device: the Arabs refer to a form by the appropriate measure of the first

principal part of the root فعل : فَعَلَ is Form I, فَعَّلَ is Form II, etc. For quadriliteral verbs, the artificial root فعلل is similarly used.

No root is found in all forms; indeed, some roots are not found in Form I. Although verb forms (basic and increased) are built on regular formulæ, we may use only existing forms; it is not permitted to invent our own.

10. Form I

Form I is the basic or simplest form, usually with the simplest meaning of the root. Form I verbs are transitive, intransitive, prepositional or complemented, depending on the verb. Form I has the following measures:

- First principal part (active) فَعَلَ\فَعُلَ\فَعِلَ
- Second Principal Part (active) يَفْعَلُ\يَفْعُلُ\يَفْعِلُ
- Imperative* (m. s.) اِفْعَلْ\اُفْعُلْ\اِفْعِلْ
- Participles** (m. s., active / passive***) فَاعِل\مَفْعُول
- Verbal noun**** (irregular)

These are the sound verb measures. Other classes have variants of them.

Examples: عَرَفَ يَعْرِفُ I, to know شَرِبَ يَشْرَبُ I, to drink
قَرَأَ يَقْرَأُ I, to read قَالَ يَقُولُ I, to say

* see para. 31 below. ** see para. 32 below.
*** see para. 39 below. **** see para. 33 below.

11. Form IQ

Form IQ is the basic or simplest form of the quadriliteral verbs, usually with the simplest meaning of the root. Form IQ verbs are transitive, intransitive or prepositional, depending on the verb. Form IQ has the following measures:

- Principal parts (active) فَعْلَلَ يُفَعْلِلُ
- Imperative (m. s.) فَعْلِلْ
- Participles (m. s., active / passive) مُفَعْلِل\مُفَعْلَل
- Verbal noun (irregular)

These measures, which greatly resemble those of Form II triliteral (see para. 12 below), apply to all quadriliteral verbs.

Examples:

تَرْجَمَ يُتَرْجِمُ IQ, to translate سَيْطَرَ يُسَيْطِرُ على IQ, to dominate

12. Form II

Form II verbs are mostly transitive. They often give the intensive or causative meaning (i.e. making the direct object perform the action). In Form II the middle radical is doubled. Form II has the following measures:

- Principal parts (active) فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ
- Imperative (m. s.) فَعِّلْ
- Participles (m. s., active / passive) مُفَعِّل\مُفَعَّل
- Verbal noun (in order of frequency) تَفْعِيل\تَفْعِلَة\تَفْعَال

These are the measures for verbs with a sound final radical (i.e. sound, hamzated, doubled, assimilated, hollow). Verbs with a weak final radical (i.e. defective, doubly weak) have variants of them.

Examples: عَلَّمَ يُعَلِّمُ II, to teach كَرَّرَ يُكَرِّرُ I, to repeat

مَوَّلَ يُمَوِّلُ I, to finance رَبَّى يُرَبِّي I, to educate

13. Form IIQ

Form IIQ resembles both in shape and in meaning Form V triliteral (see para. 16 below); it has the prefix تَـ... before the first radical in the first principal part. Note that, unlike Form IQ, it has ّ... before the fourth radical in both principal parts. Form IIQ has the following measures:

- Principal parts (active) تَفَعْلَلَ يَتَفَعْلَلُ
- Imperative (m. s.) تَفَعْلَلْ
- Participles (m. s., active / passive) مُتَفَعْلِل\مُتَفَعْلَل
- Verbal noun تَفَعْلُل

These measures apply to all quadriliteral verbs.

Example: تَسَلْسَلَ يَتَسَلْسَلُ IIQ, to form a series

14. Form III

Form III verbs often make a transitive verb from a Form I prepositional verb. Form III is derived exactly like Form II except that it has ...ا... after the initial radical instead of a doubled middle radical; also the measures for the verbal noun are different. Form III has the following measures:

- Principal parts (active) فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ
- Imperative (m. s.) فَاعِلْ
- Participles (m. s., active / passive) مُفَاعِل\مُفَاعَل
- Verbal noun (in order of frequency) مُفَاعَلَة\فِعَال

These are the measures for verbs with a sound final radical (i.e. sound, hamzated, doubled, assimilated, hollow). Verbs with a weak final radical (i.e. defective, doubly weak) have variants of them.

Examples: كَاتَبَ يُكَاتِبُ III, to write to سَاءَلَ يُسَائِلُ III, to question
وَافَقَ يُوَافِقُ III, to agree with حَاوَلَ يُحَاوِلُ III, to try

15. Form IV

Form IV verbs are mostly transitive; they often give the causative meaning of Form I. Form IV has ...أ (with *hamzat al-qaṭ'*, i. e. a glottal stop) before the initial radical in the first principal part. Form IV has the following measures:

- Principal parts (active) أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ
- Imperative (m. s.) أَفْعِلْ
- Participles (m. s., active / passive) مُفْعِل\مُفْعَل
- Verbal noun إِفْعَال

These are the measures for sound verbs. Verbs of other classes have variants of them.

Examples: أَرْسَلَ يُرْسِلُ IV, to send أَنْشَأَ يُنْشِئُ IV, to construct
أَوْجَبَ يُوجِبُ IV, to compel أَقَامَ يُقِيمُ IV, to organise

16. Form V

Form V verbs are mostly intransitive; they often give the reflexive ('oneself') or passive meaning of Form II verbs, which they somewhat resemble. Form V has the prefix تَـ... before the initial radical in the first principal part, and a doubled middle radical. Note that, unlike Form II, it has ...َ after the doubled middle radical in both principal parts. Form V has the following measures:

- Principal parts (active) تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ
- Imperative (m. s.) تَفَعَّلْ

- Participles (m. s., active / passive) مُتَفَعِّل\مُتَفَعَّل
- Verbal noun تَفَعُّل

These are the measures for verbs with a sound final radical (i.e. sound, hamzated, doubled, assimilated, hollow). Verbs with a weak final radical (i.e. defective, doubly weak) have variants of them.

Examples: تَعَلَّمَ يَتَعَلَّمُ V, to learn تَنَبَّأَ يَتَنَبَّأُ ب V, to forecast

تَصَوَّرَ يَتَصَوَّرُ V, to imagine تَوَلَّى يَتَوَلَّى V, to be appointed

17. Form VI

Form VI verbs are mostly intransitive; they often give the reciprocal meaning ('each other') of Form III verbs, which they somewhat resemble. Form VI has the prefix ...تَـ before the initial radical in the first principal part, and ...ا... after the initial radical. Note that, unlike Form III, it has ...َ after the middle radical in both principal parts. Form VI has the following measures:

- Principal parts (active) تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ
- Imperative (m. s.) تَفَاعَلْ
- Participles (m. s., active / passive) مُتَفَاعِل\مُتَفَاعَل
- Verbal noun تَفَاعُل

These are the measures for verbs with a sound final radical (i.e. sound, hamzated, doubled, assimilated, hollow). Verbs with a weak final radical (i.e. defective, doubly weak) have variants of them.

Examples: تَكَاتَبَ يَتَكَاتَبُ VI, to write to each other

تَعَاوَنَ يَتَعَاوَنُ VI, to cooperate

18. Form VII

Form VII verbs are all intransitive; they often give the passive meaning of Form I. Form VII has the prefix *...اِنْـ before the initial radical in the first principal part; note that the first syllable of any part of a Form VII verb never carries the stress in pronunciation. Form VII has the following measures:

- Principal parts (active) اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ
- Imperative (m. s.) اِنْفَعِلْ

- Participles (m. s., active / passive) مُنْفَعِل\مُنْفَعَل**
- Verbal noun اِنْفِعَال

These are the measures for sound verbs. Verbs of other classes have variants of them.

Examples: اِنْفَجَرَ يَنْفَجِرُ VII, to explode اِنْحَلَّ يَنْحَلُّ VII, to be solved

* This initial *'alif* has what is called *hamzat al-waṣl*. It is simpler to say that it has a 'weak' vowel which is dropped when another vowel precedes it.

** Since these verbs are intransitive, the passive participle is found only in special usages: see para. 32 below.

19. Form VIII

Form VIII verbs may be transitive, intransitive or prepositional, depending on the verb; some give the intransitive or passive meaning of Form I, but in many cases it is not possible to identify a special meaning. Form VIII has ا (with *hamzat al-waṣl*, see para. 18 above) before the initial radical, and ت after it, in both principal parts; note that the first syllable of any part of a Form VIII verb never carries the stress in pronunciation. Form VIII has the following measures:

- Principal parts (active) اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ
- Imperative (m. s.) اِفْتَعِلْ
- Participles (m. s., active / passive) مُفْتَعِل\مُفْتَعَل
- Verbal noun اِفْتِعَال

These are the measures for sound verbs. Verbs of other classes have variants of them.

Examples: اِجْتَمَعَ يَجْتَمِعُ VIII, to have a meeting

اِحْتَلَّ يَحْتَلُّ VIII, to occupy

After certain initial radicals, the ت of Form VIII is modified as follows:

- after ص or ض , to ط ; e.g. Root صنع : اِصْطَنَعَ يَصْطَنِعُ VIII, to manufacture
- after ز , to د ; e.g. Root زيد : اِزْدَادَ يَزْدَادُ VIII, to increase
- ت or و + ت become تّ ; e.g. Root وحد: اِتَّحَدَ يَتَّحِدُ VIII, to (be) unite(d)
- د , ط or ظ + ت become دّ , طّ or ظّ respectively;

e.g. Root دعو: اِدَّعَى يَدَّعِي VIII, to allege

- Initial ء + ت takes three forms:
  - in the root أخذ, it becomes تّ: اتَّخَذَ يَتَّخِذُ VIII, to take
  - in all other roots, it has alternative forms ...ايتـ\...اتّـ in the first principal part, the imperative and the verbal noun;

    e.g. Root أمر: اِيتَمَرَ\اِتَّمَرَ يَأْتَمِرُ VIII, to deliberate

20. Form IX

Form IX verbs are all intransitive; they have ا (with *hamzat al-waṣl*, see para. 18 above) before the initial radical and they double the final radical, which makes them conjugate similarly to doubled verbs. They form no passive voice. They occur only in the sound class and hollow sub-class; in the hollow examples the weak middle radical remains a consonant. Form IX verbs are few and infrequent; they all denote acquiring or having a colour or physical defect. Form IX has the following measures:

- Principal parts (active only) افْعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ
- Imperative (m. s., in order of frequency) اِفْعَلَّ\اِفْعَلِلْ
- Participle (m. s., active only) مُفْعَلّ
- Verbal noun اِفْعِلال

These measures are valid for all Form IX verbs.

Examples: احْمَرَّ يَحْمَرُّ IX, to be / turn red, to blush

اِسْوَدَّ يَسْوَدُّ IX, to be / turn black

21. Form X

Form X verbs have the prefix ...اسْتَـ (with *hamzat al-waṣl*, see para. 18 above) before the first principal part. Form X verbs may be transitive, intransitive or prepositional, depending on the verb. Some denote attributing a quality to the direct object; some others denote seeking a result. In many cases it is not possible to identify a special meaning. Form X has the following measures:

- Principal Parts (active) اسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ
- Imperative (m. s.) اِسْتَفْعِلْ
- Participles (m. s., active / passive) مُسْتَفْعِل\مُسْتَفْعَل

- Verbal Noun اسْتِفْعَال

These are the sound measures. Verbs of other classes have variants of them.

Examples: اسْتَعْمَلَ يَسْتَعْمِلُ X, to use

اِسْتَفَادَ يَسْتَفِيدُ من X, to benefit from

22. Tenses

Arabic has four simple (i.e. one-word) tenses: perfect indicative, imperfect indicative, imperfect subjunctive and imperfect jussive. We shall follow common practice and call these the perfect, imperfect, subjunctive and jussive respectively.

There are also two compound tenses, i.e. tenses formed with more than one word: the continuous perfect and the pluperfect. Tenses are described below.

23. Perfect indicative tense ('Perfect')

The perfect expresses a completed action or state, usually situated in the past: ذَهَبَ 'he went / has gone', صَارَ 'he became / has become'. To put a verb in the perfect, we take the *perfect stem* and add the *perfect ending*. See the preamble to each appropriate table for the derivation of this stem. The standard perfect endings added to the stem are (... represents the stem):

Person	Plural	Dual	Singular
1st person m./f.	نَا... we	(no form)	تُ... I
2nd person m.	تُمْ... you	(تُمَا... you both)	تَ... you
2nd person f.	(تُنَّ... you)	(تُمَا... you both)	تِ... you
3rd person m.	...وا they	...ا they both	... he/it
3rd person f.	(...نَ they)	...تَا they both	...تْ she/it/they

This table shows the persons in the same order as in the verb tables, i.e. singular on the right.

Important points to note:

- These perfect endings are valid for the active and passive* voices of all verbs with a sound final radical (sound, hamzated, doubled,

assimilated, hollow) throughout the table, and for the 1st and 2nd persons of verbs with a weak final radical (defective and doubly weak). The 3rd-person endings for the latter two sub-classes are a variant of the endings shown above; see p. 161.

* See para. 39 below for the passive.

- The 1st persons do not vary with the gender of the subject. The 1st pers. pl. is used for the missing dual form.
- The 2nd person dual, and the 2nd and 3rd person feminine plural forms (shown in parentheses) are rarely encountered. As in the verb tables, they are shown here to make the list complete.
- When the 3rd person singular pronoun subject 'it' is intended, the verb must agree in gender with the noun subject referred to:

  وَصَلَ التَّقْرِير. وَصَلَ اليَوْم. The report (m.) has arrived. It arrived today.

  وَصَلَت الرِّسَالَة. وَصَلَت اليَوْم. The letter (f.) has arrived. It arrived today.

  See para. 27 below for the agreement of the verb with a plural subject.
- In the 3rd pers. m. pl. ending ...وُا the *'alif* is silent; the ending is pronounced *-ū*.
- Before a following definite article (*hamzat al-waṣl*) in the same phrase, certain endings are modified:
  - the final ...اَ of the 2nd pers. dual endings is pronounced short, *-a*; the spelling is unchanged.
  - the final ...وُا of the 3rd pers. m. pl. is pronounced short, *-u*; the spelling is unchanged:

    أَخَذُوا المِلَفَّ وَغَادَرُوا. *'akhadhu l-milaff wa-ghādarū.*

    They took the file and left.
- Certain endings are modified when a pronoun object is suffixed to the verb; these are explained in Appendix B, para. 3.
- It is very common, in pronunciation, to omit certain pointed short-vowel endings altogether when no pronoun object is suffixed to the verb. We can call this 'short pronunciation'. In the perfect, it happens with the endings:
  - 1st pers. s. ...تُ and 2nd pers. m.s. ...تَ, which both lose the ...ُ or ...َ: غادرت *ghādart* I left / you left.

- 3rd pers. m. s. loses its final ـَ... , i.e. the verb form ends with the final radical: غادر *ghādar* he left.

After short pronunciation of the verb, any following definite article recovers its original vowel *a*-. Compare:

كتبت التقرير. *katabtu t-taqrīr* (full pronunciation),
katabt at-taqrīr (short) I wrote the report.

Short pronunciation cannot be used when a pronoun object is suffixed to the verb (see Appendix B, para. 3):

كتبته. *katabtuhu* (only possible pronunciation) I wrote it.

Principal parts are usually quoted in full pronunciation, e.g.: كَتَبَ يَكْتُبُ *kataba yaktubu.*

The verb ليس 'not to be' (see para. 8 above) is always pronounced in full, for all persons.

The perfect tense is made negative by putting the word مَا before the verb:

(مَا) دَرَسَ الْهَنْدَسَةَ. He has (not) studied engineering.

There is another negative form, using the jussive but with past meaning, shown in para. 30 below. It is mostly preferred to the one shown here.

24. Pluperfect tense

The pluperfect ('They had gone') expresses a past action or state preceding another past action or state. It is composed of the perfect tense of كان يكون, with or without the reinforcing word قَدْ , plus the perfect tense of the operative verb. Both verbs agree with the subject in the manner described in para. 27 below:

كُنْتُ (قَد) سَمِعْتُهُ قَبْلاً. I had heard him before.

The pluperfect is not consistently used; the perfect is often used instead, with pluperfect meaning implied from the context:

سَمِعْتُهُ قَبْلاً. I (had) heard him before.

25. Imperfect indicative tense ('Imperfect')

The imperfect expresses an incomplete action or state, usually situated in the present or near future: تَذْهَبُ 'she goes / is going', 'she will go'; يَظْهَرُونَ 'they seem'. To put a verb into the imperfect, we take the *imperfect stem* and add the *imperfect prefix and ending*. See the

preamble to each appropriate set of tables for the derivation of the stem. The standard imperfect prefixes and endings added to the stem are (... represents the imperfect stem of the verb, between the prefix and the personal ending):

Person	Plural	Dual	Singular
1st person m./f. (a) (b)	تَـ..ُ / يُ..ُ / نَـ..ُ we	(no form)	أَ..ُ / يَ..ُ / أَ..ُ I
2nd person m. (a) (b)	تَـ..ُونَ / تُـ..ُونَ you	(تَـ..اَنِ / تُـ..اَنِ) you both	تَـ..ُ / تُـ..ُ you
2nd person f. (a) (b)	(تَـ..ْنَ / تُـ..ْنَ) you	(تَـ..اَنِ / تُـ..اَنِ) you both	تَـ..ِينَ / تُـ..ِينَ you
3rd person m. (a) (b)	يَـ..ُونَ / يُـ..ُونَ they	يَـ..اَنِ / يُـ..اَنِ they both	يَـ..ُ / يُـ..ُ he/it
3rd person f. (a) (b)	(يَـ..ْنَ / يُـ..ْنَ) they)	تَـ..اَنِ / تُـ..اَنِ they both	تَـ..ُ / تُـ..ُ she/it/they

This table shows the persons in the same order as in the verb tables, i.e. singular on the right.

Note:

- These imperfect prefixes are valid for the imperfect tense of all verbs without exception. The alternatives (a) or (b) are used as follows:
  - alternative (a), with the vowel ...(أَ\تَ\يَ\نَ) is used in the active voice of Forms I, IIQ and V to X.
  - alternative (b), with the vowel ...(أُ\تُ\يُ\نُ) is used in the active voice of Forms IQ, II, III and IV; and in the whole of the passive voice (see para. 39 below).
- These imperfect personal endings are valid for the active and passive voices of all verbs with a sound final radical (sound, hamzated, doubled, assimilated, hollow) throughout the table. The endings for defective and doubly weak verbs are a variant of the endings shown above; see p. 161.
- The 1st persons do not vary with the gender of the subject. The 1st

pers. pl. is used for the missing dual form.

- The 2nd person dual, and the 2nd and 3rd person feminine plural forms (shown in parentheses) are rarely encountered. As in the verb tables, they are shown here to make the list complete.
- When the 3rd person singular pronoun subject 'it' is intended, the verb must agree in gender with the noun subject referred to:

  يَبِيع البَنْك أَسْهُمًا. يَبِيع أَسْهُمًا. The bank (m.) sells shares. It sells shares.

  تَبِيع الشَّرِكَة أَسْهُمًا. تَبِيع أَسْهُمًا. The company (f.) sells shares. It sells shares.

  See para. 27 below for the agreement of the verb with a plural subject.
- See para. 23 above, last indent. Short pronunciation applies to the imperfect tense as follows:
  - all endings ... (1st pers. s. and pl., 2nd pers. m.s., 3rd pers. m. and f. s.) are dropped, i.e. the verb ends with the final radical:

    أَكتب\تكتب\يكتب\نكتب *'aktub, taktub, yaktub, naktub*

    I / you / he / she / we write(s)
  - all dual endings ...انِ drop the final ... : تكتبان *taktubān* you both write

  After short pronunciation of the verb, any following definite article recovers its original vowel *a*-. Compare:

  يكتب التقرير. *yaktubu t-taqrīr* (full pronunciation),

  yaktub at-taqrīr (short) He is writing the report.

  Short pronunciation cannot be used when a pronoun object is suffixed to the verb:

  يكتبه. *yaktubuhu* (only possible pronunciation) He is writing it.

The imperfect is made negative with the word لاَ before the verb:

(لاَ) يَعْرِف اللُّغَة العَرَبِيَّة. He knows / does not know Arabic.

A future of intention can be expressed with the particle سَوْفَ or سَـ.. followed by an imperfect verb:

سَوْفَ يَسْتَقِيل\سَيَسْتَقِيل مِنْ وَظِيفَته. He will resign from his post.

For the negative future of intention, see para. 29 below.

A past action continuing into the present is expressed with the imperfect in Arabic, not with a perfect as in English:

يَسْكُنُونَ هُنَا مُنْذُ السَّنَةِ الماضِيَة. They have been living here since last year. ('They are living here since last year.')

You may have met the same structure in (e.g.) French or German:

Ils habitent ici depuis l'année dernière. Sie wohnen seit dem letzten Jahr hier.

26.Continuous perfect tense

The continuous perfect ('They were working / used to work') expresses a continuous or repeated past action or state. It consists of the perfect tense of كان يكون plus the imperfect tense of the operative verb. Both verbs agree with the subject in the manner described in para. 27 below:

كَانُوا يَسْكُنُونَ في بَيْرُوت. They were living in Beirut.

كَان الحِزْبَان دائِمًا يَتَنَازَعَان. The two parties were always quarrelling.

27. Agreement

In general, a verb agrees with its subject (noun or pronoun) in number and gender. But:

- the f. pl. (2nd or 3rd person) is used only for an all-female animate group (i.e. people); the m. pl. (2nd or 3rd person) is used for an all-male or mixed animate group:

حَضَرْتُم\حَضَرْتُنَّ الاجْتِمَاع. You (m. pl. or m.+ f. pl./ f. pl.) attended the meeting.

العُمَّال أَضْرَبُوا. The workers (m., or mixed) went on strike.

أَضْرَبُوا. They (m., or mixed) went on strike.

المُمَرِّضَات أَضْرَبْنَ. The (f.) nurses went on strike.

أَضْرَبْنَ. They (all f.) went on strike.

- for an inanimate group (i.e. not of people) we use the inanimate pl. form of the verb. This is identical to the f. s. form:

المَشَاكِل\الأُمُور تُهِمُّنَا. The problems / matters concern us.

تُهِمُّنَا. They (i.e. the problems / matters) concern us.

A word denoting a group of people is itself inanimate:

الوُفُود وَصَلَت اليَوْم. The delegations arrived today.

(The use of the f. s. for the inanimate pl. runs right through the

language and is therefore most important. The animate m. pl. and f. pl. forms are used *only* to denote people.)

- special rules apply to the kind of sentence known as a verbal statement, for which see para. 28 below.

28. Nominal and verbal statements

Arabic distinguishes between two kinds of sentences making statements: noun or nominal statements and verb or verbal statements.

In a *nominal statement*, the subject occurs earlier than the verb, as in English:

المُهَندس كَتَب التَقْرير. The engineer wrote the report.

which is correct as it stands. But it is considered better style to begin such a statement with إِنَّ. This word adds no meaning; it simply announces that a nominal statement follows:

إِنَّ المُهَندس كَتَب التَقْرير. The engineer wrote the report.

The subject following إِنَّ is in fact in the *accusative* case (see Appendix A, para. 5); in short pronunciation this is not evident as long as مُهَنْدس is singular. As soon as we make this word plural, its accusative ending becomes evident in writing and sound. Compare:

(without إِنَّ): المُهَندسُون كَتَبُوا التَقْرير.
(with إِنَّ): إِنَّ المُهَندسِين كَتَبُوا التَقْرير. } The engineers wrote the report.

In short pronunciation and in unpointed text, the accusative case is audible and visible only with m. sound plurals and with dual nouns (...يْن instead of ...انِ), but not evident otherwise. In fact إِنَّ is one of a family of conjunctions which cause the subject of the verb to go into the accusative case. These are:

إِنَّ (as used here); also 'that' in indirect statements (see para. 36 below)
أَنَّ 'that' in indirect statements (see para. 36 below)
(وَ)لكنَّ *(wa)lākinna* but لأَنَّ because
and any other compound involving أَنَّ, e.g.:
مَع أَنَّ although بِشَرْط أَنَّ on condition that عَلى أَنَّ provided that
وَلكِنَّ\لأَنَّ\مَع أَنَّ المُوَظَّفِين أَضْرَبُوا.

but / because / although the employees went on strike

A pronoun subject is suffixed to the إِنَّ\أَنَّ etc.:

إِنَّهُم كَتَبُوا التَقْرِير. They wrote the report.

A verbless sentence (see para. 2 above) is also a nominal statement. We may introduce it by إِنَّ:

المُهَنْدِسُون\إِنَّ المُهَنْدِسِين مَوْجُودُون. The engineers are present.

إِنَّهُم\هُم غَائِبُون. They are absent.

Note that it is only the subject which goes into the accusative; the complement stays nominative.

In a *verbal statement*, either the subject is a pronoun which is built into the verb itself:

وَصَلُوا أَمْس. They arrived yesterday.

in which case the verb agrees with the subject as described in para. 27 above; or the subject is a noun which stands later in the sentence than the verb. In a verbal statement with a noun subject, the verb agrees in gender but is always *singular*, even if the noun is dual or plural. The inanimate pl. form counts as singular for this purpose:

فَاوَض المَنْدُوبُون العَقْد. The delegates (m., m.+ f.) negotiated the contract.

فَاوَض الجَانِبَان العَقْد. The two sides negotiated the contract.

فَاوَضَت المُعَلِّمَات العَقْد. The (f.) teachers negotiated the contract.

فَاوَضَت الأَطْرَاف العَقْد. The parties negotiated the contract.

You will notice that the subject is in the nominative in a verbal statement.

Only one verb may stand earlier than the subject. If there is a second verb with the same subject, or if the verb is compound (i.e. consists of more than one word), the second verb or second element of the verb follows the subject and agrees fully with it:

دَخَل المَنْدُوبُون وَجَلَسُوا. The delegates entered and sat down.

بَدَأَ الحَفَّارُون يَفْحَصُون المِثْقَب. The drillers began to inspect the bit.

كَانَت المُمَرِّضَات قَدْ أَضْرَبْن. The nurses had gone on strike.

29. Imperfect subjunctive tense ('Subjunctive')

The subjunctive expresses purpose, potential or will concerning the action of the verb ('He wanted to sell the house.', 'Can you speak Arabic?', 'I prefer that you stay.').

The subjunctive is formed from the imperfect by changing the *endings only*, as follows (the prefixes are unchanged):

- change the imperfect ending ...ُ to ...َ:
  imperfect يَكْتُبُ he writes, subjunctive يَكْتُبَ
- change the imperfect endings ...ُو , ...ِي (defective and doubly weak verbs) to ...ُوَ or ...ِيَ respectively:
  imperfect نَرْجُو we expect, subjunctive نَرْجُوَ
  imperfect تَنْفِيهِ you deny it, subjunctive تَنْفِيَهُ
- change endings ...ِينَ\...ِيْنَ (2nd pers. f. s.), ...انِ\...انَ (the whole dual) and ...ُونَ\...ُوْنَ (2nd + 3rd persons m. pl.) to ...ِيَ\...ِيْ, ...اَ\...اَ and ...ُوا\...ُوْا respectively. The latter two subjunctive endings further undergo the same changes as ...اَ and ...ُوا, in the perfect tense (i.e. before a pronoun object suffix or *hamzat al-waṣl*), see para. 23 above and Appendix B para. 3:
  imperfect تَظَلِّينَ\تَظَلاَّنِ\تَظَلُّونَ you (f. s.; dual; m. pl.) remain, subjunctive تَظَلِّي\تَظَلاَّ\تَظَلُّوا
- leave all else unchanged:
  imperfect + subjunctive يَسْتَحْقِقْنَ they (f. pl.) deserve

The Arabic subjunctive often replaces the English infinitive, e.g. 'to sell' and 'speak' shown above. The subjunctive verb is always introduced by a conjunction because it always depends on a 'main' verb (which may be in any tense or in the imperative); in the English examples given above the main verbs are 'wanted', 'can' and 'prefer'. Typical Arabic verbs used as main verbs in this context are:

اسْتَطَاعَ يَسْتَطِيعُ	X, can, to be able to		
فَضَّلَ يُفَضِّلُ	II, to prefer	حَاوَلَ يُحَاوِلُ	III, to try
(كان) يَجِبُ عَلَى	I, must, to have to	(كان) يُرِيدُ	IV, to want to
(كان) يَجُوزُ لِ	I, may / might, it is / was probable		

(كان) يُمْكِن ه IV, may / might, it was possible

طَلَبَ يَطْلُبُ I, to ask / request أَمَرَ يَأْمُرُ I, to order

The principal conjunctions used to introduce the subjunctive verb are:

أَنْ that لِ\كَيْ\لِكَيْ\حَتَّى so that أَلاَّ\لِئَلاَّ so that...not

Examples: يَسْتَطِيع أَنْ يُسَاعِدَنَا. He can ('that he') help us.

شَرَحْتُ الْمُشْكِلَةَ لِكَيْ يَفْهَمُوا.

I explained the problem so that they would understand.

طَلَبُوا مِنَّا أَلاَّ نَتَدَخَّل. They asked us not to ('that we not') interfere.

أَيَّدْنَا الْمَشْرُوع لِئَلاَّ يَفْشَل. We supported the project so that it would not fail.

In the verbs marked with (كان) the continuous perfect tense is preferred to the perfect:

(كُنَّا) نُرِيد أَنْ نُؤَكِّدَ سِيَاسَتَنَا. We want(ed) to confirm our policy.

With يجب , يجوز and يمكن , we use the verb either impersonally as it stands, or we can emphasise the person concerned as shown with each of these verbs in the list:

(كَان) يَجِب (عَلَيْنَا) أَنْ نَدْرُسَ الْمَسْأَلَة. We must / had to study the question.

لاَ يُمْكِن \يُمْكِنُهُ أَنْ يَسْتَبْدِلَ الْمِثْقَب. He cannot ('It is not possible for him to') change the bit.

The subjunctive of كان 'to be' has present meaning:

يَجُوز أَنْ يَكُونُوا ضِدَّ الاقْتِرَاح. They may be against the proposal.

It is common to use a definite verbal noun (see para. 33 below), or an expression containing a definite verbal noun, instead of the conjunction + subjunctive verb, with the same meaning:

نُفَضِّل أَنْ يَسْتَقِيلَ\نُفَضِّل اسْتِقَالَتَهُ. We prefer that he resign. ('We favour his resignation.')

لاَ يُمْكِنُهُ اسْتِبْدَال الْمِثْقَب. He cannot change the bit. ('The changing of the bit is not possible for him.')

لاَ يَسْتَطِيع اسْتِبْدَال الْمِثْقَب. He cannot change the bit. ('He is not capable of the changing of the bit')

The negative of such an expression is made with عَدَم 'lack of', 'non-'

before the verbal noun:

نُفَضِّل عَدَم اسْتِقَالَتِه. We prefer that he should not resign. ('We favour his non-resignation.')

The word لَنْ followed by a subjunctive verb expresses a negative future of intention:

لَنْ تَسْتَقِيل من وَظِيفَتِهَا. She will not resign from her post.

For the affirmative future of intention, see para. 25 above.

The final ـَ... of the subjunctive can be dropped in short pronunciation exactly as can be the final ـُ... of the imperfect indicative; see para. 25 above:

يَجُوز أَنْ يَصِل غَداً. *yajūz(u) 'an yaṣil(a) ghadan.* He may arrive tomorrow.

30. Imperfect jussive tense ('Jussive')

The jussive is formed from the subjunctive by changing certain of the *endings only*, as follows (where no change is mentioned, the subjunctive and jussive forms are the same):

- for sound, hamzated and assimilated verbs, replace the subjunctive ending ـَ... with ـْ... :
  subjunctive نَجِدَ we find, jussive نَجِدْ
  For Form IX verbs proceed, however, as for doubled verbs (see below),
- for hollow verbs, and for doubly weak verbs with final ـه , drop the subjunctive ending ـَ... , and, where the middle radical has the form of a vowel, shorten it (i.e. ...ـُو... becomes ..... , ...ـِي... becomes ..... and ...ـَا... becomes .....):
  subjunctive يَقُولَ he says, jussive يَقُلْ
  subjunctive يَجِيءَ he comes, jussive يَجِئْ
  Where the weak middle radical has consonantal form, proceed as for sound verbs (see above):
  subjunctive نُمَوِّلَهُ we finance it, jussive نُمَوِّلْهُ
  For Form IX verbs proceed, however, as for doubled verbs (see below),
- for defective and doubly weak verbs with final-radical و or ي , replace the subjunctive ending ـَ... with ـْ... , and, where the final

radical is the last written letter, shorten it (i.e. ...وُ becomes ...ُ , ...يِ becomes ... and ...ا or ...ى becomes ...َ):

subjunctive نَرْجُوَ we expect, jussive نَرْجُ

subjunctive يَسْتَوْلِيَ he appropriates, jussive يَسْتَوْلِ

subjunctive تَنْسَاهُمَ she forgets them, jussive تَنْسَهُمَ

- for doubled verbs, and for Form IX verbs, there are two patterns:
  - a common pattern (marked (i) in the tables) in which the jussive is identical to the subjunctive throughout:

    subjunctive and jussive نَظَلَّ we remain

    subjunctive and jussive تَحْمَرَّ she blushes

    This is the pattern you should always use.
  - a less common pattern (marked (ii) in the tables) in which the subjunctive ending ...َ is replaced with ...ْ and, where the personal ending begins with a consonant (or has been replaced by the ...ْ), the identical middle and final radicals are separated with a short vowel:

    jussives نَظَلَلْ we remain, تَحْمَرِرْ she blushes

The jussive is used as follows:

- with the particles لِ 'let ...', وَلْ and فَلْ 'so let ...', to express a wish:

  لِيُحَاوِلُوا\فَلْيُحَاوِلُوا. (So) let them try.
- with the negative expressions لَمْ 'not' and لَمْ ... بَعْدُ 'not ... yet', with past meaning:

  لَمْ يَفْهَمُونَا. They did not understand us.

  This construction is mostly preferred to مَا + perfect (see para. 23 above) for a past negative. In a few expressions it is the only correct past negative.
- for the negative imperative; see para. 31 below,
- in conditional sentences; see para. 38 below.

31. Imperative mood ('Imperative')

The imperative expresses direct commands or requests ('Come here.', 'Don't go away'). It exists only in the 2nd persons (masculine and feminine; singular, dual, plural). The imperative is formed from the jussive, as follows:

Affirmative imperative

First remove the personal prefix ...تَـ or ...تُـ from the appropriate 2nd person of the jussive. Then:

- If the resultant form begins with a *single consonant* (radical or not) + *a vowel*, that form is the imperative:
  jussive تَقُلْ you say, imperative قُلْ say
  jussive تَتَكَلَّمُوا you speak, imperative تَكَلَّمُوا speak
- If the resultant form begins with *two consonants* or a *doubled consonant* (whether radicals or not) with no intervening vowel, then a prefix is necessary to make the imperative:
  - for Form IV, the imperative prefix is ...أَ (with *hamzat al-qaṭ'*):
    jussive تُرْسِلِيهَا you send it, imperative أَرْسِلِيهَا send it
  - for all other forms, the imperative prefix is ...أَ (with *hamzat al-waṣl*) if the vowel after the middle radical is ... َ, and ...اِ (with *hamzat al-waṣl*) if that vowel is anything else:
    jussive تَنْشُرُوهُ you publish it, imperative أَنْشُرُوهُ publish it
    jussive تَحْتَلُّ\تَحْتَلِلْ you occupy, imperative احْتَلَّ\احْتَلِلْ occupy
    jussive تَنْفِ you deny, imperative اِنْفِ deny

Negative imperative

Put the negative word لاَ before the unchanged jussive:

لاَ تَقُلْ\لاَ تَتَكَلَّمُوا\لاَ تُرْسِلِيهَا\لاَ تَنْفِ do not: say / speak / send it / deny

32. Participles

Participles are verbal adjectives. Arabic has *active participles*, e.g. كَاتِب 'writing', describing a person or thing performing the action; and *passive participles*, e.g. مَكْتُوب 'written', describing a person or thing suffering the action. The active and passive participles correspond approximately (and respectively) to what we call present and past participles in European languages.

Form I participles have the measures فَاعِل (active), مَفْعُول (passive). These are the measures for sound, hamzated and assimilated verbs. Other classes have variants: see the preamble to each appropriate table.
Examples:

عَرَفَ يَعْرِفُ	I, to know:	عَارِف	knowing	مَعْرُوف	known
أَكَلَ يَأْكُلُ	I, to eat:	آكِل	eating	مَأْكُول	eaten
دَلَّ يَدُلُّ	I, to indicate:	دَالّ	indicating	مَدْلُول	indicated

Participles of increased forms and quadriliterals (II to X, IQ and IIQ) are derived as follows:

- Active participle: take the second principal part. Remove the prefix ...يَـ or ...يُـ and the ending ... . If the vowel before the final radical is not ... , then make it ... . Add the prefix ...مُـ.
- Passive participle: take the first principal part, remove any prefixed ...أ\...ا and the ending ... , and add the prefix ...مُـ.

These are the measures for all verbs ending in a sound radical (sound, hamzated, doubled, assimilated, hollow). For the defective and doubly weak classes, see p. 161.

Examples:

دَرَّسَ يُدَرِّسُ	II, to instruct:	مُدَرِّس	instructing	مُدَرَّس	instructed
احْتَلَّ يَحْتَلُّ	VIII, to occupy:	مُحْتَلّ	occupying/ied (active/passive)		
تَعَلَّمَ يَتَعَلَّمُ	V, to learn:	مُتَعَلِّم	learning	مُتَعَلَّم	learnt
أَفَادَ يُفِيدُ	IV, to benefit:	مُفِيد	beneficial	مُفَاد	benefited

Like all adjectives, participles may be used as nouns ('participial nouns'). When used as masculine animate nouns, some active participles of Form I have a broken plural (see Appendix A, para. 9). The same is true of a small number of inanimate participial nouns, and a few animates of increased forms:

كَتَبَ يَكْتُبُ	I, to write:	كَاتِب ج كُتَّاب	clerk
عَمِلَ يَعْمَلُ	I, to work:	عَامِل ج عُمَّال	workman
		عَامِل ج عَوَامِل	factor
أَدَارَ يُدِيرُ	IV, to direct:	مُدِير ج مُدَرَاء	director

When used as adjectives, or when in the feminine form, such words have a sound plural. The passive participle has a sound plural.

Agreement of participles used as adjectives. Active participles used as adjectives agree with the noun which they qualify (the details given in

para. 27 above apply as appropriate). The same is true of passive participles formed from *transitive* verbs and used as adjectives:

نَاسَبَ III, to suit; active participle مُنَاسِب suitable:

بِالوَسَائِلِ المُنَاسِبَة by ('the') suitable means

سَأَلَ يَسْأَلُ I, to ask; passive participle مَسْؤُول responsible:

الزُّمَلاَء المَسْؤُولُون the responsible colleagues

But the passive participle of a *prepositional* verb is regarded as impersonal, and when used as an adjective always stands in the masculine singular, with its preposition carrying the suffix appropriate to the noun:

قَامَ يَقُومُ بِ I, to undertake; passive participle مَقُوم بِ undertaken:

المَشَارِيع المَقُوم بِهَا the projects undertaken

وَافَقَ عَلَى III, to agree on / to; passive participle مُوَافَق عَلَى agreed on /to:

بِإِجْرَاءَات مُوَافَق عَلَيْهَا by measures (which are / were) agreed to

In the tables, impersonal passives are marked °.

Passive participles of *intransitive* verbs, although in theory regularly formed, are extremely rare. They are shown in the tables only when they have a distinct use (e.g. as a noun of place; see immediately below).

Passive participles as nouns of place. Finally, the passive participles of a few verbs in the increased forms can also express the place where an activity occurs:

اِئْتَمَرَ VIII, to deliberate; passive participle مُؤْتَمَر conference

33. Verbal nouns

Verbal nouns express the activity or state of the verb. They often correspond to what we call abstract nouns in English. Examples of verbal nouns are:

عَرَفَ يَعْرِفُ I, to know; verbal noun مَعْرِفَة knowledge

عَلَّمَ يُعَلِّمُ II, to teach; verbal noun تَعْلِيم teaching, education

Verbal nouns of Forms I and IQ are irregularly formed, and have to be learned with the verb. The verbal nouns of Forms II to X have regular

measures: see paras. 12 to 21 above, and the tables.

See para. 29 above for the important use of the verbal noun to replace a subjunctive verb, and para. 40 below for important uses of the verbal noun to replace a passive verb.

The Arabic verbal noun is more commonly used than is its English counterpart. It deserves your attention; its correct use counts as good style, and is one of the marks of a successful student of Arabic.

34. Auxiliary verbs

An auxiliary verb is one which appears with another verb and limits its action: 'We began to work', 'She continued sewing'. In Arabic, the auxiliary mostly limits the action in time or manner, i.e. beginning it, continuing it, ending it, resuming it, seeming to do it or almost doing it. Only certain Arabic verbs can be used as auxiliaries; some of them are complemented verbs (see para. 8 above) with sometimes a new meaning:

كَادَ يَكَادُ	I, almost to ...	ظَلَّ يَظَلُّ	I, to continue
بَدَأَ يَبْدَأُ	I, to begin	ظَهَرَ يَظْهَرُ	I, to seem
صَارَ يَصِيرُ	I, to begin	بَقِيَ يَبْقَى	I, to keep ...ing
اِسْتَمَرَّ يَسْتَمِرُّ	X, to continue	عَادَ يَعُودُ*	I, to ... again

زَالَ يَزَالُ* I, to ... no longer, to cease ...ing

The auxiliary may be in any tense, or in the imperative, but the operative verb is always in the imperfect. The two verbs agree with the subject in the manner described in para. 27 above. Examples:

بَدَأَ الحَفَّارُونَ يَفْحَصُونَ المِثْقَبَ. The drillers began to examine the bit.

يَسْتَمِرُّونَ يَشْكُونَ. They are continuing to complain.

كِدْنَا نَنْسَى أَهَمَّ نُقْطَةٍ. We almost forgot the most important point.

* The negative perfect of عاد is used as an auxiliary 'to ... no longer', and the negative imperfect and perfect of زال are used as an auxiliary 'still to ...':

مَا عَادُوا يُؤَيِّدُونَنَا. They no longer supported us.

لاَ تَزَالُ\مَا زَالَتْ تَعْمَلُ فِي المَصْرِفِ. She still works / worked at the bank.

Verbs used as auxiliaries are marked α in the tables and the verb list.

35. Questions

Questions (more correctly, direct questions) are of two types.

Questions asking for an answer 'yes' or 'no' are introduced by either هَلْ (for affirmative questions) or أَ (for affirmative or negative questions). The rest of the sentence remains unchanged:

هُوَ مَرِيض. He is ill. هَل هُوَ مَرِيض؟ Is he ill?

مَا كَتَبَ الْجَوَاب. He wrote the reply. أَمَا كَتَبَهُ؟ Did he not write it?

Questions asking for another answer begin with the appropriate interrogative word ; see for example Appendix B, para. 9.

36. Indirect speech

Indirect speech (also called reported speech) is that speech in which the speaker's words are not quoted but reported: 'He said that he was ill', 'They asked whether I would attend', 'I told them to get out'. These are examples, respectively, of *indirect statement*, *indirect question* and *indirect command or request*.

Indirect statement. Arabic indirect statement is introduced by one of two conjunctions, إِنَّ or أَنَّ, both meaning 'that'. They cannot be omitted, as 'that' is sometimes omitted in English. You will recall from para. 28 above that after either of these conjunctions the subject stands in the *accusative* case if it is a noun; if a pronoun, it is represented by the object pronoun suffix:

After the common verb قَالَ يَقُولُ I, 'to say', the conjunction is إِنَّ :

يَقُول إِنَّ الأَسْعَار تَنْخَفِض. He says that (the) prices are falling ('decreasing').

يَقُول إِنَّهَا تَنْخَفِض. He says that they are falling.

يَقُول إِنَّ الْمُهَنْدِسِين وَصَلُوا. He says that the engineers have arrived.

After any other verb of reporting, the conjunction is أَنَّ :

يُعْلِنُونَ أَنَّ الأَسْعَار\أَنَّهَا تَنْخَفِض. They announce that the prices / that they are falling.

In English the verb may change its tense in the transition from direct to indirect speech; in Arabic it does not:

قَال إِنَّهُ يَدْرُس الأَفْعَال العَرَبِيَّة. He said he was ('is') studying Arabic verbs.

أَكَّدَت أَنَّهَا سَمِعَت الخَبَر أَمْس. She confirmed that she had heard ('that she heard') the news yesterday.

Similarly, an implied present verb 'am / is / are' (see para. 2 above) remains implied:

قَال إِنَّهُ مَرِيض. He said that he was ill. (i.e. when he spoke)

(قَال إِنَّهُ كَان مَرِيضًا. means 'He said that he had been ill.' [i.e. previously])

Indirect question. In indirect questions, the original tense or time-sequence is preserved, as in indirect statement.

Indirect questions are introduced by the same word as is used for the corresponding direct question. 'Whether' is هَلْ or إِذَا :

سَأَلُوا هَلْ\إِذَا سَأَحْضُر. They asked whether I would attend.

سَأَلُوا هَلْ\إِذَا هُوَ مَرِيض. They asked whether he was ill.

سَأَلُوا لِمَاذَا لاَ يَحْضُر. They asked why he did not attend.

Indirect command or request. This is expressed with أَنْ for an affirmative command or أَلاَّ for a negative command. Both are followed by the subjunctive. See para. 29. above:

طَلَبْت مِنْهُم أَنْ\أَلاَّ يَخْرُجُوا. I asked them (not) to get out.

Note that the rules of indirect speech apply not only to speech proper, but also to all clauses depending on verbs of thinking or perceiving:

عَرَفْنَا أَنَّ البُحُوث تَجْرِي قُدُمًا. We knew that discussions were going on.

لَمْ نَسْمَع مَنْ يَحْضُر. We did not hear who was attending.

37. Expressions of circumstance

Expressions of circumstance show a state or action which accompanies another state or action.

We can express an accompanying state with an adjective, or an accompanying action with a participle. Both words go into the *indefinite accusative* form:

تَرَكُوا الاجْتِمَاع مَسْرُورِين. They left the meeting pleased.

تَلَفَن طَالِبًا مُسَاعَدَتَنَا. He telephoned asking for our help.

وَصَلُوا حَامِلِين الوَثَائِق. They arrived carrying the documents.

A second way of expressing an accompanying action is with a verb. The verb stands in the imperfect, irrespective of the tense of the verb which it accompanies:

تَلَفَن يَطْلُب مُسَاعَدَتَنَا. He telephoned asking for our help.

وَصَلُوا يَحْمِلُون الوَثَائِق. They arrived carrying the documents.

Yet a third and very common way of expressing an accompanying action is to put it into its own clause, introduced by وَ. In such a clause, وَ means 'while' or 'given that'. Sometimes it is not even translatable. We use the imperfect or a participle (indefinite accusative) for a simultaneous action, or the pluperfect for a previous action. The وَ must be followed by the noun or pronoun subject, or a negative particle:

دَخَل وَنَحْنُ نَتَحَدَّث\مُتَحَدِّثِين. He came in while we were talking.

عَرَفْتُهُ وَهُوَ (كَان) طِفْلاً. I knew him when he was a child.

كَيْفَ يُجِيب عَلَى الرِسَالَةَ وَلاَ يَفْهَمُهَا؟ How will he reply to the letter if ('given that') he does not understand it?

تَلَفَنُوا وَنَحْنُ كُنَّا قَد تَرَكْنَا المَكْتَب. They rang after we had left the office.

38. Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences ('If ...') state under what conditions the main statement of the sentence will be true. As in English, we have real or possible conditions ('If it rains ...') and unreal or impossible conditions ('If I were you ...', 'Had I known ...').

Real conditions are most commonly introduced by the conjunction إِذَا 'if'.

After إِذَا the conditional verb stands in the perfect tense, irrespective of the time-sequence of the whole sentence. The non-conditional verb stands in the tense or form (e.g. the imperative) demanded by logic. The non-conditional clause is introduced by فَ 'then', which is dropped if the clause starts with a perfect verb:

إِذَا حَضَرت فَسَيُفِيدُنَا كَثِيراً. If you attend it will help ('benefit') us greatly.

إِذَا طَلَبُوهُ فَنستَأْنِف البُحُوث. If they request it we will resume discussions.

Less commonly, the real condition may be introduced by إِنْ 'if'. In modern Arabic this conjunction is found almost exclusively in a few set

expressions, most easily learned as they stand. Probably the best known are إِنْ شَاءَ اللّٰه ('God willing') 'I / we hope' and إِنْ وُجِدَ\وُجِدَت 'if any'. You are advised to keep to إِذَا for real conditions.

Unreal Conditions. Unreal conditions are introduced by the conjunction لَوْ 'if'. Both verbs stand in the perfect tense. The verb of the main statement is introduced by the particle ..لَـ:

لَوْ عَرَفْنَا لَسَاعَدْنَاهُمْ. If we had/Had we known we would have helped them.

Past time-sequence may be emphasised by using either the pluperfect tense or the word قَدْ in the condition:

لَوْ(كَانُوا قَدْ) وَافَقُوا عَلَيْهِ لأَخْبَرُونَا فَوْرًا. If they had agreed to it they would have informed us immediately.

When the non-conditional clause comes first, any introductory فَ or لَـ is of course dropped:

سَيُحَقِّق رِبْحًا أَكْثَر إِذَا بَاعَ البَضَائِع الآن. He will realise greater profit(s) if he sells the goods now.

In all conditional clauses the negative must be expressed with لَمْ plus the jussive tense, while in the non-conditional clause a negative past is expressed with مَا and the perfect:

لَوْ لَم يُؤَيِّدْنَا لَكَان فَشِل. If he had not supported us it would have failed.

لَوْ أَيَّدَنَا لَمَا (كَان) فَشِل. If he had supported us it would not have failed.

39. Passive Voice ('Passive')

All the verbs used so far in this chapter have been in the *active* voice:

نَشَرَت السُّلُطات نَتَائِج الانْتِخَابَات. The authorities published the election results.

In this sentence, السلطات is the subject, performing the action of the verb, while نتائج الانتخابات is the direct object, suffering the action of the verb.

We have also the *passive* voice, in which the logic is reversed and the old direct object becomes the subject. The new subject now suffers the action of the verb, while the old subject no longer appears:

نُشِرَت نَتَائِج الانْتِخَابَات. The election results were published.

The Arabic passive verb differs from the active only in the vowels. The vowel patterns for the first and second principal parts respectively can be expressed as:

- Short vowels: *u-i-a* *u-a-u*
- Long vowels: *ū-ī-a* *ū-ā-u*

The patterns can be mixed, depending on the verb; and the doubled and hollow verbs deviate somewhat, when they have fewer syllables, from the standard pattern. Weak radicals و and ي are treated alike within each class. You will note:

- the personal endings are the same as the active verb,
- the imperfect prefixes of all verbs, in all classes, forms and tenses, have the vowel ... (أُ\تُ\يُ\نُ),

The passive exists in all tenses, all persons; but in practice you will seldom encounter any passive outside the 3rd persons of the perfect and imperfect, and the participle; the tables show only these. (If one of the other persons, or another tense, is ever needed, it is easily derived from these forms). There is no passive imperative or verbal noun. Form IX has no passive.

In English it is common to express the agent ('by whom?') of a passive verb. Strictly speaking, Arabic grammar does not permit this; however, you will find, in journalistic Arabic, an imitation of Western style, using the expression مِنْ قِبَل 'on the part of' for 'by':

أُفْتُتِح المَصْنَع مِنْ قِبَل الوَزِير. The factory was opened by the minister.

Strictly grammatical Arabic would insist on أُفْتُتِح المَصْنَع. - with no mention of the agent of the action.

The passive of a *transitive* verb agrees with its subject following the rules given in para. 27 above:

كُتِبَت الرِّسَالَة بِاللُّغَة الانْجِلِيزِيَّة. The letter was written in English.

But the passive of an *intransitive* verb is regarded as impersonal; no noun subject is expressed, and the verb always stands in the masculine singular:

أُنْسُحِب\يُنْسَحَب. There was/is a retreat ('It was/is retreated').

The passive participles of intransitive verbs are very rarely used. They

are shown in the tables only when they have a distinct use, e.g. as a noun of place: see the end of para. 32 above.

The passive of a *prepositional* verb is also regarded as impersonal, and therefore always in the masculine singular; if the subject is a pronoun, it is suffixed to the preposition in the appropriate form:

يُبْحَثُ عَنْ التَفَاصِيل. The details are being searched for.

يُبْحَثُ عَنْهَا. They (the details) are being searched for.

We studied a similar phenomenon with the passive participle, in para. 32 above.

In the tables, impersonal passives are marked °.

40. Indirect expressions with the verbal noun

An indirect expression with a verbal noun is often used instead of a simple verb. Three important examples are worth noting.

The perfect verb تَمَّ\تَمَّتْ (تَمَّ يَتِمُّ I, 'to be completed') plus a definite verbal noun expresses a completed past action in the passive:

تَمَّ تَفْتِيش الشَّحْن. The load was inspected.

تَمَّتْ دِرَاسَة الاقْتِرَاح. The proposal was studied.

The perfect verb جَرَى\جَرَتْ or the imperfect يَجْرِي\تَجْرِي (جَرَى يَجْرِي I, 'to flow') plus a definite verbal noun expresses a continuing action in the passive:

جَرَى\يَجْرِي بَحْث الاقْتِرَاح مُدَّةً طَوِيلَةً. The proposal was/is being discussed for a long time.

The verb قَامَ يَقُومُ بِ I, 'to undertake', in any tense, plus a definite verbal noun, expresses the beginning and continuation of the action, in the active:

قُمْنَا بِتَفْتِيش الشَّحْن. We inspected ('undertook the inspection of') the load.

SOUND VERBS

The sound class is the most regular class. The radicals of a sound root can be any letter of the alphabet except ا , و or ي . ء is also excluded. The radicals are all different, and are 'stable', i.e. they never change. The sound class is the only class in which all roots have radicals all of the same kind.

The standard conjugation patterns shown in paras. 23, 25 and 29 to 33 of the introductory chapter (tenses, imperative, participles and verbal noun) apply completely to all sound verbs.

To derive the stem of a sound verb (i.e. that form to which the tense prefixes and personal endings are added)

- **Perfect (active) stem**: drop the final َ... from the first principal part, e.g. first principal part كَتَبَ , perfect stem ...كَتَبـ
- **Imperfect (active) stem**: drop the prefix ...يَـ\ ...يُـ and the final ُ... from the second principal part, e.g.
  second principal part يَكْتُبُ , imperfect stem ...كْتُبـ....

1 I كَتَبَ يَكْتُبُ kataba yaktubu to write ه كتب

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نَكْتُبُ	أَكْتُبُ		كَتَبْنَا	كَتَبْتُ
تَكْتُبُونَ	تَكْتُبُ	تَكْتُبَانِ	كَتَبْتُمْ	كَتَبْتَ
تَكْتُبْنَ	تَكْتُبِينَ	تَكْتُبَانِ	كَتَبْتُنَّ	كَتَبْتِ
يَكْتُبُونَ	يَكْتُبُ	يَكْتُبَانِ	كَتَبُوا	كَتَبَا
يَكْتُبْنَ	تَكْتُبُ	تَكْتُبَانِ	كَتَبْنَ	كَتَبَتَا

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نَكْتُبْ	أَكْتُبْ		نَكْتُبَ	أَكْتُبَ
تَكْتُبُوا	تَكْتُبْ	تَكْتُبَا	تَكْتُبُوا	تَكْتُبَ
تَكْتُبْنَ	تَكْتُبِي	تَكْتُبَا	تَكْتُبْنَ	تَكْتُبِي
يَكْتُبُوا	يَكْتُبْ	يَكْتُبَا	يَكْتُبُوا	يَكْتُبَ
يَكْتُبْنَ	تَكْتُبْ	تَكْتُبَا	يَكْتُبْنَ	تَكْتُبَ

Verbal Noun kitāba **Participle** kātib **Imperative** uktub

كِتَابَة كَاتِب اُكْتُبُوا اُكْتُبَا اُكْتُبْ

اُكْتُبْنَ اُكْتُبَا اُكْتُبِي

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yuktabu يُكْتَبُ **Perfect** kutiba كُتِبَ

Participle maktūb مَكْتُوب

II كَتَّبَ to make (someone) write ه 7; III كَاتَبَ to correspond with ه 9

IV/X أَكْتَبَ\اسْتَكْتَبَ to dictate to ه، ه 10/23

VI تَكَاتَبَ to correspond with each other 12; VII اِنْكَتَبَ to subscribe 13

VIII اِكْتَتَبَ to copy ه, to subscribe (money) ه 14

كِتَابَة writing كِتَابِي written, textual كِتَابَةً in writing

كِتَاب ج كُتُب book كُتَيِّب booklet اِسْتِكْتَاب dictation

مَكْتُوب ج مَكَاتِيب letter كَاتِبَة (f.)، كَاتِب (m.) كَاتِب ج كُتَّاب clerk

مَكْتَب ج مَكَاتِب office, desk مَكْتَبَة library, bookshop

آلة كَاتِبَة \ ماكينة كَاتِبَة typewriter كَتَبَ بِالماكينة to type

2 I عَرَفَ يَعْرِفُ 'arafa ya'rifu to know ه، هـ عرف

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
نَعْرِفُ	أَعْرِفُ		عَرَفْنَا		عَرَفْتُ
تَعْرِفُونَ	تَعْرِفَانِ	تَعْرِفُ	عَرَفْتُمْ	عَرَفْتُمَا	عَرَفْتَ
تَعْرِفْنَ	تَعْرِفَانِ	تَعْرِفِينَ	عَرَفْتُنَّ	عَرَفْتُمَا	عَرَفْتِ
يَعْرِفُونَ	يَعْرِفَانِ	يَعْرِفُ	عَرَفُوا	عَرَفَا	عَرَفَ
يَعْرِفْنَ	تَعْرِفَانِ	تَعْرِفُ	عَرَفْنَ	عَرَفَتَا	عَرَفَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نَعْرِفْ	أَعْرِفْ		نَعْرِفَ		أَعْرِفَ
تَعْرِفُوا	تَعْرِفَا	تَعْرِفْ	تَعْرِفُوا	تَعْرِفَا	تَعْرِفَ
تَعْرِفْنَ	تَعْرِفَا	تَعْرِفِي	تَعْرِفْنَ	تَعْرِفَا	تَعْرِفِي
يَعْرِفُوا	يَعْرِفَا	يَعْرِفْ	يَعْرِفُوا	يَعْرِفَا	يَعْرِفَ
يَعْرِفْنَ	يَعْرِفَا	تَعْرِفْ	يَعْرِفْنَ	تَعْرِفَا	تَعْرِفَ

Verbal Noun ma'rifa/'irfān **Participle** 'ārif **Imperative** i'rif

مَعْرِفَة\عِرْفَان	عَارِف	اعْرِفْ
		اعْرِفَا
		اعْرِفْنَ
		اعْرِفِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'rafu يُعْرَفُ **Perfect** 'urifa عُرِفَ

Participle ma'rūf مَعْرُوف

II عَرَّفَ to acquaint with ه، هـ 7; V تَعَرَّفَ to become acquainted with ب\إلى 11; VI تَعَارَفَ to get to know one another ب 12 ; VIII اِعْتَرَفَ to acknowledge هـ , to recognise ب 14; X اِسْتَعْرَفَ to perceive هـ 23

تَعْرِيف	announcement	تَعْرِيف ج تَعَارِيف	tariff
عَارِف ب	familiar with	اعْتِرَاف	confession
مَعْرُوف	well-known; kindness	مُعْتَرَف به	approved
تَعَرُّف ب\إلى	acquaintance with	عِرْفَان الفَضْل	gratitude
اعْمَل مَعْرُوفًا	be so kind as to	اِعْتِرَافًا ب	in recognition of
مِن المَعْرُوف أنّ	it is well known that		

3 I جَمَعَ يَجْمَعُ jama'a yajma'u to collect هـ **جمع**

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect		
	نَجْمَعُ	أَجْمَعُ		جَمَعْنَا	جَمَعْتُ
	تَجْمَعُونَ	تَجْمَعَانِ	تَجْمَعُ	جَمَعْتُمْ	جَمَعْتُمَا	جَمَعْتَ
	تَجْمَعْنَ	تَجْمَعَانِ	تَجْمَعِينَ	جَمَعْتُنَّ	جَمَعْتُمَا	جَمَعْتِ
	يَجْمَعُونَ	يَجْمَعَانِ	يَجْمَعُ	جَمَعُوا	جَمَعَا	جَمَعَ
	يَجْمَعْنَ	تَجْمَعَانِ	تَجْمَعُ	جَمَعْنَ	جَمَعَتَا	جَمَعَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	نَجْمَعْ	أَجْمَعْ		نَجْمَعَ	أَجْمَعَ
	تَجْمَعُوا	تَجْمَعَا	تَجْمَعْ	تَجْمَعُوا	تَجْمَعَا	تَجْمَعَ
	تَجْمَعْنَ	تَجْمَعَا	تَجْمَعِي	تَجْمَعْنَ	تَجْمَعَا	تَجْمَعِي
	يَجْمَعُوا	يَجْمَعَا	يَجْمَعْ	يَجْمَعُوا	يَجْمَعَا	يَجْمَعَ
	يَجْمَعْنَ	تَجْمَعَا	تَجْمَعْ	يَجْمَعْنَ	تَجْمَعَا	تَجْمَعَ

Verbal Noun jam' جَمْع **Participle** jāmi' جَامِع **Imperative** ijma'

اِجْمَعُوا	اِجْمَعَا	اِجْمَعْ
اِجْمَعْنَ	اِجْمَعَا	اِجْمَعِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yujma'u يُجْمَعُ **Perfect** jumi'a جُمِعَ

Participle majmū' مَجْمُوع

II جَمَّعَ to assemble هـ 7; IV أَجْمَعَ to agree on على 10; V تَجَمَّعَ to congregate 11; VIII اِجْتَمَعَ to have a meeting 14; X اِسْتَجْمَعَ to summarise هـ 23

جَمْع collection, addition, plural (يَوْم الـ)جُمُعَة Friday

جَامِعَة university, community مَجْمُوع total اِجْتِمَاع meeting

مَجْمُوعَة collection, group جَمْعِيَّة association جَمِيع all (plural)

مَجْمَع junction, assembly جَمْعِيًّا altogether اِجْتِمَاعِي social

تَجْمِيع assembly (of parts)

اِسْتَجْمَعَ قُوَّتَهُ\أَفْكَارَهُ to collect one's strength/one's thoughts

4 I عَمِلَ يَعْمَلُ 'amila ya'malu to do هـ عمل

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	أَعْمَلُ		عَمِلْنَا	عَمِلْتُ
تَعْمَلُ	تَعْمَلُ	تَعْمَلاَنِ	عَمِلْتُمْ	عَمِلْتُمَا	عَمِلْتَ
تَعْمَلُونَ	تَعْمَلِينَ	تَعْمَلاَنِ	عَمِلْتُنَّ	عَمِلْتُمَا	عَمِلْتِ
تَعْمَلَنَّ	يَعْمَلُ	يَعْمَلاَنِ	عَمِلُوا	عَمِلاَ	عَمِلَ
يَعْمَلُونَ	تَعْمَلُ	تَعْمَلاَنِ	عَمِلْنَ	عَمِلَتَا	عَمِلَتْ
يَعْمَلْنَ					

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	أَعْمَلْ		نَعْمَلَ		
نَعْمَلْ	تَعْمَلْ	تَعْمَلاَ	تَعْمَلُوا	تَعْمَلاَ	تَعْمَلَ
تَعْمَلُوا	تَعْمَلِي	تَعْمَلاَ	تَعْمَلْنَ	تَعْمَلاَ	تَعْمَلِي
تَعْمَلْنَ	يَعْمَلْ	يَعْمَلاَ	يَعْمَلُوا	يَعْمَلاَ	يَعْمَلَ
يَعْمَلُوا	تَعْمَلْ	تَعْمَلاَ	يَعْمَلْنَ	تَعْمَلاَ	تَعْمَلَ
يَعْمَلْنَ					

Verbal Noun 'amal عَمَل **Participle** 'āmil عَامِل **Imperative** i'mal

اعْمَلْ	اعْمَلاَ	اعْمَلُوا
اعْمَلِي	اعْمَلاَ	اعْمَلْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'malu يُعْمَلُ **Perfect** 'umila عُمِلَ

Participle ma'mūl مَعْمُول

III عَامَلَ to treat هـ 9; IV أَعْمَلَ to put to work هـ 10

VI تَعَامَلَ to do business with one another 12; X اسْتَعْمَلَ to use هـ 23

عَمَل ج أَعْمَال work عَمَلِي practical عَامِل effective

عَامِل ج عُمَّال worker عَامِل ج عَوَامِل factor عَمَلِيَّة operation

مَعْمَل ج مَعَامِل laboratory عُمْلَة currency تَعَامُل transaction

عَمِيل ج عُمَلاَء client عُمُولَة brokerage نِقَابَة العُمَّال trade union

عَامِلَة تَامَّة full employment مُشَارِك عَامِل active participant

قُوَّة عَامِلَة workforce سُوء المُعَامَلَة illtreatment مُسْتَعْمَل (غَيْر) (dis)used

عَمَلاً بِ in accordance with حِزْب العُمَّال Labour Party

5 | I | كَثُرَ يَكْثُرُ kathura yakthuru to be numerous | كثر

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	أَكْثُرُ		نَكْثُرُ		كَثُرْتُ	
	تَكْثُرُ	تَكْثُرَانِ	تَكْثُرُونَ	كَثُرْتَ	كَثُرْتُمَا	كَثُرْتُمْ
	تَكْثُرِينَ	تَكْثُرَانِ	تَكْثُرْنَ	كَثُرْتِ	كَثُرْتُمَا	كَثُرْتُنَّ
	يَكْثُرُ	يَكْثُرَانِ	يَكْثُرُونَ	كَثُرَ	كَثُرَا	كَثُرُوا
	تَكْثُرُ	تَكْثُرَانِ	يَكْثُرْنَ	كَثُرَتْ	كَثُرَتَا	كَثُرْنَ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	أَكْثُرْ	نَكْثُرْ		أَكْثُرَ	نَكْثُرَ
	تَكْثُرْ	تَكْثُرَا	تَكْثُرُوا	تَكْثُرَ	تَكْثُرَا	تَكْثُرُوا
	تَكْثُرِي	تَكْثُرَا	تَكْثُرْنَ	تَكْثُرِي	تَكْثُرَا	تَكْثُرْنَ
	يَكْثُرْ	يَكْثُرَا	يَكْثُرُوا	يَكْثُرَ	يَكْثُرَا	يَكْثُرُوا
	تَكْثُرْ	تَكْثُرَا	يَكْثُرْنَ	تَكْثُرَ	تَكْثُرَا	يَكْثُرْنَ

Verbal Noun kathra كَثْرَة **Participle** kāthir كَاثِر **Imperative** ukthur

أَكْثُرْ	أَكْثُرَا	أَكْثُرُوا
أَكْثُرِي	أَكْثُرَا	أَكْثُرْنَ

PASSIVE not used

I/III كَثَّرَ يَكَثُّرُ (كَثْر)\كَاثَرَ to outnumber هـ 1/9; II/IV كَثَّرَ\أَكْثَرَ to increase هـ 7/10; VI تَكَاثَرَ to band together against على 12

X اِسْتَكْثَرَ to find excessive هـ 23

كَثِير	much (adjective)	كَثِيراً	much (adverb)
أَكْثَر من	more than	الأَكْثَر	most
كُثْر	abundance	أَكْثَرِيَّة	majority
أَكْثَر إِفادَةً	more useful	كَثِيراً ما	often
أَحْسَن بِكَثِير	much better	على الأَكْثَر	at most
أَكْثَر من ذلك	moreover	يُكَثِّر\كَثَّر خَيْرَكَ	(God) bless you
أَكْثَرِيَّة مُطْلَقَة	absolute majority		

6 IQ تَرْجَمَ يُتَرْجِمُ tarjama yutarjimu to translate هـ **ترجم**
from ... into من ... إلى

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
		نُتَرْجِمُ		تَرْجَمْتُ
		أُتَرْجِمُ	تَرْجَمْنَا	
	تُتَرْجِمُونَ	تُتَرْجِمُ	تَرْجَمْتُمْ	تَرْجَمْتَ
	تُتَرْجِمْنَ	تُتَرْجِمَانِ	تَرْجَمْتُمَا	تَرْجَمْتِ
	تُتَرْجِمْنَ	تُتَرْجِمِينَ	تَرْجَمْتُنَّ	تَرْجَمْتِ
	يُتَرْجِمُونَ	يُتَرْجِمَانِ	تَرْجَمُوا	تَرْجَمَا
	يُتَرْجِمْنَ	يُتَرْجِمَانِ	تَرْجَمْنَ	تَرْجَمَتَا
Jussive			**Subjunctive**	
		نُتَرْجِمْ		أُتَرْجِمَ
		أُتَرْجِمْ		
	تُتَرْجِمُوا	تُتَرْجِمْ	تُتَرْجِمُوا	تُتَرْجِمَ
	تُتَرْجِمْنَ	تُتَرْجِمَا	تُتَرْجِمْنَ	تُتَرْجِمَ
	تُتَرْجِمْنَ	تُتَرْجِمِي	تُتَرْجِمْنَ	تُتَرْجِمِي
	يُتَرْجِمُوا	يُتَرْجِمْ	يُتَرْجِمُوا	يُتَرْجِمَ
	يُتَرْجِمْنَ	يُتَرْجِمَا	يُتَرْجِمْنَ	يُتَرْجِمَا
	يُتَرْجِمْنَ	يُتَرْجِمْ	يُتَرْجِمْنَ	يُتَرْجِمَ

Verbal Noun tarjama **Participle** mutarjim **Imperative** tarjim

تَرْجَمَة	مُتَرْجِم	تَرْجِمُوا	تَرْجَمَا	تَرْجِمْ
		تَرْجِمْنَ	تَرْجِمَا	تَرْجِمِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yutarjamu يُتَرْجَمُ **Perfect** turjima تُرْجِمَ
Participle mutarjam مُتَرْجَم

---

translation, preface تَرْجَمَة ج تَرَاجِم — translator مُتَرْجِم

translator تُرْجُمَان ج تَرَاجِيم\تَرَاجِمَة — translated مُتَرْجَم

7 II عَلَّمَ يُعَلِّمُ 'allama yu'allimu to teach ه، هـ علم

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نُعَلِّمُ	أُعَلِّمُ			عَلَّمْنَا	عَلَّمْتُ
	تُعَلِّمُونَ	تُعَلِّمَانِ	تُعَلِّمُ	عَلَّمْتُمْ	عَلَّمْتُمَا	عَلَّمْتَ
	تُعَلِّمْنَ	تُعَلِّمَانِ	تُعَلِّمِينَ	عَلَّمْتُنَّ	عَلَّمْتُمَا	عَلَّمْتِ
	يُعَلِّمُونَ	يُعَلِّمَانِ	يُعَلِّمُ	عَلَّمُوا	عَلَّمَا	عَلَّمَ
	يُعَلِّمْنَ	تُعَلِّمَانِ	تُعَلِّمُ	عَلَّمْنَ	عَلَّمَتَا	عَلَّمَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نُعَلِّمْ	أُعَلِّمْ			نُعَلِّمَ	أُعَلِّمَ
تُعَلِّمُوا	تُعَلِّمَا	تُعَلِّمْ	تُعَلِّمُوا	تُعَلِّمَا	تُعَلِّمَ
تُعَلِّمْنَ	تُعَلِّمَا	تُعَلِّمِي	تُعَلِّمْنَ	تُعَلِّمَا	تُعَلِّمِي
يُعَلِّمُوا	يُعَلِّمَا	يُعَلِّمْ	يُعَلِّمُوا	يُعَلِّمَا	يُعَلِّمَ
يُعَلِّمْنَ	تُعَلِّمَا	تُعَلِّمْ	يُعَلِّمْنَ	تُعَلِّمَا	تُعَلِّمَ

Verbal Noun ta'līm تَعْلِيم **Participle** mu'allim مُعَلِّم **Imperative** 'allim

عَلِّمْ عَلِّمَا عَلِّمُوا
عَلِّمِي عَلِّمَا عَلِّمْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'allamu يُعَلَّمُ **Perfect** 'ullima عُلِّمَ

Participle mu'allam مُعَلَّم

I (علم) عَلِمَ يَعْلَمُ to know 4; IV أَعْلَمَ to notify 10 ه، هـ\ب

V تَعَلَّمَ to learn هـ 11; X اِسْتَعْلَمَ to inquire of ... about 23 ه\عن، هـ

علم ج عُلُوم knowledge, science علمي scientific تَعْلِيم teaching

عَالِم ج عُلَمَاء scholar مُعَلِّم\مُعَلِّمَة teacher تَعْلِيمِي educational

مُتَعَلِّم apprentice إِعْلَام notification مَعْلُوم of course

مَعْلُومَات information عَلَامَة (تِجَارِيَّة) (trade-)mark

عَالَم ج عَوَالِم world تَعْلِيمَات instructions اِسْتِعْلَام inquiry

عِلْمًا وعَمَلاً in theory and practice عِلْم النَّفْس psychology

تَعْلِيم مُبَرْمَج programmed learning على عِلْم ب aware of

8 **IIQ** تَزَلْزَلَ يَتَزَلْزَلُ tazalzala yatazalzalu to quake **زلزل**
(said literally of the earth, or figuratively otherwise)

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect		
تَتَزَلْزَلُ		أَتَزَلْزَلُ	تَزَلْزَلْنَا		تَزَلْزَلْتُ
تَتَزَلْزَلُونَ	تَتَزَلْزَلاَنِ	تَتَزَلْزَلُ	تَزَلْزَلْتُمْ	تَزَلْزَلْتُمَا	تَزَلْزَلْتَ
تَتَزَلْزَلْنَ	تَتَزَلْزَلاَنِ	تَتَزَلْزَلِينَ	تَزَلْزَلْتُنَّ	تَزَلْزَلْتُمَا	تَزَلْزَلْتِ
يَتَزَلْزَلُونَ	يَتَزَلْزَلاَنِ	يَتَزَلْزَلُ	تَزَلْزَلُوا	تَزَلْزَلاَ	تَزَلْزَلَ
يَتَزَلْزَلْنَ	تَتَزَلْزَلاَنِ	تَتَزَلْزَلُ	تَزَلْزَلْنَ	تَزَلْزَلَتَا	تَزَلْزَلَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
تَتَزَلْزَلْ		أَتَزَلْزَلْ	تَتَزَلْزَلَ		أَتَزَلْزَلَ
تَتَزَلْزَلُوا	تَتَزَلْزَلاَ	تَتَزَلْزَلْ	تَتَزَلْزَلُوا	تَتَزَلْزَلاَ	تَتَزَلْزَلَ
تَتَزَلْزَلْنَ	تَتَزَلْزَلاَ	تَتَزَلْزَلِي	تَتَزَلْزَلْنَ	تَتَزَلْزَلاَ	تَتَزَلْزَلِي
يَتَزَلْزَلُوا	يَتَزَلْزَلاَ	يَتَزَلْزَلْ	يَتَزَلْزَلُوا	يَتَزَلْزَلاَ	يَتَزَلْزَلَ
يَتَزَلْزَلْنَ	تَتَزَلْزَلاَ	تَتَزَلْزَلْ	يَتَزَلْزَلْنَ	تَتَزَلْزَلاَ	تَتَزَلْزَلَ

Verbal Noun tazalzul تَزَلْزُل **Participle** mutazalzil مُتَزَلْزِل **Imperative** tazalzal

تَزَلْزَلُوا	تَزَلْزَلاَ	تَزَلْزَلْ
تَزَلْزَلْنَ	تَزَلْزَلاَ	تَزَلْزَلِي

PASSIVE does not exist in Form IIQ.

IQ (زَلْزَال\زِلْزَال) زَلْزَلَ يُزَلْزِلُ to shake هـ ، 6

زَلْزَلَة ج زَلاَزِل	earthquake	زَلْزَال\زِلْزَال	convulsion, earthquake
زِلْزَالِي	seismic	عِلْم الزِلْزَال	seismology
مَسْح زِلْزَالِي	seismic survey	اِسْتِكْشَاف زِلْزَالِي	seismic exploration

9 III نَاسَبَ يُنَاسِبُ nāsaba yunāsibu to suit ه، ه نسب

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
نُنَاسِبُ	أُنَاسِبُ		نَاسَبْنَا	نَاسَبْتُ	
تُنَاسِبُونَ	تُنَاسِبَانِ	تُنَاسِبُ	نَاسَبْتُمْ	نَاسَبْتُمَا	نَاسَبْتَ
تُنَاسِبْنَ	تُنَاسِبَانِ	تُنَاسِبِينَ	نَاسَبْتُنَّ	نَاسَبْتُمَا	نَاسَبْتِ
يُنَاسِبُونَ	يُنَاسِبَانِ	يُنَاسِبُ	نَاسَبُوا	نَاسَبَا	نَاسَبَ
يُنَاسِبْنَ	تُنَاسِبَانِ	تُنَاسِبُ	نَاسَبْنَ	نَاسَبَتَا	نَاسَبَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نُنَاسِبْ	أُنَاسِبْ		نُنَاسِبَ	أُنَاسِبَ	
تُنَاسِبُوا	تُنَاسِبَا	تُنَاسِبْ	تُنَاسِبُوا	تُنَاسِبَا	تُنَاسِبَ
تُنَاسِبْنَ	تُنَاسِبَا	تُنَاسِبِي	تُنَاسِبْنَ	تُنَاسِبَا	تُنَاسِبِي
يُنَاسِبُوا	يُنَاسِبَا	يُنَاسِبْ	يُنَاسِبُوا	يُنَاسِبَا	يُنَاسِبَ
يُنَاسِبْنَ	تُنَاسِبَا	تُنَاسِبْ	يُنَاسِبْنَ	تُنَاسِبَا	تُنَاسِبَ

Verbal Noun munāsaba مُنَاسَبَة **Participle** munāsib مُنَاسِب **Imperative** nāsib

نَاسِبْ نَاسِبَا نَاسِبُوا
نَاسِبِي نَاسِبَا نَاسِبْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yunāsabu يُنَاسَبُ **Perfect** nūsiba نُوسِبَ

Participle munāsab مُنَاسَب

I (نِسْبَة) نَسَبَ يَنْسُبُ\يَنْسِبُ to correlate with إلى ه, to relate to إلى ه

1, 2; VI تَنَاسَبَ to (be) relate(d) to each other 12

VIII اِنْتَسَبَ to belong to إلى 14; X اِسْتَنْسَبَ to approve of ه 23

مُنَاسَبَة suitability, occasion, opportunity — مُنَاسِب appropriate

نِسْبَة relationship, ratio — نَسَبِي relative (adj.)

نَسَبِيَّة relativity — مُتَنَاسِب proportionate

مُنْتَسِب associate(d) — اِنْتِسَاب affiliation

مَنْسُوب إلى pertaining to — مَنْسُوب البَحْر sea-level

نِسْبَة مِئَوِيَّة percentage — بالنِّسْبَة إلى in relation to, by comparison with

10 IV أَخْبَرَ يُخْبِرُ 'akhbara yukhbiru to inform ه، ب خبر

ACTIVE Imperfect			Perfect		
نُخْبِرُ	أُخْبِرُ		أَخْبَرْنَا		أَخْبَرْتُ
تُخْبِرُونَ	تُخْبِرَانِ	تُخْبِرُ	أَخْبَرْتُمْ	أَخْبَرْتُمَا	أَخْبَرْتَ
تُخْبِرْنَ	تُخْبِرَانِ	تُخْبِرِينَ	أَخْبَرْتُنَّ	أَخْبَرْتُمَا	أَخْبَرْتِ
يُخْبِرُونَ	يُخْبِرَانِ	يُخْبِرُ	أَخْبَرُوا	أَخْبَرَا	أَخْبَرَ
يُخْبِرْنَ	يُخْبِرَانِ	تُخْبِرُ	أَخْبَرْنَ	أَخْبَرَتَا	أَخْبَرَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نُخْبِرْ	أُخْبِرْ		نُخْبِرَ		أُخْبِرَ
تُخْبِرُوا	تُخْبِرَا	تُخْبِرْ	تُخْبِرُوا	تُخْبِرَا	تُخْبِرَ
تُخْبِرْنَ	تُخْبِرَا	تُخْبِري	تُخْبِرْنَ	تُخْبِرَا	تُخْبِري
يُخْبِرُوا	يُخْبِرَا	يُخْبِرْ	يُخْبِرُوا	يُخْبِرَا	يُخْبِرَ
يُخْبِرْنَ	يُخْبِرَا	تُخْبِرْ	يُخْبِرْنَ	تُخْبِرَا	تُخْبِرَ

Verbal Noun 'ikhbār Participle mukhbir Imperative 'akhbir

إِخْبَار	مُخْبِر	أَخْبِرُوا	أَخْبِرْ
		أَخْبِرْنَ	أَخْبِرَا
			أَخْبِري

PASSIVE Imperfect yukhbaru يُخْبَرُ Perfect 'ukhbira أُخْبِرَ

Participle mukhbar مُخْبَر

I (خَبْرَة\خُبْر) خَبَرَ يَخْبُرُ to test, to experience هـ 1; II خَبَّرَ to notify ه، ب 7; III خَابَرَ to write to ه 9; VI تَخَابَرَ to write to each other 12

VIII اِخْتَبَرَ to do research into هـ 14; X اِسْتَخْبَرَ to inquire of … about ه، عن 23

خَبَر ج أَخْبَار news خِبْرَة experience مُخْبِر reporter إِخْتِبَار test

خَبِير ج خُبَرَاء expert مُخْتَبَر laboratory اِخْتِبَارِي experimental

اِسْتِخْبَار inquiry مُخَابَرَة communication ذو خِبْرَة experienced

خِدْمَةَ المُخَابَرَات intelligence service نَشْرَةَ الأَخْبَار news bulletin

خَبَر إلى a message for

11 V تَدَخَّلَ يَتَدَخَّلُ tadakhkhala yatadakhkhalu — دخل

to intervene/interfere in في

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect		
تَتَدَخَّلُ	أَتَدَخَّلُ		تَدَخَّلْنَا	تَدَخَّلَتْ	تَدَخَّلْتُ
تَتَدَخَّلُونَ	تَتَدَخَّلُ	تَتَدَخَّلاَنِ	تَدَخَّلْتُمْ	تَدَخَّلَتْمَا	تَدَخَّلْتَ
تَتَدَخَّلْنَ	تَتَدَخَّلِينَ	تَتَدَخَّلاَنِ	تَدَخَّلْتُنَّ	تَدَخَّلَتْمَا	تَدَخَّلْتِ
يَتَدَخَّلُونَ	يَتَدَخَّلُ	يَتَدَخَّلاَنِ	تَدَخَّلُوا	تَدَخَّلاَ	تَدَخَّلَ
يَتَدَخَّلْنَ	تَتَدَخَّلُ	تَتَدَخَّلاَنِ	تَدَخَّلْنَ	تَدَخَّلَتَا	تَدَخَّلَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
تَتَدَخَّلْ	أَتَدَخَّلْ		نَتَدَخَّلَ		أَتَدَخَّلَ
تَتَدَخَّلُوا	تَتَدَخَّلْ	تَتَدَخَّلاَ	تَتَدَخَّلُوا	تَتَدَخَّلاَ	تَتَدَخَّلَ
تَتَدَخَّلْنَ	تَتَدَخَّلِي	تَتَدَخَّلاَ	تَتَدَخَّلْنَ	تَتَدَخَّلاَ	تَتَدَخَّلِي
يَتَدَخَّلُوا	يَتَدَخَّلْ	يَتَدَخَّلاَ	يَتَدَخَّلُوا	يَتَدَخَّلاَ	يَتَدَخَّلَ
يَتَدَخَّلْنَ	تَتَدَخَّلْ	تَتَدَخَّلاَ	يَتَدَخَّلْنَ	تَتَدَخَّلاَ	تَتَدَخَّلَ

Verbal Noun tadakhkhul — تَدَخُّل

Imperative tadakhkhal: تَدَخَّلْ تَدَخَّلاَ تَدَخَّلُوا / تَدَخَّلِي تَدَخَّلاَ تَدَخَّلْنَ

Participle mutadakhkhil مُتَدَخِّل

PASSIVE° **Perfect** tudukhkhila تُدُخِّلَ

Imperfect yutadakhkhalu يُتَدَخَّلُ **Participle** mutadakhkhal مُتَدَخَّل

I دَخَلَ يَدْخُلُ (دُخُول) to enter في\إلى 1هـ; II دَخَّلَ to insert 7هـ

IV أَدْخَلَ to admit 10; VI تَدَاخَلَ 10، هـ; V تَدَخَّلَ 11 = 12

دَخْل income — دَاخِل inside (noun, preposition) — دَاخِلِي internal

إِدْخَال introduction — تَدَخُّل\تَدَاخُل intervention, interference

دُخُول entry, entrance (act) — مَدْخَل ج مَدَاخِل entry, entrance (place)

عَدَم التَدَخُّل non-intervention — دَخِيلَة core

دَخِيلَة القَلْب the innermost heart — حَرْب دَاخِلِيَة civil war

وِزَارَة\وَزِير (الأُمُور) الدَاخِلِيَّة Ministry/Minister of the Interior

12 VI تَظَاهَرَ يَتَظَاهَرُ taẓāhara yaṭaẓāharu — ظهر

to demonstrate against على , to feign ب

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نَتَظَاهَرُ	أَتَظَاهَرُ		تَظَاهَرْنَا	تَظَاهَرْتُ
تَتَظَاهَرُونَ	تَتَظَاهَرُ	تَتَظَاهَرَانِ	تَظَاهَرْتُمَا	تَظَاهَرْتَ
تَتَظَاهَرْنَ	تَتَظَاهَرِينَ	تَتَظَاهَرَانِ	تَظَاهَرْتُمَا	تَظَاهَرْتِ
يَتَظَاهَرُونَ	يَتَظَاهَرُ	يَتَظَاهَرَانِ	تَظَاهَرُوا	تَظَاهَرَا	تَظَاهَرَ
يَتَظَاهَرْنَ	تَتَظَاهَرُ	تَتَظَاهَرَانِ	تَظَاهَرْنَ	تَظَاهَرَتَا	تَظَاهَرَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نَتَظَاهَرْ	أَتَظَاهَرْ		نَتَظَاهَرَ	أَتَظَاهَرَ
تَتَظَاهَرُوا	تَتَظَاهَرْ	تَتَظَاهَرَا	تَتَظَاهَرُوا	تَتَظَاهَرَا	تَتَظَاهَرَ
تَتَظَاهَرْنَ	تَتَظَاهَرِي	تَتَظَاهَرَا	تَتَظَاهَرْنَ	تَتَظَاهَرَا	تَتَظَاهَرِي
يَتَظَاهَرُوا	يَتَظَاهَرْ	يَتَظَاهَرَا	يَتَظَاهَرُوا	يَتَظَاهَرَا	يَتَظَاهَرَ
يَتَظَاهَرْنَ	تَتَظَاهَرْ	تَتَظَاهَرَا	يَتَظَاهَرْنَ	تَتَظَاهَرَا	تَتَظَاهَرَ

Verbal Noun taẓāhur تَظَاهُر **Participle** mutaẓāhir مُتَظَاهِر **Imperative** taẓāhar

تَظَاهَرْ تَظَاهَرَا تَظَاهَرُوا
تَظَاهَرِي تَظَاهَرَا تَظَاهَرْنَ

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yutaẓāharu يُتَظَاهَرُ **Perfect** tuẓūhira تُظُوهِرَ

Participle mutaẓāhar مُتَظَاهَر

I (ظُهُور) ظَهَرَ يَظْهَرُ to appear ا 3; II ظَهَّرَ to endorse (e.g. a document)

هـ 7; IV/X أَظْهَرَ\اِسْتَظْهَرَ to show هـ 10/23

ظَهْر ج ظُهُور	back (noun)	ظُهْر ج أَظْهَار	midday
ظُهُور	appearance	مَظْهَر ج مَظَاهِر	appearance
مُظَاهَرَة	demonstration	تَظَاهُر	demonstration, dissemblance
مُتَظَاهِر	demonstrator	ظَاهِرَة ج ظَوَاهِر	phenomenon
إِظْهَار	exposition	على ظَهْر	on board
في المَظْهَر	in appearance	يَظْهَر مَرِيضًا	he seems (to be) ill
ظَهْرًا لِبَطْن	upside down	الظَاهِر (لي) أنّ	it seems (to me) that

13 VII انْقَلَبَ يَنْقَلِبُ inqalaba yanqalibu to be overturned قلب

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect		
	أَنْقَلِبُ	تَنْقَلِبُ	انْقَلَبْتُ	انْقَلَبْنَا	انْقَلَبْتُ
تَنْقَلِبُ	تَنْقَلِبُ	تَنْقَلِبَانِ	انْقَلَبْتَ	انْقَلَبْتُمَا	انْقَلَبْتُمْ
تَنْقَلِبُونَ	تَنْقَلِبِينَ	تَنْقَلِبَانِ	انْقَلَبْتِ	انْقَلَبْتُمَا	انْقَلَبْتُنَّ
تَنْقَلِبْنَ	يَنْقَلِبُ	يَنْقَلِبَانِ	انْقَلَبَ	انْقَلَبَا	انْقَلَبُوا
يَنْقَلِبُونَ	تَنْقَلِبُ	تَنْقَلِبَانِ	انْقَلَبَتْ	انْقَلَبَتَا	انْقَلَبْنَ
يَنْقَلِبْنَ					

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	أَنْقَلِبْ	تَنْقَلِبْ	أَنْقَلِبَ	تَنْقَلِبَ	
تَنْقَلِبْ	تَنْقَلِبْ	تَنْقَلِبَا	تَنْقَلِبَ	تَنْقَلِبَا	تَنْقَلِبُوا
تَنْقَلِبُوا	تَنْقَلِبِي	تَنْقَلِبَا	تَنْقَلِبِي	تَنْقَلِبَا	تَنْقَلِبْنَ
تَنْقَلِبْنَ	يَنْقَلِبْ	يَنْقَلِبَا	يَنْقَلِبَ	يَنْقَلِبَا	يَنْقَلِبُوا
يَنْقَلِبُوا	تَنْقَلِبْ	تَنْقَلِبَا	تَنْقَلِبَ	تَنْقَلِبَا	يَنْقَلِبْنَ
يَنْقَلِبْنَ					

Verbal Noun inqilāb **Participle** munqalib **Imperative** inqalib

انْقِلاَب مُنْقَلِب انْقَلِبُوا انْقَلِبَا انْقَلِبْ

انْقَلِبْنَ انْقَلِبَا انْقَلِبِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yunqalabu يُنْقَلَبُ **Perfect** unquliba أُنْقُلِبَ

I/II قَلَبَ يَقْلِبُ (قَلْب)\قَلَّبَ to invert هـ, to reverse هـ 2/7

V تَقَلَّبَ to be inverted, to be reversed 11

قَلْب ج قُلُوب heart قَلْبِي cardiac, cordial قَلْبِيًّا cordially

قَلاَّب\مُتَقَلِّب variable انْقِلاَب coup d'état تَقَلُّب inversion

قَالَب ج قَوَالِب mould, matrix من كُلِّ قَلْبِي with all my heart

مُنْقَلَب place of defeat, one's 'Waterloo' مَقْلُوب inverted

انْقَلَبَ ظَهْرًا لِبَطْن to be turned upside down

ضَعِيف القَلْب fainthearted لَطِيف القَلْب kindhearted

مُنْقَلَب صَيْفِي Tropic of Cancer مُنْقَلَب شَتَوِي Tropic of Capricorn

14 VIII اِعْتَبَرَ يَعْتَبِرُ i'tabara ya'tabiru to consider هـ, to esteem ه عبر

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَعْتَبِرُ		أَعْتَبِرُ	اعْتَبَرْنَا	اعْتَبَرْتُ
	تَعْتَبِرُونَ	تَعْتَبِرَانِ	تَعْتَبِرُ	اعْتَبَرْتُمْ	اعْتَبَرْتَ
	تَعْتَبِرْنَ	تَعْتَبِرَانِ	تَعْتَبِرِينَ	اعْتَبَرْتُنَّ	اعْتَبَرْتِ
	يَعْتَبِرُونَ	يَعْتَبِرَانِ	يَعْتَبِرُ	اعْتَبَرُوا	اعْتَبَرَ
	يَعْتَبِرْنَ	تَعْتَبِرَانِ	تَعْتَبِرُ	اعْتَبَرْنَ	اعْتَبَرَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
	نَعْتَبِرْ		أَعْتَبِرْ	نَعْتَبِرَ	أَعْتَبِرَ
	تَعْتَبِرُوا	تَعْتَبِرَا	تَعْتَبِرْ	تَعْتَبِرُوا	تَعْتَبِرَا	تَعْتَبِرَ
	تَعْتَبِرْنَ	تَعْتَبِرَا	تَعْتَبِرِي	تَعْتَبِرْنَ	تَعْتَبِرَا	تَعْتَبِرِي
	يَعْتَبِرُوا	يَعْتَبِرَا	يَعْتَبِرْ	يَعْتَبِرُوا	يَعْتَبِرَا	يَعْتَبِرَ
	يَعْتَبِرْنَ	تَعْتَبِرَا	تَعْتَبِرْ	يَعْتَبِرْنَ	تَعْتَبِرَا	تَعْتَبِرَ

Verbal Noun i'tibār **Participle** mu'tabir **Imperative** i'tabir

اِعْتِبَار مُعْتَبِر اِعْتَبِرُوا اِعْتَبِرَا اِعْتَبِرْ
اِعْتَبِرْنَ اِعْتَبِرَا اِعْتَبِرِي

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yu'tabaru يُعْتَبَرُ **Perfect** u'tubira أُعْتُبِرَ
Participle mu'tabar مُعْتَبَر

I (عَبَرَ يَعْبُرُ (عَبْر\عُبُور to cross هـ 1; II عَبَّرَ to express عن 7

عَبْرَ	across, beyond	عَبْر\عُبُور	crossing
عِبْرِي	Hebrew	عِبْرَة	admonition, precept
عِبَارَة	expression	تَعْبِير عن	expression of
مُعَبِّر عن	expressive of	مَعْبَر ج مَعَابِر	crossing-point
اعْتِبَار	consideration, esteem	اعْتِبَاراً من	with effect from
اعْتِبَاراً ل	in view of	أَخَذَ بِعَيْنِ الاعْتِبَار	to take into account
فِي كُلِّ اعْتِبَار	in every respect		

15 VIII اِتَّبَعَ يَتَّبِعُ ittaba'a yattabi'u to follow ه ، ه ، to comply with ه — تبع

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect		
	نَتَّبِعُ	أَتَّبِعُ	اتَّبَعْنَا	اتَّبَعْتُ	
	تَتَّبِعُونَ	تَتَّبِعَانِ	تَتَّبِعُ	اتَّبَعْتُمْ	اتَّبَعْتَ
	تَتَّبِعْنَ	تَتَّبِعَانِ	تَتَّبِعِينَ	اتَّبَعْتُنَّ	اتَّبَعْتِ
	يَتَّبِعُونَ	يَتَّبِعَانِ	يَتَّبِعُوا	اتَّبَعُوا	اتَّبَعَ
	يَتَّبِعْنَ	تَتَّبِعَانِ	تَتَّبِعْ	اتَّبَعْنَ	اتَّبَعَتْ
	Jussive		Subjunctive		
	نَتَّبِعْ	أَتَّبِعْ	نَتَّبِعَ		أَتَّبِعَ
	تَتَّبِعُوا	تَتَّبِعَا	تَتَّبِعُوا	تَتَّبِعَا	تَتَّبِعَ
	تَتَّبِعْنَ	تَتَّبِعَا	تَتَّبِعْنَ	تَتَّبِعَا	تَتَّبِعِي
	يَتَّبِعُوا	يَتَّبِعَا	يَتَّبِعُوا	يَتَّبِعَا	يَتَّبِعَ
	يَتَّبِعْنَ	تَتَّبِعَا	يَتَّبِعْنَ	تَتَّبِعَا	تَتَّبِعَ

Verbal Noun ittibā' اِتِّبَاع — Participle muttabi' مُتَّبِع — Imperative ittabi' اتَّبِعْ اتَّبِعَا اتَّبِعُوا اتَّبِعْنَ اتَّبِعِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yuttaba'u يُتَّبَعُ Perfect uttubi'a أُتُّبِعَ

Participle muttaba' مُتَّبَع

I (تَبِعَ\تَبَاعَة) تَبِعَ يَتْبَعُ 4 = VIII اِتَّبَعَ 15; III تَابَعَ to follow up ه 9

IV أَتْبَعَ to subordinate someone to someone ه ه 10

VI تَتَابَعَ to occur successively 12; X اِسْتَتْبَعَ to entail ه 23

تَبِعَة consequence — تَابِع ج تَبَعَة subsequent — تَابِعِيَّة nationality

تَبَع subordination, subordinate — تِبَاعًا successively

تَتَابُع succession — اتِّبَاع compliance with

مُتَّبَع complied with — اتِّبَاعًا ل in compliance with

تَابِع ج أَتْبَاع ل adherent of — دَوْلَة تَابِعَة client/satellite state

16 VIII اِدَّحَرَ يَدَّحِرُ iddaḥara yaddaḥiru to be repelled; to collapse دحر

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
			أَدَّحِرُ	ادَّحَرْنَا		اِدَّحَرْتُ
		تَدَّحِرَانِ	تَدَّحِرُ	اِدَّحَرْتُمَا	اِدَّحَرْتُمْ	اِدَّحَرْتَ
		تَدَّحِرَانِ	تَدَّحِرِينَ	اِدَّحَرْتُمَا	اِدَّحَرْتُنَّ	اِدَّحَرْتِ
		يَدَّحِرَانِ	يَدَّحِرُ	اِدَّحَرَا	اِدَّحَرُوا	اِدَّحَرَ
		تَدَّحِرَانِ	تَدَّحِرُ	اِدَّحَرَتَا	اِدَّحَرْنَ	اِدَّحَرَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive		
			أَدَّحِرْ	نَدَّحِرَ		أَدَّحِرَ
		تَدَّحِرَا	تَدَّحِرْ	تَدَّحِرُوا	تَدَّحِرَا	تَدَّحِرَ
		تَدَّحِرَا	تَدَّحِرِي	تَدَّحِرْنَ	تَدَّحِرَا	تَدَّحِرِي
		يَدَّحِرَا	يَدَّحِرْ	يَدَّحِرُوا	يَدَّحِرَا	يَدَّحِرَ
		تَدَّحِرَا	تَدَّحِرْ	يَدَّحِرْنَ	تَدَّحِرَا	تَدَّحِرَ

Verbal Noun iddiḥār **Participle** muddaḥir **Imperative** iddaḥir

اِدِّحَار	مُدَّحِر	اِدَّحِرُوا	اِدَّحِرَا	اِدَّحِرْ
		اِدَّحِرْنَ	اِدَّحِرَا	اِدَّحِرِي

PASSIVE none

I دَحَرَ يَدْحَرُ (دَحْر) 3 to repel

مَدْحُور repelled; expelled اِنْدِحَار\اِدِّحَار collapse

17 VIII اِزْدَحَمَ يَزْدَحِمُ izdaḥama yazdaḥimu to throng with ب زَحِمَ

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect		
	أَزْدَحِمُ	نَزْدَحِمُ	ازْدَحَمْتُ	ازْدَحَمْنَا	
تَزْدَحِمُ	تَزْدَحِمَ	تَزْدَحِمَانِ	تَزْدَحِمُونَ	ازْدَحَمْتَ	ازْدَحَمْتُمَا	ازْدَحَمْتُمْ
تَزْدَحِمِينَ	تَزْدَحِمَانِ	تَزْدَحِمْنَ	ازْدَحَمْتِ	ازْدَحَمْتُمَا	ازْدَحَمْتُنَّ
يَزْدَحِمُ	يَزْدَحِمَ	يَزْدَحِمَانِ	يَزْدَحِمُونَ	ازْدَحَمَ	ازْدَحَمَا	ازْدَحَمُوا
تَزْدَحِمُ	تَزْدَحِمَ	تَزْدَحِمَانِ	يَزْدَحِمْنَ	ازْدَحَمَتْ	ازْدَحَمَتَا	ازْدَحَمْنَ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	أَزْدَحِمْ	نَزْدَحِمْ	أَزْدَحِمَ	نَزْدَحِمَ	
تَزْدَحِمْ	تَزْدَحِمَا	تَزْدَحِمُوا	تَزْدَحِمَ	تَزْدَحِمَا	تَزْدَحِمُوا
تَزْدَحِمِي	تَزْدَحِمَا	تَزْدَحِمْنَ	تَزْدَحِمِي	تَزْدَحِمَا	تَزْدَحِمْنَ
يَزْدَحِمْ	يَزْدَحِمَا	يَزْدَحِمُوا	يَزْدَحِمَ	يَزْدَحِمَا	يَزْدَحِمُوا
تَزْدَحِمْ	تَزْدَحِمَا	يَزْدَحِمْنَ	تَزْدَحِمَ	تَزْدَحِمَا	يَزْدَحِمْنَ

Verbal Noun izdiḥām **Participle** muzdaḥim **Imperative** izdaḥim

اِزْدِحَام	مُزْدَحِم	اِزْدَحِمُوا	اِزْدَحِمَا	اِزْدَحِمْ
		اِزْدَحِمْنَ	اِزْدَحِمَا	اِزْدَحِمِي

PASSIVE none

I/III زَحَمَ يَزْحَمُ (زَحْم)\ زَاحَمَ to jostle ◊ 3/9; VI تَزَاحَمَ to crowd together 12

زَحْمَة\زِحَام\مُزْدَحَم\اِزْدِحَام	throng	مُزَاحَمَة\تَزَاحُم	competition
مُزَاحِم	rival	مُزْدَحِم	crowded

18 VIII اِصْطَنَعَ يَصْطَنِعُ iṣṭana'a yaṣṭani'u to manufacture هـ صنع

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نَصْطَنِعُ	أَصْطَنِعُ	اصْطَنَعْنَا	اصْطَنَعْتُ		
تَصْطَنِعُونَ	تَصْطَنِعَانِ	تَصْطَنِعُ	اصْطَنَعْتُمْ	اصْطَنَعْتُمَا	اصْطَنَعْتَ	
تَصْطَنِعْنَ	تَصْطَنِعَانِ	تَصْطَنِعِينَ	اصْطَنَعْتُنَّ	اصْطَنَعْتُمَا	اصْطَنَعْتِ	
يَصْطَنِعُونَ	يَصْطَنِعَانِ	يَصْطَنِعُ	اصْطَنَعُوا	اصْطَنَعَا	اصْطَنَعَ	
يَصْطَنِعْنَ	يَصْطَنِعَانِ	تَصْطَنِعُ	اصْطَنَعْنَ	اصْطَنَعَتَا	اصْطَنَعَتْ	

Jussive				Subjunctive		
	نَصْطَنِعْ	أَصْطَنِعْ		نَصْطَنِعَ	أَصْطَنِعَ	
تَصْطَنِعُوا	تَصْطَنِعَا	تَصْطَنِعْ	تَصْطَنِعُوا	تَصْطَنِعَا	تَصْطَنِعَ	
تَصْطَنِعْنَ	تَصْطَنِعَا	تَصْطَنِعِي	تَصْطَنِعْنَ	تَصْطَنِعَا	تَصْطَنِعِي	
يَصْطَنِعُوا	يَصْطَنِعَا	يَصْطَنِعْ	يَصْطَنِعُوا	يَصْطَنِعَا	يَصْطَنِعَ	
يَصْطَنِعْنَ	تَصْطَنِعَا	تَصْطَنِعْ	يَصْطَنِعْنَ	تَصْطَنِعَا	تَصْطَنِعَ	

Verbal Noun	Participle		Imperative		
اِصْطِنَاع	مُصْطَنِع	اصْطَنِعُوا	اصْطَنِعَا	اصْطَنِعْ	
		اصْطَنِعْنَ	اصْطَنِعَا	اصْطَنِعِي	

PASSIVE Imperfect yuṣṭana'u يُصْطَنَعُ Perfect uṣṭuni'a أُصْطُنِعَ

Participle muṣṭana' مُصْطَنَع

I صَنَعَ يَصْنَعُ (صَنْع\صُنْع) to contrive هـ 3; II صَنَّعَ to industralise هـ 7

V تَصَنَّعَ to feign هـ 11; X اِسْتَصْنَعَ to cause to be made هـ 23

صَنْع\صُنْع	production	صَنْعِي	synthetic
صِنَاعَة	craft, industry	صِنَاعِي	artificial
مَصْنَع ج مَصَانِع	factory	تَصْنِيع	industrialisation
تَصَنُّع	pretence	اصْطِنَاع	manufacture
مَصْنُوع	product	مُصْطَنَع	artificial
صاحِب ج أَصْحاب الصَنْعَة	craftsman	رجل الصِنَاعَة	industrialist
دَوْلَة صِنَاعِية	industrialised country		

19 VIII اِضْطَرَبَ يَضْطَرِبُ iḍṭaraba yaḍṭaribu to clash ضرب

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	أَضْطَرِبُ		اِضْطَرَبْنَا		اِضْطَرَبْتُ
	تَضْطَرِبُ	تَضْطَرِبَانِ	تَضْطَرِبُونَ	اِضْطَرَبْتُمْ	اِضْطَرَبْتَ اِضْطَرَبْتُمَا
	تَضْطَرِبِينَ	تَضْطَرِبَانِ	تَضْطَرِبْنَ	اِضْطَرَبْتُنَّ	اِضْطَرَبْتِ اِضْطَرَبْتُمَا
	يَضْطَرِبُ	يَضْطَرِبَانِ	يَضْطَرِبُونَ	اِضْطَرَبُوا	اِضْطَرَبَ اِضْطَرَبَا
	تَضْطَرِبُ	تَضْطَرِبَانِ	يَضْطَرِبْنَ	اِضْطَرَبْنَ	اِضْطَرَبَتْ اِضْطَرَبَتَا

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	أَضْطَرِبْ		نَضْطَرِبَ		أَضْطَرِبَ
	تَضْطَرِبْ	تَضْطَرِبَا	تَضْطَرِبُوا	تَضْطَرِبَا	تَضْطَرِبَ
	تَضْطَرِبِي	تَضْطَرِبَا	تَضْطَرِبْنَ	تَضْطَرِبَا	تَضْطَرِبِي
	يَضْطَرِبْ	يَضْطَرِبَا	يَضْطَرِبُوا	يَضْطَرِبَا	يَضْطَرِبَ
	تَضْطَرِبْ	تَضْطَرِبَا	يَضْطَرِبْنَ	تَضْطَرِبَا	تَضْطَرِبَ

Verbal Noun iḍṭirāb اِضْطِرَاب **Participle** muḍṭarib مُضْطَرِب **Imperative** iḍṭarib اِضْطَرِبْ اِضْطَرِبَا اِضْطَرِبُوا اِضْطَرِبِي اِضْطَرِبَا اِضْطَرِبْنَ

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yuḍṭarabu يُضْطَرَبُ **Perfect** uḍṭuriba أُضْطُرِبَ

I (ضَرْب) ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ to strike ه, ه, to multiply by ه على 2

III ضَارَبَ to fight with ه 9; IV أَضْرَبَ to go on strike 10

VI تَضَارَبَ to fight one another 12

ضَرْبَة	blow, stroke	ضَرْب	beating, multiplication
ضَرِيبَة ج ضَرَائِب	tax	إِضْرَاب	strike
مُضْرِب	striker	مُتَضَارِب	incompatible
اِضْطِرَاب	commotion	مُضْطَرِب	agitated
مِضْرَاب	bat, racket	تَضَارُب	conflict
ضَرِيبَة الدَّخْل	income tax	ضَرَبَ ضَرِيبَة على	to levy a tax on

ضَرِيبَة على القِيمَة المُضَافَة value-added tax, VAT

20 VIII اِطَّلَعَ يَطَّلِعُ iṭṭala'a yaṭṭali'u to become aware of على طلع

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَطَّلِعُ	أَطَّلِعُ	اطَّلَعْنَا	اطَّلَعْتُ	
	تَطَّلِعُونَ	تَطَّلِعَانِ	تَطَّلِعُ	اطَّلَعْتُمْ	اطَّلَعْتُمَا	اطَّلَعْتَ
	تَطَّلَعْنَ	تَطَّلَعَانِ	تَطَّلِعِينَ	اطَّلَعْتُنَّ	اطَّلَعْتُمَا	اطَّلَعْتِ
	يَطَّلِعُونَ	يَطَّلِعَانِ	يَطَّلِعُ	اطَّلَعُوا	اطَّلَعَا	اطَّلَعَ
	يَطَّلَعْنَ	تَطَّلَعَانِ	تَطَّلِعُ	اِطَّلَعْنَ	اِطَّلَعَتَا	اِطَّلَعَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	نَطَّلِعْ	أَطَّلِعْ	نَطَّلِعَ		أَطَّلِعَ
	تَطَّلِعُوا	تَطَّلِعَا	تَطَّلِعْ	تَطَّلِعُوا	تَطَّلِعَا	تَطَّلِعَ
	تَطَّلَعْنَ	تَطَّلَعَا	تَطَّلِعِي	تَطَّلَعْنَ	تَطَّلَعَا	تَطَّلِعِي
	يَطَّلِعُوا	يَطَّلَعَا	يَطَّلِعْ	يَطَّلِعُوا	يَطَّلَعَا	يَطَّلِعَ
	يَطَّلَعْنَ	تَطَّلَعَا	تَطَّلِعْ	يَطَّلَعْنَ	تَطَّلَعَا	تَطَّلِعَ

Verbal Noun iṭṭilā'	Participle muṭṭali'	Imperative iṭṭali'	
اِطِّلَاع	مُطَّلِع	اطَّلِعُوا	اطَّلِعَا	اطَّلِعْ
		اِطَّلَعْنَ	اِطَّلَعَا	اِطَّلِعِي

PASSIVE° Imperfect yuṭṭala'u يُطَّلَعُ Perfect uṭṭuli'a أُطُّلِعَ

Participle muṭṭala' مُطَّلَع

I طَلَعَ يَطْلُعُ (طُلُوع\مَطْلَع) to rise, to climb هـ, to mount هـ 1

III طَالَعَ to examine هـ 9; IV أَطْلَعَ to notify ه، على\من 10

V تَطَلَّعَ to watch for إلى 11; X اِسْتَطْلَعَ to consult ه 23

طُلُوع rising — مَطْلَع ج مَطَالِع point of departure

اطِّلَاع examination, information — مُطَّلِع observer, aware of على

مُطَّالِع reader — مُطَالَعَة perusal

اِسْتِطْلَاع research — اِسْتِطْلَاعِي exploratory

طُلُوع الشَّمْس\القَمَر sun-, moonrise — من ١٠٠ وطَالِع 100 and upwards

لِسُوء طَالِعِه unfortunately for him

21 VIII اِظَّلَمَ يَظَّلِمُ iżżalama yażżalimu to suffer wrong ظلم

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَظْلِمُ	أَظْلِمُ	اظْلِمْنَا		اظْلَمْتُ
	تَظْلَمُونَ	تَظْلَمَانِ	تَظْلَمُ	اظْلَمْتُمْ	اظْلَمْتُمَا	اظْلَمْتَ
	تَظْلَمْنَ	تَظْلَمَانِ	تَظْلَمِينَ	اظْلَمْتُنَّ	اظْلَمْتُمَا	اظْلَمْتِ
	يَظْلَمُونَ	يَظْلَمَانِ	يَظْلَمُ	اظْلَمُوا	اظْلَمَا	اظْلَمَ
	يَظْلَمْنَ	تَظْلَمَانِ	تَظْلَمُ	اظْلَمْنَ	اظْلَمَتَا	اظْلَمَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	نَظْلِمْ	أَظْلِمْ	نَظْلِمَ		أَظْلِمَ
	تَظْلَمُوا	تَظْلَمَا	تَظْلَمُ	تَظْلَمُوا	تَظْلَمَا	تَظْلَمَ
	تَظْلَمْنَ	تَظْلَمَا	تَظْلَمِي	تَظْلَمْنَ	تَظْلَمَا	تَظْلَمِي
	يَظْلَمُوا	يَظْلَمَا	يَظْلَمْ	يَظْلَمُوا	يَظْلَمَا	يَظْلَمَ
	يَظْلَمْنَ	تَظْلَمَا	تَظْلَمْ	يَظْلَمْنَ	تَظْلَمَا	تَظْلَمَ

Verbal Noun	Participle	Imperative		
اِظْلَام	مُظْلِم	اظْلِمُوا	اظْلِمَا	اظْلِمْ
		اِظْلَمْنَ	اِظْلَمَا	اِظْلَمِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** يُظْلَمُ yużżalamu **Perfect** أُظْلِمَ użżulima

I (ظلم\ظُلم) ظَلَمَ يَظْلِمُ to oppress ه 2; IV أَظْلَمَ to be(come) dark 10
V تَظَلَّمَ to complain about من 11; VII اِنْظَلَمَ 13 = VIII اِظَّلَمَ 21

ظُلْم	oppression, suppression	ظُلَامَة	injustice
ظَالِم	iniquitous	مَظْلُوم	wronged
ظُلْمًا	wrongfully	مَظْلَمَة ج مَظَالِم	injustice
مُظْلِم	dark	ظُلْمَة\ظَلَام\إِظْلَام	darkness

22 IX اِحْمَرَّ يَحْمَرُّ iḥmarra yaḥmarru to be/turn red, to blush حمر

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
			نَحْمَرُّ		اِحْمَرَرْنَا	اِحْمَرَرْتُ
			أَحْمَرُّ			
		تَحْمَرُّونَ	تَحْمَرُّ	تَحْمَرَّانِ	اِحْمَرَرْتُمْ	اِحْمَرَرْتَ
		تَحْمَرِرْنَ	تَحْمَرِّينَ	تَحْمَرَّانِ	اِحْمَرَرْتُنَّ	اِحْمَرَرْتِ
		يَحْمَرُّونَ	يَحْمَرُّ	يَحْمَرَّانِ	اِحْمَرُّوا	اِحْمَرَّ
		يَحْمَرِرْنَ	تَحْمَرُّ	تَحْمَرَّانِ	اِحْمَرَرْنَ	اِحْمَرَّتْ

Jussive (ii)				Subjunctive and Jussive (i)		
			نَحْمَرْ		نَحْمَرَّ	
			أَحْمَرِرْ			
		تَحْمَرُّوا	تَحْمَرِرْ	تَحْمَرَّا	تَحْمَرَّ	تَحْمَرَّ
		تَحْمَرِرْنَ	تَحْمَرِّي	تَحْمَرَّا	تَحْمَرِرْنَ	تَحْمَرِّي
		يَحْمَرُّوا	يَحْمَرِرْ	يَحْمَرَّا	يَحْمَرُّوا	يَحْمَرَّ
		يَحْمَرِرْنَ	تَحْمَرِرْ	تَحْمَرَّا	يَحْمَرِرْنَ	تَحْمَرَّ

Verbal Noun iḥmirār **Participle** muḥmarr **Imperative** iḥmarra/iḥmarir

اِحْمِرَار	مُحْمَرّ	اِحْمَرُّوا	اِحْمَرَّا	اِحْمَرِرْ\اِحْمَرَّ
		اِحْمَرِرْنَ	اِحْمَرَّا	اِحْمَرِّي

PASSIVE does not exist in Form IX.

II حَمَّرَ to make red ه, to roast ه, to fry ه 7

(m./f.) ج حُمْر (f.) حَمْرَاء ، (m.) أَحْمَر red	اِحْمِرَار	reddening
مُحَمَّر	roast(ed), fried	حِمَار ج حَمِير	donkey
تَحْتَ الأَحْمَر	infra-red	حُمْرَة	redness
الهلال الأَحْمَر	the Red Crescent	الصَّلِيب الأَحْمَر	the Red Cross
البَحْر الأَحْمَر	the Red Sea	أَكْثَر حُمْرَةً	redder

23 X اِسْتَقْبَلَ يَسْتَقْبِلُ istaqbala yastaqbilu to receive ه، هـ قبل

ACTIVE	Imperfect				Perfect		
نَسْتَقْبِلُ	أَسْتَقْبِلُ				اِسْتَقْبَلْتُ	اِسْتَقْبَلْنَا	
تَسْتَقْبِلُونَ	تَسْتَقْبِلاَنِ	تَسْتَقْبِلُ	تَسْتَقْبِلُونَ	تَسْتَقْبِلُ	اِسْتَقْبَلْتَ	اِسْتَقْبَلْتُمَا	اِسْتَقْبَلْتُمْ
تَسْتَقْبِلْنَ	تَسْتَقْبِلاَنِ	تَسْتَقْبِلِينَ	تَسْتَقْبِلْنَ	تَسْتَقْبِلِينَ	اِسْتَقْبَلْتِ	اِسْتَقْبَلْتُمَا	اِسْتَقْبَلْتُنَّ
يَسْتَقْبِلُونَ	يَسْتَقْبِلاَنِ	يَسْتَقْبِلُ	يَسْتَقْبِلُونَ	يَسْتَقْبِلُ	اِسْتَقْبَلَ	اِسْتَقْبَلاَ	اِسْتَقْبَلُوا
يَسْتَقْبِلْنَ	تَسْتَقْبِلاَنِ	تَسْتَقْبِلُ	يَسْتَقْبِلْنَ	تَسْتَقْبِلُ	اِسْتَقْبَلَتْ	اِسْتَقْبَلَتَا	اِسْتَقْبَلْنَ

Jussive					Subjunctive		
نَسْتَقْبِلْ	أَسْتَقْبِلْ				أَسْتَقْبِلَ	نَسْتَقْبِلَ	
تَسْتَقْبِلُوا	تَسْتَقْبِلاَ	تَسْتَقْبِلْ	تَسْتَقْبِلُوا	تَسْتَقْبِلْ	تَسْتَقْبِلَ	تَسْتَقْبِلاَ	تَسْتَقْبِلُوا
تَسْتَقْبِلْنَ	تَسْتَقْبِلاَ	تَسْتَقْبِلِي	تَسْتَقْبِلْنَ	تَسْتَقْبِلِي	تَسْتَقْبِلِي	تَسْتَقْبِلاَ	تَسْتَقْبِلْنَ
يَسْتَقْبِلُوا	يَسْتَقْبِلاَ	يَسْتَقْبِلْ	يَسْتَقْبِلُوا	يَسْتَقْبِلْ	يَسْتَقْبِلَ	يَسْتَقْبِلاَ	يَسْتَقْبِلُوا
يَسْتَقْبِلْنَ	تَسْتَقْبِلاَ	تَسْتَقْبِلْ	يَسْتَقْبِلْنَ	تَسْتَقْبِلْ	تَسْتَقْبِلَ	تَسْتَقْبِلاَ	يَسْتَقْبِلْنَ

Verbal Noun istiqbāl **Participle** mustaqbil **Imperative** istaqbil

اِسْتِقْبَال مُسْتَقْبِل اِسْتَقْبِلْ اِسْتَقْبِلاَ اِسْتَقْبِلُوا اِسْتَقْبِلِي اِسْتَقْبِلاَ اِسْتَقْبِلْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yustaqbalu يُسْتَقْبَلُ **Perfect** ustuqbila أُسْتُقْبِلَ

Participle mustaqbal مُسْتَقْبَل

I قَبِلَ يَقْبَلُ (قَبُول\قُبُول) to accept 4; III قَابَلَ to face ه، هـ\ب 9

IV أَقْبَلَ to approach على 10; V تَقَبَّلَ to accept هـ 11

VI تَقَابَلَ to face each other 12; VIII اِقْتَبَلَ 14 = X اِسْتَقْبَلَ 23

قَبْلَ before (prep.) قَبْلَ أَنْ before (conj.) قَبْلاً beforehand

قَبُول\قُبُول acceptance مُقَابَلَة encounter, interview مُقَابِل remuneration

إِقْبَال approach قَبِيلَة ج قَبَائِل tribe مُقْبِل next

مُسْتَقْبِل (radio) receiver مُسْتَقْبَل future اِسْتِقْبَال reception

قَابِل للاهْتِمَام noteworthy قَابِل للتَّجْدِيد renewable مِن قِبَلِ on the part of

وَتَفَضَّلُوا بِقَبُول فائِق الاحْتِرام ('please accept the highest respect') Yours faithfully

HAMZATED VERBS

Hamzated verbs have ء as initial, middle or final radical. In most hamzated verbs both other radicals are sound; one example has a weak middle radical (ي) but as the verb occurs in Form II the weak radical is stable (i.e. is consonantal or sound in form, *y*).

Verbs with ء as middle radical and a weak final radical (و or ي), or vice versa, are counted as *doubly weak* verbs, for which see p. 177.

The standard conjugation patterns shown in paras. 23, 25 and 29 to 33 of the introductory chapter (tenses, imperative, participles and verbal noun) apply generally to hamzated verbs, with the following exceptions:

- **Initial *hamza*:**
  - In the affirmative imperative of Form I (see para. 31) of three important verbs, the whole first syllable is dropped:

    أَكَلَ يَأْكُلُ I, to eat, affirmative imperative كُلْ (etc.) 'eat'

    أَخَذَ يَأْخُذُ I, to take, affirmative imperative خُذْ (etc.) 'take'

    أَمَرَ يَأْمُرُ I, to order, affirmative imperative مُرْ (etc.) 'order'

    Their negative imperative is regular: لاَ تَأْكُلْ\لاَ تَأْخُذْ\لاَ تَأْمُرْ etc.

    In the affirmative imperative of Form I of all other verbs the ء is dropped and the imperative prefix becomes ...أو or ...إِ.
  - Initial ء combines with a neighbouring non-radical ء to form ...آ.
  - In Form VIII of root أخذ the radical ء plus the ت of the form become تَّ: اتَّخَذَ يَتَّخِذُ 'to take'.

    In Form VIII of the remaining roots there is an alternative 1st principal part, affirmative imperative and verbal noun which all begin ...ائْـ or ...إِيـ: ائْتَمَرَ\إِيتَمَرَ 'to deliberate'.
- **Middle *hamza*:**
  - One common verb in Form I (no. 37) has an alternative jussive and imperative, in which ء and the imperative prefix are dropped.

Everything else (including all parts of final-ء verbs) follows the standard or sound pattern. The only difficulty is the writing of ء.

The perfect and imperfect stems are formed from the appropriate principal part in the same manner as the sound verbs.

In the tables the verbs are grouped under initial ء, middle ء and final ء, in all forms for each group.

24 I أَكَلَ يَأْكُلُ 'akala ya'kulu to eat هـ أكل

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect
نَأْكُلُ	آكُلُ		أَكَلْنَا	أَكَلْتُ
تَأْكُلُونَ	تَأْكُلُ	تَأْكُلَانِ	أَكَلْتُمْ	أَكَلْتَ
تَأْكُلْنَ	تَأْكُلِينَ	تَأْكُلَانِ	أَكَلْتُنَّ	أَكَلْتِ
يَأْكُلُونَ	يَأْكُلُ	يَأْكُلَانِ	أَكَلُوا	أَكَلَا
يَأْكُلْنَ	تَأْكُلُ	تَأْكُلَانِ	أَكَلْنَ	أَكَلَتَا
	Jussive			Subjunctive
نَأْكُلْ	آكُلْ		نَأْكُلَ	آكُلَ
تَأْكُلُوا	تَأْكُلْ	تَأْكُلَا	تَأْكُلُوا	تَأْكُلَ
تَأْكُلْنَ	تَأْكُلِي	تَأْكُلَا	تَأْكُلْنَ	تَأْكُلِي
يَأْكُلُوا	يَأْكُلْ	يَأْكُلَا	يَأْكُلُوا	يَأْكُلَ
يَأْكُلْنَ	تَأْكُلْ	تَأْكُلَا	يَأْكُلْنَ	تَأْكُلَ

Verbal Noun 'akl أَكْل — Participle 'ākil آكِل — Imperative kul

كُلْ كُلَا كُلُوا
كُلِي كُلَا كُلْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'kalu يُؤْكَلُ — Perfect 'ukila أُكِلَ

Participle ma'kūl مَأْكُول

II/IV أَكَّلَ\آكَلَ to feed هـ، ه 28/31; III آكَلَ to dine with ه 30

V/VI تَأَكَّلَ\تَآكَلَ to be eaten away, to be eroded 32/33

أَكْل	food, meal	مَأْكَل ج مَآكِل	food
آكِل	eater	مَأْكُول	edible
غُرْفَة الأَكْل	dining room	أَكَّال	glutton(ous)
تَأَكُّل\تَآكُل\اِنْتِكَال	erosion, corrosion	مُتَأَكِّل\مُتَآكِل	eroded, corroded
أُكَال	pustule	آتَى أُكْلَة	to bear fruit

25 I أَمَلَ يَأْمُلُ 'amala ya'mulu to hope for, to expect أمل هـ\ب

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	تَأْمُلُ	آمُلُ	أَمَلْنَا	أَمَلْتُ
	تَأْمُلُونَ	تَأْمُلَانِ	تَأْمُلُ	أَمَلْتُمَا	أَمَلْتُمْ	أَمَلْتَ
	تَأْمُلْنَ	تَأْمُلَانِ	تَأْمُلِينَ	أَمَلْتُمَا	أَمَلْتُنَّ	أَمَلْتِ
	يَأْمُلُونَ	يَأْمُلَانِ	يَأْمُلُ	أَمَلُوا	أَمَلَا	أَمَلَ
	يَأْمُلْنَ	تَأْمُلَانِ	تَأْمُلُ	أَمَلْنَ	أَمَلَتَا	أَمَلَتْ

Jussive		Subjunctive	
تَأْمُلْ	آمُلْ	تَأْمُلَ	آمُلَ
تَأْمُلُوا	تَأْمُلَا	تَأْمُلُوا	تَأْمُلَ
تَأْمُلْنَ	تَأْمُلِي	تَأْمُلْنَ	تَأْمُلَا	تَأْمُلِي
يَأْمُلُوا	يَأْمُلَا	يَأْمُلُوا	يَأْمُلَا	يَأْمُلَ
يَأْمُلْنَ	تَأْمُلَا	يَأْمُلْنَ	تَأْمُلَا	تَأْمُلَ

Verbal Noun 'amal أَمَل Participle 'āmil آمِل Imperative ūmul

أُومُلْ أُومُلَا أُومُلُوا
أُومُلِي أُومُلَا أُومُلْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'malu يُؤْمَلُ Perfect 'ūmila أُومِلَ

Participle ma'mūl مَأْمُول

II أَمَّلَ to expect of هـ ،من 28; to give hope to ه ;V تَأَمَّلَ to ponder

32 هـ\في

أَمَل ج آمَال ب\في hope/expectation of أَمَل كاذِب false hope

مَأْمُول hope مَأْمَل ج مَآمِل expected

آمِل\مُؤَمَّل hopeful مُتَأَمِّل contemplative

أَمَّلَ خَيْراً to hope for the best لا أَمَلَ في\ب there is no hope of

26 I أَسَرَ يَأْسِرُ 'asara ya'siru to capture ه, to captivate (figuratively) ه، هـ أسر

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَأْسِرُ		آسِرُ	أَسَرْنَا	أَسَرْتُ
	تَأْسِرُونَ	تَأْسِرَانِ	تَأْسِرُ	أَسَرْتُمْ	أَسَرْتَ
	تَأْسِرْنَ	تَأْسِرَانِ	تَأْسِرِينَ	أَسَرْتُنَّ	أَسَرْتِ
	يَأْسِرُونَ	يَأْسِرَانِ	يَأْسِرُ	أَسَرُوا	أَسَرَا
	يَأْسِرْنَ	تَأْسِرَانِ	تَأْسِرُ	أَسَرْنَ	أَسَرَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
	نَأْسِرْ		آسِرْ	نَأْسِرَ	آسِرَ
	تَأْسِرُوا	تَأْسِرَا	تَأْسِرْ	تَأْسِرُوا	تَأْسِرَ
	تَأْسِرْنَ	تَأْسِرَا	تَأْسِرِي	تَأْسِرْنَ	تَأْسِرَا	تَأْسِرِي
	يَأْسِرُوا	يَأْسِرَا	يَأْسِرْ	يَأْسِرُوا	يَأْسِرَا	يَأْسِرَ
	يَأْسِرْنَ	يَأْسِرَا	يَأْسِرْ	يَأْسِرْنَ	يَأْسِرَا	يَأْسِرَ

Verbal Noun 'asr	Participle 'āsir	Imperative īsir	
أَسْر	آسِر	اِيسِرُوا	اِيسِرْ
		اِيسِرْنَ	اِيسِرِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'saru يُؤْسَرُ Perfect 'usira أُسِرَ

Participle ma'sūr مَأْسُور

X اِسْتَأْسَرَ to surrender (oneself) 36

أَسِير ج أُسَرَاء captive — آسِر captor; captivating

أَسْر captivity — اِسَار captivity; enthralment

بِأَسْرِهِ in entirety — مَأْسُور ب captivated by

وَقَعَ فِي اِسَار to fall into the clutches of

27 | I | أَمِنَ يَأْمَنُ 'amina ya'manu to be safe from هـ\من | أمن

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	آمَنُ	نَأْمَنُ	أَمِنْتُ	أَمِنَّا
تأْمَنُونَ	تأْمَنَانِ	تأْمَنُ	أَمِنْتُمْ	أَمِنْتُمَا	أَمِنْتَ
تأْمَنَّ	تأْمَنَانِ	تأْمَنِينَ	أَمِنْتُنَّ	أَمِنْتُمَا	أَمِنْتِ
يَأْمَنُونَ	يَأْمَنَانِ	يَأْمَنُ	أَمِنُوا	أَمِنَا	أَمِنَ
يَأْمَنَّ	تأْمَنَانِ	تأْمَنُ	أَمِنَّ	أَمِنَتَا	أَمِنَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	آمَنْ	نَأْمَنْ		آمَنَ	
تأْمَنُوا	تأْمَنَا	تأْمَنْ	تأْمَنُوا	تأْمَنَا	تأْمَنَ
تأْمَنَّ	تأْمَنَا	تأْمَنِي	تأْمَنَّ	تأْمَنَا	تأْمَنِي
يَأْمَنُوا	يَأْمَنَا	يَأْمَنْ	يَأْمَنُوا	يَأْمَنَا	يَأْمَنَ
يَأْمَنَّ	تأْمَنَا	تأْمَنْ	يَأْمَنَّ	تأْمَنَا	تأْمَنَ

Verbal Noun 'amān	Participle 'āmin	Imperative īman	
أَمَان	آمِن	اِيمَنُوا	اِيمَنْ
		اِيمَنَّ	اِيمَنِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'manu يُؤْمَنُ **Perfect** 'umina أُمِنَ

Participle ma'mūn مَأْمُون

I (أَمَانَة) أَمُنَ يَأْمُنُ to be reliable 25; II أَمَّنَ to insure هـ, to reassure هـ 28; IV آمَنَ to believe in ب 31; VIII/X اِئْتَمَنَ، اِيتَمَنَ\اِسْتَأْمَنَ to trust هـ

34/36

أَمْن	safety	أَمَان	security	آمِن	peaceful
مَأْمُون	reliable	اِئْتِمَان\اِسْتِئْمَان	trust, credit	اِيمَان ب	belief in
مؤْمِن	faithful	مُؤْتَمَن على	entrusted with	تَأْمِين	insurance
مُؤَمَّن عليه	insured	مُؤَمِّن	insurer	تَأْمِين على الحَيَاة	life insurance
بُولِيصَة التَأْمِين	insurance policy	تَأْمِين شامِل	comprehensive insurance		
أَمِين ج أُمَنَاء	reliable; trustee	أَمِين عامّ	secretary general		

28 | II | أَكَّدَ يُؤَكِّدُ 'akkada yu'akkidu to confirm هـ to assure ل، هـ | أكد

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نُؤَكِّدُ	أُؤَكِّدُ	أَكَّدْنَا	أَكَّدْتُ
تُؤَكِّدُونَ	تُؤَكِّدَانِ	تُؤَكِّدُ	أَكَّدْتُمْ	أَكَّدْتُمَا	أَكَّدْتَ
تُؤَكِّدْنَ	تُؤَكِّدَانِ	تُؤَكِّدِينَ	أَكَّدْتُنَّ	أَكَّدْتُمَا	أَكَّدْتِ
يُؤَكِّدُونَ	يُؤَكِّدَانِ	يُؤَكِّدُ	أَكَّدُوا	أَكَّدَا	أَكَّدَ
يُؤَكِّدْنَ	تُؤَكِّدَانِ	تُؤَكِّدُ	أَكَّدْنَ	أَكَّدَتَا	أَكَّدَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	نُؤَكِّدْ	أُؤَكِّدْ	نُؤَكِّدَ		أُؤَكِّدَ
تُؤَكِّدُوا	تُؤَكِّدَا	تُؤَكِّدْ	تُؤَكِّدُوا	تُؤَكِّدَا	تُؤَكِّدَ
تُؤَكِّدْنَ	تُؤَكِّدَا	تُؤَكِّدِي	تُؤَكِّدْنَ	تُؤَكِّدَا	تُؤَكِّدِي
يُؤَكِّدُوا	يُؤَكِّدَا	يُؤَكِّدْ	يُؤَكِّدُوا	يُؤَكِّدَا	يُؤَكِّدَ
يُؤَكِّدْنَ	تُؤَكِّدَا	تُؤَكِّدْ	يُؤَكِّدْنَ	تُؤَكِّدَا	تُؤَكِّدَ

Verbal Noun ta'kīd تَأْكِيد **Participle** mu'akkid مُؤَكِّد **Imperative** 'akkid

أَكِّدْ	أَكِّدَا	أَكِّدُوا
أَكِّدِي	أَكِّدَا	أَكِّدْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'akkadu يُؤَكَّدُ **Perfect** 'ukkida أُكِّدَ

Participle mu'akkad مُؤَكَّد

V تَأَكَّدَ to be sure of من 32

تَأْكِيد confirmation, assurance أَكِيد\مُؤَكَّد certain (of things)

أَكِيدًا\بِالتَّأْكِيد certainly تَأَكُّد assurance

مُتَأَكِّد من sure of, convinced of

29 | II | أَيَّدَ يُؤَيِّدُ 'ayyada yu'ayyidu to support ه، ه | أيد

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نُؤَيِّدُ	أُؤَيِّدُ		أَيَّدْنَا	أَيَّدْتُ
تُؤَيِّدُونَ	تُؤَيِّدُ	تُؤَيِّدَانِ	أَيَّدْتُمْ	أَيَّدْتَ
تُؤَيِّدْنَ	تُؤَيِّدِينَ	تُؤَيِّدَانِ	أَيَّدْتُنَّ	أَيَّدْتِ
يُؤَيِّدُونَ	يُؤَيِّدُ	يُؤَيِّدَانِ	أَيَّدُوا	أَيَّدَا
يُؤَيِّدْنَ	تُؤَيِّدُ	تُؤَيِّدَانِ	أَيَّدْنَ	أَيَّدَتَا

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نُؤَيِّدْ	أُؤَيِّدْ		نُؤَيِّدَ	أُؤَيِّدَ
تُؤَيِّدُوا	تُؤَيِّدَا	تُؤَيِّدْ	تُؤَيِّدُوا	تُؤَيِّدَا
تُؤَيِّدْنَ	تُؤَيِّدَا	تُؤَيِّدِي	تُؤَيِّدْنَ	تُؤَيِّدَا
يُؤَيِّدُوا	يُؤَيِّدَا	يُؤَيِّدْ	يُؤَيِّدُوا	يُؤَيِّدَا
يُؤَيِّدْنَ	تُؤَيِّدَا	تُؤَيِّدْ	يُؤَيِّدْنَ	تُؤَيِّدَا

Verbal Noun ta'yīd تَأْيِيد **Participle** mu'ayyid مُؤَيِّد **Imperative** 'ayyid

أَيِّدْ	أَيِّدَا	أَيِّدُوا
أَيِّدِي	أَيِّدَا	أَيِّدْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'ayyadu يُؤَيَّدُ **Perfect** 'uyyida أُيِّدَ

Participle mu'ayyad مُؤَيَّد

V تَأَيَّدَ to be supported 32

تَأْيِيد support مُؤَيِّد supporter

تَأْيِيداً ل in support of مُؤَيَّد\مُتَأَيِّد supported

30 III آخَذَ يُؤَاخِذُ 'ākhadha yu'ākhidhu أَخْذ

to blame for ه، على\ب

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نُؤَاخِذُ	أُؤَاخِذُ		آخَذْنَا	آخَذْتُ
تُؤَاخِذُونَ	تُؤَاخِذُ	تُؤَاخِذَانِ	تُؤَاخِذُ	آخَذْتُمْ	آخَذْتُمَا	آخَذْتَ
تُؤَاخِذْنَ	تُؤَاخِذِينَ	تُؤَاخِذَانِ	تُؤَاخِذِينَ	آخَذْتُنَّ	آخَذْتُمَا	آخَذْتِ
يُؤَاخِذُونَ	يُؤَاخِذُ	يُؤَاخِذَانِ	يُؤَاخِذُ	آخَذُوا	آخَذَا	آخَذَ
يُؤَاخِذْنَ	تُؤَاخِذُ	تُؤَاخِذَانِ	تُؤَاخِذُ	آخَذْنَ	آخَذَتَا	آخَذَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive	
	نُؤَاخِذْ	أُؤَاخِذْ		نُؤَاخِذَ	أُؤَاخِذَ
تُؤَاخِذُوا	تُؤَاخِذْ	تُؤَاخِذَا	تُؤَاخِذْ	تُؤَاخِذُوا	تُؤَاخِذَا	تُؤَاخِذَ
تُؤَاخِذْنَ	تُؤَاخِذِي	تُؤَاخِذَا	تُؤَاخِذْ	تُؤَاخِذْنَ	تُؤَاخِذَا	تُؤَاخِذِي
يُؤَاخِذُوا	يُؤَاخِذْ	يُؤَاخِذَا	يُؤَاخِذْ	يُؤَاخِذُوا	يُؤَاخِذَا	يُؤَاخِذَ
يُؤَاخِذْنَ	تُؤَاخِذْ	تُؤَاخِذَا	تُؤَاخِذْ	يُؤَاخِذْنَ	تُؤَاخِذَا	تُؤَاخِذَ

Verbal Noun mu'ākhadha Participle mu'ākhidh Imperative 'ākhidh

مُؤَاخَذَة	مُؤَاخِذ	آخِذُوا	آخِذَا	آخِذْ
		آخِذْنَ	آخِذَا	آخِذِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'ākhadhu يُؤَاخَذُ Perfect 'ūkhidha أُوخِذَ

Participle mu'ākhadh مُؤَاخَذ

I (أَخْذ) أَخَذَ يَأْخُذُ to take ه; to begin α 24; VIII اتَّخَذَ to take ه 35

مُؤَاخَذَة	objection, blame	أَخْذ\اتِّخَاذ	taking, acceptance
لا تُؤَاخِذْنِي	pardon me	أَخَذَ فِكْرَة عن	to get an idea of
أَخَّاذ	captivating	مَأْخَذ ج مَآخِذ	source
مَأْخُوذَات	takings	أَخَذَ بِعَيْن الاعْتِبار	to take into account
أَخَذَ رَأْي	to take the opinion of	اتَّخَذَ شَكْل	to take the form of
اتَّخَذَ إِجْرَاءات	to take measures/steps	اتَّخَذَ قَرَاراً	to adopt a resolution

31 IV آجَرَ يُؤْجِرُ 'ājara yu'jiru to hire out ه، هـ أجر

ACTIVE Imperfect				Perfect	
نُؤْجِرُ		أُوجِرُ		آجَرْنَا	آجَرْتُ
تُؤْجِرُونَ	تُؤْجِرَانِ	تُؤْجِرُ		آجَرْتُمْ	آجَرْتَ
تُؤْجِرْنَ	تُؤْجِرَانِ	تُؤْجِرِينَ		آجَرْتُنَّ	آجَرْتِ
يُؤْجِرُونَ	يُؤْجِرَانِ	يُؤْجِرُ		آجَرُوا	آجَرَا	آجَرَ
يُؤْجِرْنَ	تُؤْجِرَانِ	تُؤْجِرُ		آجَرْنَ	آجَرَتَا	آجَرَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
نُؤْجِرْ		أُوجِرْ		نُؤْجِرَ	أُوجِرَ
تُؤْجِرُوا	تُؤْجِرَا	تُؤْجِرْ		تُؤْجِرُوا	تُؤْجِرَا	تُؤْجِرَ
تُؤْجِرْنَ	تُؤْجِرَا	تُؤْجِرِي		تُؤْجِرْنَ	تُؤْجِرَا	تُؤْجِرِي
يُؤْجِرُوا	يُؤْجِرَا	يُؤْجِرْ		يُؤْجِرُوا	يُؤْجِرَا	يُؤْجِرَ
يُؤْجِرْنَ	تُؤْجِرَا	تُؤْجِرْ		يُؤْجِرْنَ	تُؤْجِرَا	تُؤْجِرَ

Verbal Noun 'Ījār **Participle** mu'jir **Imperative** 'ājir

إِيجَار	مُؤْجِر	آجِرُوا	آجِرَا	آجِرْ
		آجِرْنَ	آجِرَا	آجِرِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'jaru يُؤْجَرُ **Perfect** 'ūjira أُوجِرَ

Participle mu'jar مُؤْجَر

I (أَجْر) أَجَرَ يَأْجُرُ to remunerate ه 25; II أَجَّرَ 28 = IV آجَرَ **31**

X اِسْتَأْجَرَ to take on hire ه، هـ 36

إِيجَار\إِيجَارَة	rent, lease	أَجْر ج أُجُور	remuneration
تَأْجِير	leasing	أُجْرَة	rate, fee, fare
مَأْجُور	salaried	مُؤَجِّر	landlord, lessor
مُسْتَأْجِر	tenant, lessee	بَيْت لِلإِيجَار	house to let

أَجِير ج أُجَرَاء (.m)، أَجِيرَة (.f) day labourer

32 V تَأَخَّرَ يَتَأَخَّرُ ta'akhkhara yata'akhkharu to be delayed, to fall behind عن أخر

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	أَتَأَخَّرُ		نَتَأَخَّرُ		تَأَخَّرْتَا	تَأَخَّرْتُ
	تَتَأَخَّرُ	تَتَأَخَّرَانِ	تَتَأَخَّرُونَ	تَأَخَّرْتُمْ	تَأَخَّرْتُمَا	تَأَخَّرْتَ
	تَتَأَخَّرِينَ	تَتَأَخَّرَانِ	تَتَأَخَّرْنَ	تَأَخَّرْتُنَّ	تَأَخَّرْتُمَا	تَأَخَّرْتِ
	يَتَأَخَّرُ	يَتَأَخَّرَانِ	يَتَأَخَّرُونَ	تَأَخَّرُوا	تَأَخَّرَا	تَأَخَّرَ
	تَتَأَخَّرُ	تَتَأَخَّرَانِ	يَتَأَخَّرْنَ	تَأَخَّرْنَ	تَأَخَّرَتَا	تَأَخَّرَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
	أَتَأَخَّرْ		نَتَأَخَّرْ		نَتَأَخَّرَ	أَتَأَخَّرَ
	تَتَأَخَّرْ	تَتَأَخَّرَا	تَتَأَخَّرُوا		تَتَأَخَّرُوا	تَتَأَخَّرَ
	تَتَأَخَّرِي	تَتَأَخَّرَا	تَتَأَخَّرْنَ		تَتَأَخَّرْنَ	تَتَأَخَّرِي
	يَتَأَخَّرْ	يَتَأَخَّرَا	يَتَأَخَّرُوا		يَتَأَخَّرُوا	يَتَأَخَّرَ
	تَتَأَخَّرْ	تَتَأَخَّرَا	يَتَأَخَّرْنَ		يَتَأَخَّرْنَ	تَتَأَخَّرَ

Verbal Noun ta'akhkhur تَأَخُّر

Imperative ta'akhkhar

تَأَخَّرْ تَأَخَّرَا تَأَخَّرُوا

تَأَخَّرِي تَأَخَّرَا تَأَخَّرْنَ

Participle muta'akhkhir مُتَأَخِّر

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yuta'akhkharu يُتَأَخَّرُ **Perfect** tu'ukhkhira تُؤُخِّرَ

II أَخَّرَ to delay هـ, to suspend ه 28

آخَر ج أُخَر (f. أُخْرَى) other — تَأَخُّر\تَأْخِير delay

مُؤَخَّر rear (noun) — مُتَأَخِّر delayed, retarded — آخِر ج أَوَاخِر last

أَخِيراً recently, finally — أَخِير last, most recent

إِلَى آخِرِهِ et cetera — مُتَأَخِّرَات arrears — الأَخِير the latter

من وَقْتٍ إِلَى آخَر from time to time — مَرَّةً أُخْرَى once more

آخِر الشَّهْر\السَّنَة the end of the month/year

أَوَاخِر الشَّهْر\السَّنَة the last part of the month/year

33 VI تَآلَفَ يَتَآلَفُ ta'ālafa yata'ālafu — أَلف

to be in harmony with مع

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نَتَآلَفُ	أَتَآلَفُ		تَآلَفْنَا	تَآلَفْتُ
تَتَآلَفُونَ	تَتَآلَفَانِ	تَتَآلَفُ	تَآلَفْتُمْ	تَآلَفْتَ
تَتَآلَفْنَ	تَتَآلَفَانِ	تَتَآلَفِينَ	تَآلَفْتُنَّ	تَآلَفْتِ
يَتَآلَفُونَ	يَتَآلَفَانِ	يَتَآلَفُ	تَآلَفُوا	تَآلَفَا	تَآلَفَ
يَتَآلَفْنَ	تَتَآلَفَانِ	تَتَآلَفُ	تَآلَفْنَ	تَآلَفَتَا	تَآلَفَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نَتَآلَفْ	أَتَآلَفْ		نَتَآلَفَ	أَتَآلَفَ	
تَتَآلَفُوا	تَتَآلَفَا	تَتَآلَفْ	تَتَآلَفُوا	تَتَآلَفَا	تَتَآلَفَ
تَتَآلَفْنَ	تَتَآلَفَا	تَتَآلَفِي	تَتَآلَفْنَ	تَتَآلَفَا	تَتَآلَفِي
يَتَآلَفُوا	يَتَآلَفَا	يَتَآلَفْ	يَتَآلَفُوا	يَتَآلَفَا	يَتَآلَفَ
يَتَآلَفْنَ	يَتَآلَفَا	يَتَآلَفْ	يَتَآلَفْنَ	يَتَآلَفَا	يَتَآلَفَ

Verbal Noun ta'āluf **Participle** muta'ālif **Imperative** ta'ālaf

تَآلُف	مُتَآلِف	تَآلَفُوا	تَآلَفَا	تَآلَفْ
		تَآلَفْنَ		تَآلَفِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yuta'ālafu يُتَآلَفُ **Perfect** tu'ūlifa تُؤُولِفَ

Participle muta'ālaf مُتَآلَف

I (أَلف) أَلِفَ يَأْلَفُ to be familiar with هـ، 27; II أَلَّفَ to form (committee etc.) هـ, to compose هـ 28; V تَأَلَّفَ to consist of من 32

VIII ائْتَلَفَ\ايتَلَفَ to be united/form a coalition with ب 34, = VI تَآلَفَ 33

تَآلُف	harmony	مُتَآلِف	harmonious
أُلْفَة	familiarity	أَلِيف ج أَلائِف	close companion
تَأْلِيف ج تَآلِيف\تَوَالِيف	(artistic) work	مُؤَلِّف	composer, author
تَأْلِيف	formation (committee etc.)	مَأْلُوف	familiar, custom
ائْتِلاف\ايتِلاف	coalition	مُؤَلَّف من	composed of
حُكُومَة ائْتِلافِيَّة	coalition government		

34 VIII ائْتَمَرَ\ايتَمَرَ يَأْتَمِرُ i'tamara/ītamara ya'tamiru أمر

to deliberate about ب, to conspire against ب

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect (ائتـ...\ايتـ... throughout:)		
			نَأْتَمِرُ			ائْتَمَرْتُ\ايتَمَرْتُ
		تَأْتَمِرُ	تَأْتَمِرُ	ائْتَمَرْتَا	ائْتَمَرْتُمَا	ائْتَمَرْتُمْ
		تَأْتَمِرِينَ	تَأْتَمِرَانِ	ائْتَمَرْتَا	ائْتَمَرْتُمَا	ائْتَمَرْتُنَّ
		يَأْتَمِرُ	يَأْتَمِرَانِ	ائْتَمَرُوا	ائْتَمَرَا	ائْتَمَرَ
		تَأْتَمِرُ	تَأْتَمِرَانِ	ائْتَمَرْنَا	ائْتَمَرْتَا	ائْتَمَرَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
			نَأْتَمِرْ			أَتْمَرَ
		تَأْتَمِرْ	تَأْتَمِرْ	تَأْتَمِرَا	تَأْتَمِرُوا	تَأْتَمِرَ
		تَأْتَمِرِي	تَأْتَمِرَا	تَأْتَمِرَا	تَأْتَمِرْنَ	تَأْتَمِرِي
		يَأْتَمِرْ	يَأْتَمِرَا	يَأْتَمِرَا	يَأْتَمِرُوا	يَأْتَمِرَ
		تَأْتَمِرْ	تَأْتَمِرَا	تَأْتَمِرَا	يَأْتَمِرْنَ	تَأْتَمِرَ

Verbal Noun	Participle	Imperative i'tamir/ītamir
i'timār/ītimār	mu'tamir	ائْتَمِرْ\ايتَمِرْ ائْتَمِرَا (ايـ..) ائْتَمِرُوا (ايـ..)
ائْتِمَار\ايتِمَار	مُؤْتَمِر	ائْتَمِرِي (ايـ..) ائْتَمِرَا (ايـ..) ائْتَمِرْنَ (ايـ..)

PASSIVE° Imperfect yu'tamaru يُؤْتَمَرُ Perfect u'tumira أُؤْتُمِرَ

Participle mu'tamar مُؤْتَمَر

I (أَمْرٌ) أَمَرَ يَأْمُرُ to order ب\أن, ه 24; III آمَرَ to consult ه 30

VI تَآمَرَ to confer, to conspire against على 33

ائْتِمَار counsel, conspiracy مُؤْتَمَر conference أَمْر ج أُمُور matter

آمِر commander أَمْر ج أَوَامِر command مُؤَامَرَة counsel, conspiracy

أَمِير ج أُمَرَاء prince, emir إِمَارَة principality, emirate إِمْرَة authority

أَمِيرِي state (adjective) مَأْمُور official (noun)

لِأَمْرٍ مَا for one reason or another تَحْتَ أَمْرِكَ at your command/service

الأَمْرُ الَّذِي which (fact), (relative referring to a whole clause)

35 VIII اِتَّخَذَ يَتَّخِذُ ittakhadha yattakhidhu to take هـ أخذ

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نَتَّخِذُ	أَتَّخِذُ	اتَّخَذْنَا	اتَّخَذْتُ
	تَتَّخِذُونَ	تَتَّخِذَانِ	اتَّخَذْتُمْ	اتَّخَذْتَ
	تَتَّخِذْنَ	تَتَّخِذَانِ	اتَّخَذْتُنَّ	اتَّخَذْتِ
	يَتَّخِذُونَ	يَتَّخِذَانِ	اتَّخَذُوا	اتَّخَذَا
	يَتَّخِذْنَ	تَتَّخِذَانِ	اتَّخَذْنَ	اتَّخَذَتَا

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نَتَّخِذْ	أَتَّخِذْ		نَتَّخِذَ	أَتَّخِذَ
تَتَّخِذُوا	تَتَّخِذْ	تَتَّخِذَا	تَتَّخِذُوا	تَتَّخِذَ
تَتَّخِذْنَ	تَتَّخِذِي	تَتَّخِذَا	تَتَّخِذْنَ	تَتَّخِذِي
يَتَّخِذُوا	يَتَّخِذْ	يَتَّخِذَا	يَتَّخِذُوا	يَتَّخِذَ
يَتَّخِذْنَ	تَتَّخِذْ	تَتَّخِذَا	يَتَّخِذْنَ	تَتَّخِذَ

Verbal Noun ittikhādh Participle muttakhidh Imperative ittakhidh

اتَّخِذْ اتَّخِذَا اتَّخِذُوا مُتَّخِذ اتِّخَاذ

اتَّخِذِي اتَّخِذَا اتَّخِذْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yuttakhadhu يُتَّخَذُ Perfect uttukhidha أُتُّخِذَ

Participle muttakhadh مُتَّخَذ

See 30

36 X اِسْتَأْنَفَ يَسْتَأْنِفُ ista'nafa yasta'nifu to resume ه أنف

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نَسْتَأْنِفُ	أَسْتَأْنِفُ		اِسْتَأْنَفْنَا	اِسْتَأْنَفْتُ
تَسْتَأْنِفُونَ	تَسْتَأْنِفَانِ	تَسْتَأْنِفُ	اِسْتَأْنَفْتُمْ	اِسْتَأْنَفْتُمَا	اِسْتَأْنَفْتَ
تَسْتَأْنِفْنَ	تَسْتَأْنِفَانِ	تَسْتَأْنِفِينَ	اِسْتَأْنَفْتُنَّ	اِسْتَأْنَفْتُمَا	اِسْتَأْنَفْتِ
يَسْتَأْنِفُونَ	يَسْتَأْنِفَانِ	يَسْتَأْنِفُ	اِسْتَأْنَفُوا	اِسْتَأْنَفَا	اِسْتَأْنَفَ
يَسْتَأْنِفْنَ	تَسْتَأْنِفَانِ	تَسْتَأْنِفُ	اِسْتَأْنَفْنَ	اِسْتَأْنَفَتَا	اِسْتَأْنَفَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نَسْتَأْنِفْ	أَسْتَأْنِفْ		نَسْتَأْنِفَ	أَسْتَأْنِفَ
تَسْتَأْنِفُوا	تَسْتَأْنِفَا	تَسْتَأْنِفْ	تَسْتَأْنِفُوا	تَسْتَأْنِفَا	تَسْتَأْنِفَ
تَسْتَأْنِفْنَ	تَسْتَأْنِفَا	تَسْتَأْنِفِي	تَسْتَأْنِفْنَ	تَسْتَأْنِفَا	تَسْتَأْنِفِي
يَسْتَأْنِفُوا	يَسْتَأْنِفَا	يَسْتَأْنِفْ	يَسْتَأْنِفُوا	يَسْتَأْنِفَا	يَسْتَأْنِفَ
يَسْتَأْنِفْنَ	تَسْتَأْنِفَا	تَسْتَأْنِفْ	يَسْتَأْنِفْنَ	تَسْتَأْنِفَا	تَسْتَأْنِفَ

Verbal Noun isti'nāf اِسْتِئْنَاف **Participle** musta'nif مُسْتَأْنِف **Imperative** ista'nif

اِسْتَأْنِفْ اِسْتَأْنِفَا اِسْتَأْنِفُوا
اِسْتَأْنِفِي اِسْتَأْنِفَا اِسْتَأْنِفْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yusta'nafu يُسْتَأْنَفُ **Perfect** ustu'nifa أُسْتُؤْنِفَ
Participle musta'naf مُسْتَأْنَف

---

27 من\أن to scorn أَنِفَ يَأْنَفُ (أَنَف) I

اِسْتِئْنَاف	resumption, appeal (legal)	أَنْف ج أُنُوف	nose
آنِف	preceding	آنف الذِكْر	aforementioned
قَدَّم اِسْتِئْنَافًا	to make an appeal (legal)	آنِفًا	previously

37 I سَأَلَ يَسْأَلُ sa'ala yas'alu to ask ه، هـ سأل

(NB: This verb is anomalous in Form I: alternative jussive + imperative without middle radical. Other verbs of this pattern do not have this anomaly.)

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَسْأَلُ		أَسْأَلُ	سَأَلْنَا	سَأَلْتُ
	تَسْأَلُونَ	تَسْأَلاَنِ	تَسْأَلُ	سَأَلْتُمْ	سَأَلْتُمَا	سَأَلْتَ
	تَسْأَلْنَ	تَسْأَلاَنِ	تَسْأَلِينَ	سَأَلْتُنَّ	سَأَلْتُمَا	سَأَلْتِ
	يَسْأَلُونَ	يَسْأَلاَنِ	يَسْأَلُ	سَأَلُوا	سَأَلاَ	سَأَلَ
	يَسْأَلْنَ	تَسْأَلاَنِ	تَسْأَلُ	سَأَلْنَ	سَأَلَتَا	سَأَلَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
	نَسْأَلْ\نَسَلْ	أَسْأَلْ\أَسَلْ		نَسْأَلَ	أَسْأَلَ
تَسْأَلُوا\تَسَلُوا	تَسْأَلاَ\تَسَلاَ	تَسْأَلْ\تَسَلْ	تَسْأَلاَ\تَسَلاَ	تَسْأَلُوا	تَسْأَلاَ	تَسْأَلَ
تَسْأَلْنَ\تَسَلْنَ	تَسْأَلاَ\تَسَلاَ	تَسْأَلِي\تَسَلِي	تَسْأَلاَ\تَسَلاَ	تَسْأَلْنَ	تَسْأَلاَ	تَسْأَلِي
يَسْأَلُوا\يَسَلُوا	يَسْأَلاَ\يَسَلاَ	يَسْأَلْ\يَسَلْ	يَسْأَلاَ\يَسَلاَ	يَسْأَلُوا	يَسْأَلاَ	يَسْأَلَ
يَسْأَلْنَ\يَسَلْنَ	يَسْأَلاَ\يَسَلاَ	يَسْأَلْ\يَسَلْ	يَسْأَلاَ\يَسَلاَ	يَسْأَلْنَ	يَسْأَلاَ	تَسْأَلَ

Verbal Noun su'āl/mas'ala **Participle** sā'il **Imperative** is'al/sal

سُؤَال\مَسْأَلَة سَائِل اسْأَلُوا\سَلُوا اسْأَلاَ\سَلاَ اسْأَلْ\سَلْ
اِسْأَلْنَ\سَلْنَ اسْأَلاَ\سَلاَ اسْأَلِي\سَلِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yus'alu يُسْأَلُ **Perfect** su'ila سُئِلَ
Participe mas'ūl مَسْؤُول\مَسْئُول

III سَاءَلَ to question ه 41; V تَسَأَّلَ\تَسَوَّلَ to beg 43/99

VI تَسَاءَلَ to ask each other, to wonder about عن 44

مَسْأَلَة ج مَسَائِل matter — سُؤَال ج أَسْئِلَة question

مَسْؤُولِيَّة\مَسْئُولِيَّة responsibility — مَسْؤُول\مَسْئُول عن responsible for

تَسَاؤُل wondering — مُسَاءَلَة interrogation — سَائِل petitioner

سُئِلَ يُسْأَلُ عن to be responsible for — تَسَوُّل beggary — مُتَسَوِّل beggar

38 | I | بَؤُسَ يَبْؤُسُ ba'usa yab'usu to be brave | بأس

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	أَبْؤُسُ		نَبْؤُسُ	بَؤُسْنَا		بَؤُسْتُ
	تَبْؤُسُ	تَبْؤُسَانِ	تَبْؤُسُونَ	بَؤُسْتُمْ	بَؤُسْتُمَا	بَؤُسْتَ
	تَبْؤُسِينَ	تَبْؤُسَانِ	تَبْؤُسْنَ	بَؤُسْتُنَّ	بَؤُسْتُمَا	بَؤُسْتِ
	يَبْؤُسُ	يَبْؤُسَانِ	يَبْؤُسُونَ	بَؤُسُوا	بَؤُسَا	بَؤُسَ
	تَبْؤُسُ	تَبْؤُسَانِ	يَبْؤُسْنَ	بَؤُسْنَ	بَؤُسَتَا	بَؤُسَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
أَبْؤُسْ		نَبْؤُسْ	نَبْؤُسَ		أَبْؤُسَ
تَبْؤُسْ	تَبْؤُسَا	تَبْؤُسُوا	تَبْؤُسُوا	تَبْؤُسَا	تَبْؤُسَ
تَبْؤُسِي	تَبْؤُسَا	تَبْؤُسْنَ	تَبْؤُسْنَ	تَبْؤُسَا	تَبْؤُسِي
يَبْؤُسْ	يَبْؤُسَا	يَبْؤُسُوا	يَبْؤُسُوا	يَبْؤُسَا	يَبْؤُسَ
تَبْؤُسْ	تَبْؤُسَا	يَبْؤُسْنَ	يَبْؤُسْنَ	تَبْؤُسَا	تَبْؤُسَ

Verbal Noun ba's بَأْس **Participle** not used **Imperative** ub'us

أُبْؤُسْ	أُبْؤُسَا	أُبْؤُسُوا
أُبْؤُسِي	أُبْؤُسَا	أُبْؤُسْنَ

PASSIVE None

I بَئِس يَبْأَسُ (بُؤْس) to be wretched **39**

بَأْس	courage	بُؤْس	misery
بَائِس\بَئِيس ج بُؤَسَاء	wretched	لا بَأْس	never mind
أَيَّ بَأْس؟	what does it matter?		

39 I بَئِسَ يَبْأَسُ ba'isa yab'asu to be wretched بأس

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نَبْأَسُ	أَبْأَسُ		بَئِسْتُ	
تَبْأَسُونَ	تَبْأَسُ	تَبْأَسَانِ	بَئِسْتُمْ	بَئِسْتَ
تَبْأَسْنَ	تَبْأَسِينَ	تَبْأَسَانِ	بَئِسْتُنَّ	بَئِسْتِ
يَبْأَسُونَ	يَبْأَسُ	يَبْأَسَانِ	بَئِسُوا	بَئِسَا	بَئِسَ
يَبْأَسْنَ	تَبْأَسُ	تَبْأَسَانِ	بَئِسْنَ	بَئِسَتَا	بَئِسَتْ
	Jussive		Subjunctive	
نَبْأَسْ	أَبْأَسْ		نَبْأَسَ	
تَبْأَسُوا	تَبْأَسْ	تَبْأَسَا	تَبْأَسُوا	تَبْأَسَا	تَبْأَسَ
تَبْأَسْنَ	تَبْأَسِي	تَبْأَسَا	تَبْأَسْنَ	تَبْأَسَا	تَبْأَسِي
يَبْأَسُوا	يَبْأَسْ	يَبْأَسَا	يَبْأَسُوا	يَبْأَسَا	يَبْأَسَ
يَبْأَسْنَ	تَبْأَسْ	تَبْأَسَا	يَبْأَسْنَ	تَبْأَسَا	تَبْأَسَ

Verbal Noun bu's **Participle** bā'is **Imperative** ib'is

بُؤْس	بَائِس	ابْئِسْ ابْئِسَا ابْئِسُوا
		ابْئِسِي ابْئِسَا ابْئِسْنَ

PASSIVE None

See 38

40 II رَأَّسَ يُرَئِّسُ ra''asa yura''isu to appoint as head رأس

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نُرَئِّسُ		أُرَئِّسُ	رَأَّسْنَا	رَأَّسْتُ
	تُرَئِّسُونَ	تُرَئِّسَانِ	تُرَئِّسُ	رَأَّسْتُمْ	رَأَّسْتَ
	تُرَئِّسْنَ	تُرَئِّسَانِ	تُرَئِّسِينَ	رَأَّسْتُنَّ	رَأَّسْتِ
	يُرَئِّسُونَ	يُرَئِّسَانِ	يُرَئِّسُ	رَأَّسُوا	رَأَّسَا
	يُرَئِّسْنَ	تُرَئِّسَانِ	تُرَئِّسُ	رَأَّسْنَ	رَأَّسَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	نُرَئِّسْ		أُرَئِّسْ	نُرَئِّسَ	
	تُرَئِّسُوا	تُرَئِّسَا	تُرَئِّسْ	تُرَئِّسُوا	تُرَئِّسَا	تُرَئِّسَ
	تُرَئِّسْنَ	تُرَئِّسَا	تُرَئِّسْنَ	تُرَئِّسْنَ	تُرَئِّسَا	تُرَئِّسِي
	يُرَئِّسُوا	يُرَئِّسَا	يُرَئِّسْ	يُرَئِّسُوا	يُرَئِّسَا	يُرَئِّسَ
	يُرَئِّسْنَ	تُرَئِّسَا	تُرَئِّسْ	يُرَئِّسْنَ	تُرَئِّسَا	تُرَئِّسَ

Verbal Noun tar'īs تَرْئِيس **Participle** mura''is مُرَئِّس **Imperative** ra''is

رَئِّسْ	رَئِّسُوا	رَئِّسَا
رَئِّسْنَ	رَئِّسَا	رَئِّسِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yura''asu يُرَأَّسُ **Perfect** ru''isa رُئِّسَ

Participle mura''as مُرَأَّس

I (رِئَاسَة\رِيَاسَة) رَأَسَ يَرْأَسُ to head ♣ 37 (but no alternative jussive/ imperative [unlike no. **37**]); V تَرَأَّسَ to be appointed head/ chairman **43**

رَأْس ج رُؤُوس head رَئِيس ج رُؤَسَاء chief, chairman, president

رَئِيسِي main رِئَاسَة\رِيَاسَة leadership, chairmanship, presidency

رَأْسًا directly رَأْس مال\رَأْسْمَال capital (finance)

رَأْسْمَالِي capitalist رَأْسْمَالِيَّة capitalism

مَسْقَط الرَّأْس birthplace رَئِيس الوُزَرَاء Prime Minister

رَأْس السَّنَة New Year عَلَى رَأْسِي gladly, certainly

41 III سَاءَلَ يُسَائِلُ sā'ala yusā'ilu to question سأل

Active	Imperfect		Perfect	
نُسَائِلُ	أُسَائِلُ		سَاءَلْنَا	سَاءَلْتُ
تُسَائِلُونَ	تُسَائِلَانِ	تُسَائِلُ	سَاءَلْتُمَا	سَاءَلْتَ
تُسَائِلْنَ	تُسَائِلَانِ	تُسَائِلِينَ	سَاءَلْتُنَّ	سَاءَلْتِ
يُسَائِلُونَ	يُسَائِلَانِ	يُسَائِلُ	سَاءَلُوا	سَاءَلَا	سَاءَلَ
يُسَائِلْنَ	تُسَائِلَانِ	تُسَائِلُ	سَاءَلْنَ	سَاءَلَتَا	سَاءَلَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نُسَائِلْ	أُسَائِلْ		نُسَائِلَ		أُسَائِلَ
تُسَائِلُوا	تُسَائِلَا	تُسَائِلْ	تُسَائِلُوا	تُسَائِلَا	تُسَائِلَ
تُسَائِلْنَ	تُسَائِلَا	تُسَائِلِي	تُسَائِلْنَ	تُسَائِلَا	تُسَائِلِي
يُسَائِلُوا	يُسَائِلَا	يُسَائِلْ	يُسَائِلُوا	يُسَائِلَا	يُسَائِلَ
يُسَائِلْنَ	تُسَائِلَا	تُسَائِلْ	يُسَائِلْنَ	تُسَائِلَا	تُسَائِلَ

Verbal Noun musā'ala **Participle** musā'il **Imperative** sā'il

مُسَاءَلَة	مُسَائِل	سَائِلُوا	سَائِلْ
		سَائِلْنَ	سَائِلَا	سَائِلِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yusā'alu يُسَاءَلُ **Perfect** sū'ila سُوئِلَ

Participle musā'al مُسَاءَل

See 37

42 IV أَكْأَبَ يُكْئِبُ 'ak'aba yuk'ibu to sadden كأب

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نُكْئِبُ		أُكْئِبُ	أَكْأَبْنَا	أَكْأَبْتُ
	تُكْئِبُونَ	تُكْئِبَانِ	تُكْئِبُ	أَكْأَبْتُمْ	أَكْأَبْتَ
	تُكْئِبْنَ	تُكْئِبَانِ	تُكْئِبِينَ	أَكْأَبْتُنَّ	أَكْأَبْتِ
	يُكْئِبُونَ	يُكْئِبَانِ	يُكْئِبُ	أَكْأَبُوا	أَكْأَبَا	أَكْأَبَ
	يُكْئِبْنَ	تُكْئِبَانِ	تُكْئِبُ	أَكْأَبْنَ	أَكْأَبَتَا	أَكْأَبَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نُكْئِبْ		أُكْئِبْ	نُكْئِبَ	أُكْئِبَ
تُكْئِبُوا	تُكْئِبَا	تُكْئِبْ	تُكْئِبُوا	تُكْئِبَا	تُكْئِبَ
تُكْئِبْنَ	تُكْئِبَا	تُكْئِبِي	تُكْئِبْنَ	تُكْئِبَا	تُكْئِبِي
يُكْئِبُوا	يُكْئِبَا	يُكْئِبْ	يُكْئِبُوا	يُكْئِبَا	يُكْئِبَ
يُكْئِبْنَ	تُكْئِبَا	تُكْئِبْ	يُكْئِبْنَ	تُكْئِبَا	تُكْئِبَ

Verbal Noun 'ik'āb إِكْئَاب Participle muk'ib مُكْئِب Imperative 'ak'ib

أَكْئِبْ أَكْئِبَا أَكْئِبُوا
أَكْئِبِي أَكْئِبَا أَكْئِبْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yuk'abu يُكْأَبُ Perfect 'uk'iba أُكْئِبَ

Participle muk'ab مُكْأَب

I/VIII كَئِبَ يَكْأَبُ (كَأْب)\اِكْتَأَبَ to be sad about على 39/45

كَأْب\اِكْتِئَاب sorrow كَئِب\مُكْتَئِب sorrowful

43 V تَرَأَّسَ يَتَرَأَّسُ tara''asa yatara''asu رأس

to be appointed head, to take the chair

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	أَتَرَأَّسُ		نَتَرَأَّسُ		تَرَأَّسْنَا	تَرَأَّسْتُ
	تَتَرَأَّسُ	تَتَرَأَّسَانِ	تَتَرَأَّسُونَ		تَرَأَّسْتُمَا	تَرَأَّسْتَ
	تَتَرَأَّسِينَ	تَتَرَأَّسَانِ	تَتَرَأَّسْنَ		تَرَأَّسْتُمَا	تَرَأَّسْتِ
	يَتَرَأَّسُ	يَتَرَأَّسَانِ	يَتَرَأَّسُونَ		تَرَأَّسُوا	تَرَأَّسَا
	تَتَرَأَّسُ	تَتَرَأَّسَانِ	يَتَرَأَّسْنَ		تَرَأَّسْنَ	تَرَأَّسَتَا

Jussive				Subjunctive		
	أَتَرَأَّسْ		نَتَرَأَّسْ		نَتَرَأَّسَ	أَتَرَأَّسَ
	تَتَرَأَّسْ	تَتَرَأَّسَا	تَتَرَأَّسُوا		تَتَرَأَّسُوا	تَتَرَأَّسَا	تَتَرَأَّسَ
	تَتَرَأَّسِي	تَتَرَأَّسَا	تَتَرَأَّسْنَ		تَتَرَأَّسْنَ	تَتَرَأَّسَا	تَتَرَأَّسِي
	يَتَرَأَّسْ	يَتَرَأَّسَا	يَتَرَأَّسُوا		يَتَرَأَّسُوا	يَتَرَأَّسَا	يَتَرَأَّسَ
	تَتَرَأَّسْ	تَتَرَأَّسَا	يَتَرَأَّسْنَ		يَتَرَأَّسْنَ	تَتَرَأَّسَا	تَتَرَأَّسَ

Verbal Noun tara''us تَرَؤُّس **Participle** mutara''is مُتَرَئِّس **Imperative** tara''as

تَرَأَّسْ تَرَأَّسَا تَرَأَّسُوا

تَرَأَّسِي تَرَأَّسَا تَرَأَّسْنَ

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yutara''asu يُتَرَأَّسُ **Perfect** turu''isa تُرُئِّسَ

See 40

44 VI تَفَاءَلَ يَتَفَاءَلُ tafā'ala yatafā'alu to be optimistic فأل

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نَتَفَاءَلُ		أَتَفَاءَلُ		تَفَاءَلْنَا	تَفَاءَلْتُ
	تَتَفَاءَلُونَ	تَتَفَاءَلَانِ	تَتَفَاءَلُ	تَفَاءَلْتُمْ	تَفَاءَلْتُمَا	تَفَاءَلْتَ
	تَتَفَاءَلْنَ	تَتَفَاءَلَانِ	تَتَفَاءَلِينَ	تَفَاءَلْتُنَّ	تَفَاءَلْتُمَا	تَفَاءَلْتِ
	يَتَفَاءَلُونَ	يَتَفَاءَلَانِ	يَتَفَاءَلُ	تَفَاءَلُوا	تَفَاءَلَا	تَفَاءَلَ
	يَتَفَاءَلْنَ	يَتَفَاءَلَانِ	يَتَفَاءَلُ	تَفَاءَلْنَ	تَفَاءَلَتَا	تَفَاءَلَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
	نَتَفَاءَلْ		أَتَفَاءَلْ		نَتَفَاءَلَ	أَتَفَاءَلَ
	تَتَفَاءَلُوا	تَتَفَاءَلَا	تَتَفَاءَلْ		تَتَفَاءَلُوا	تَتَفَاءَلَ
	تَتَفَاءَلْنَ	تَتَفَاءَلَا	تَتَفَاءَلِي		تَتَفَاءَلْنَ	تَتَفَاءَلَ
	يَتَفَاءَلُوا	يَتَفَاءَلَا	يَتَفَاءَلْ		يَتَفَاءَلُوا	يَتَفَاءَلَ
	يَتَفَاءَلْنَ	يَتَفَاءَلَا	يَتَفَاءَلْ		يَتَفَاءَلْنَ	تَتَفَاءَلَ

Verbal Noun tafā'ul تَفَاؤُل **Participle** mutafā'il مُتَفَائِل **Imperative** tafā'al

تَفَاءَلْ	تَفَاءَلَا	تَفَاءَلُوا
تَفَاءَلِي	تَفَاءَلَا	تَفَاءَلْنَ

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yutafā'alu يُتَفَاءَلُ **Perfect** tufū'ila تُفُوئِلَ

فَأْل ج فُؤُول\أَفْؤُل good omen — تَفَاؤُل optimism

مُتَفَائِل optimist(ic) — قَرَأَ الفَأْل to tell fortunes

45 VIII اِلْتَأَمَ يَلْتَئِمُ ilta'ama yalta'imu to assemble intr.; to be mended لأم

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَلْتَئِمُ		أَلْتَئِمُ	اِلْتَأَمْنَا	اِلْتَأَمْتُ
تَلْتَئِمُونَ	تَلْتَئِمَانِ	تَلْتَئِمُ	تَلْتَئِمُ	اِلْتَأَمْتُمْ	اِلْتَأَمْتُمَا	اِلْتَأَمْتَ
تَلْتَئِمْنَ	تَلْتَئِمَانِ	تَلْتَئِمُ	تَلْتَئِمِينَ	اِلْتَأَمْتُنَّ	اِلْتَأَمْتُمَا	اِلْتَأَمْتِ
يَلْتَئِمُونَ	يَلْتَئِمَانِ	يَلْتَئِمُ	يَلْتَئِمُ	اِلْتَأَمُوا	اِلْتَأَمَا	اِلْتَأَمَ
يَلْتَئِمْنَ	تَلْتَئِمَانِ	تَلْتَئِمُ	تَلْتَئِمُ	اِلْتَأَمْنَ	اِلْتَأَمَتَا	اِلْتَأَمَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
	نَلْتَئِمْ		أَلْتَئِمْ	نَلْتَئِمَ		أَلْتَئِمَ
تَلْتَئِمُوا	تَلْتَئِمَا	تَلْتَئِمْ	تَلْتَئِمْ	تَلْتَئِمُوا	تَلْتَئِمَا	تَلْتَئِمَ
تَلْتَئِمْنَ	تَلْتَئِمَا	تَلْتَئِمِي	تَلْتَئِمِي	تَلْتَئِمْنَ	تَلْتَئِمَا	تَلْتَئِمِي
يَلْتَئِمُوا	يَلْتَئِمَا	يَلْتَئِمْ	يَلْتَئِمْ	يَلْتَئِمُوا	يَلْتَئِمَا	يَلْتَئِمَ
يَلْتَئِمْنَ	تَلْتَئِمَا	تَلْتَئِمْ	تَلْتَئِمْ	يَلْتَئِمْنَ	تَلْتَئِمَا	تَلْتَئِمَ

Verbal Noun ilti'ām **Participle** multa'im **Imperative** ilta'im

اِلْتِئَام	مُلْتَئِم	اِلْتَئِمُوا	اِلْتَئِمَا	اِلْتَئِمْ
		اِلْتَئِمْنَ	اِلْتَئِمَا	اِلْتَئِمِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yulta'amu يُلْتَأَمُ **Perfect** ultu'ima أُلْتُئِمَ

I لَأَمَ يَلْأَمُ (لَأْمٌ) to mend ـه, to bandage ـه 37 (but no alternative jussive/imperative [unlike no. 37]); III لاءَمَ to suit ـه، ـه 41

لَأْم repair, bandaging مُلاءَمَة suitability

مُلائِم ل suitable for

46 X **اِسْتَرْأَفَ يَسْتَرْئِفُ** istar'afa yastar'ifu **رأف**

to beg mercy of من

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
			أَسْتَرْئِفُ		اِسْتَرْأَفْنَا	نَسْتَرْئِفُ
		تَسْتَرْئِفُونَ	تَسْتَرْئِفُ	اَسْتَرْأَفْتُمْ	اَسْتَرْأَفْتُمَا	اَسْتَرْأَفْتَ
		تَسْتَرْئِفْنَ	تَسْتَرْئِفِينَ	اَسْتَرْأَفْتُنَّ	اَسْتَرْأَفْتُمَا	اَسْتَرْأَفْتِ
		يَسْتَرْئِفُونَ	يَسْتَرْئِفُ	اَسْتَرْأَفُوا	اَسْتَرْأَفَا	اَسْتَرْأَفَ
		يَسْتَرْئِفْنَ	تَسْتَرْئِفُ	اَسْتَرْأَفْنَ	اَسْتَرْأَفَتَا	اَسْتَرْأَفَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
			أَسْتَرْئِفْ		نَسْتَرْئِفَ	
		تَسْتَرْئِفُوا	تَسْتَرْئِفْ	تَسْتَرْئِفُوا	تَسْتَرْئِفَا	تَسْتَرْئِفَ
		تَسْتَرْئِفْنَ	تَسْتَرْئِفِي	تَسْتَرْئِفْنَ	تَسْتَرْئِفَا	تَسْتَرْئِفِي
		يَسْتَرْئِفُوا	يَسْتَرْئِفْ	يَسْتَرْئِفُوا	يَسْتَرْئِفَا	يَسْتَرْئِفَ
		يَسْتَرْئِفْنَ	تَسْتَرْئِفْ	يَسْتَرْئِفْنَ	تَسْتَرْئِفَا	تَسْتَرْئِفَ

Verbal Noun istir'āf اِسْتِرْآف **Participle** mustar'if مُسْتَرْئِف **Imperative** istar'if

اِسْتَرْئِفْ	اِسْتَرْئِفَا	اِسْتَرْئِفُوا
اِسْتَرْئِفِي	اِسْتَرْئِفَا	اِسْتَرْئِفْنَ

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yustar'afu يُسْتَرْأَفُ **Perfect** ustur'ifa أُسْتُرْئِفَ

Participle mustar'af مُسْتَرْأَف

I (رَأْفَة) رَؤُفَ يَرْؤُفُ to show mercy to ب 38

رَأْفَة\رَآفَة mercy, kindness رَؤُوف merciful, kindly

47 | I | قَرَأَ يَقْرَأُ qara'a yaqra'u to read هـ ل\على، | قرأ

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَقْرَأُ	أَقْرَأُ	قَرَأْنَا		قَرَأْتُ
	تَقْرَأُونَ\تَقْرَؤُونَ	تَقْرَأُ	قَرَأْتُمْ	قَرَأْتُمَا	قَرَأْتَ
	تَقْرَأْنَ	تَقْرَئِينَ	قَرَأْتُنَّ	قَرَأْتُمَا	قَرَأْتِ
	يَقْرَأُونَ\يَقْرَؤُونَ	يَقْرَأُ	قَرَأُوا\قَرَؤُوا	قَرَآ	قَرَأَ
	يَقْرَأْنَ	تَقْرَأُ	قَرَأْنَ	قَرَأْتَا	قَرَأْتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
	نَقْرَأْ	أَقْرَأْ		نَقْرَأَ	أَقْرَأَ
	تَقْرَأُوا\تَقْرَؤُوا	تَقْرَأْ	تَقْرَآ	تَقْرَأُوا\تَقْرَؤُوا	تَقْرَأَ
	تَقْرَأْنَ	تَقْرَئِي	تَقْرَآ	تَقْرَأْنَ	تَقْرَئِي
	يَقْرَأُوا\يَقْرَؤُوا	يَقْرَأْ	يَقْرَآ	يَقْرَأُوا\يَقْرَؤُوا	يَقْرَأَ
	يَقْرَأْنَ	تَقْرَأْ	تَقْرَآ	يَقْرَأْنَ	تَقْرَأَ

Verbal Noun qirā'a قِرَاءَة **Participle** qāri' قَارِئ **Imperative** iqra'

اقْرَأْ اقْرَآ اقْرَأُوا\اقْرَؤُوا

اقْرَئِي اقْرَآ اقْرَأْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yuqra'u يُقْرَأُ **Perfect** qurì'a قُرِئَ

Participle maqrū' مَقْرُوء

X اِسْتَقْرَأَ to investigate هـ 57

قِرَاءَة	reading	قُرْآنال	The Koran/Qur'an
قُرْآنِي	Koranic	قَارِئ ج قُرَّاء	reader, Koranic reciter
اِسْتِقْرَاء	investigation	مَقْرُوء	read, legible

48 | I | بَطُؤَ يَبْطُؤُ baṭu'a yabṭu'u to be slow | بطأ

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	تَبْطُؤُ		أَبْطُؤُ	بَطُؤْنَا	بَطُؤْتُ
	تَبْطُؤُونَ	تَبْطُؤَانِ	تَبْطُؤُ	بَطُؤْتُمْ	بَطُؤْتَ
	تَبْطُؤْنَ	تَبْطُؤَانِ	تَبْطُئِينَ	بَطُؤْتُنَّ	بَطُؤْتِ
	يَبْطُؤُونَ	يَبْطُؤَانِ	يَبْطُؤُ	بَطُؤُوا	بَطُؤَ
	يَبْطُؤْنَ	تَبْطُؤَانِ	تَبْطُؤُ	بَطُؤْنَ	بَطُؤَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
تَبْطُؤْ		أَبْطُؤْ	نَبْطُؤَ	أَبْطُؤَ
تَبْطُؤُوا	تَبْطُؤَا	تَبْطُؤْ	تَبْطُؤُوا	تَبْطُؤَ
تَبْطُؤْنَ	تَبْطُؤَا	تَبْطُئِي	تَبْطُؤْنَ	تَبْطُئِي
يَبْطُؤُوا	يَبْطُؤَا	يَبْطُؤْ	يَبْطُؤُوا	يَبْطُؤَ
يَبْطُؤْنَ	تَبْطُؤَا	تَبْطُؤْ	يَبْطُؤْنَ	تَبْطُؤَ

Verbal Noun	Participle	Imperative		
بُطْء	بَاطِئ	أَبْطُؤُوا	أَبْطُؤَا	أَبْطُؤْ
		أَبْطُؤْنَ	أَبْطُؤَا	أَبْطُئِي

buṭ' bāṭi' ubṭu'

PASSIVE none

II بَطَّأَ to retard على، ب 50; IV أَبْطَأَ to retard هـ 52

V/VI تَبَطَّأَ\تَبَاطَأَ 53/54 = I بَطُؤَ 48; X اِسْتَبْطَأَ to find slow هـ، ه 57

بُطْء\تَبَاطُؤ	slowness	إِبْطَاء	retardation
بِبُطْء	slowly	بَطِيء ج بِطَاء	slow
دون إِبْطَاء	without delay	بَطِيء التَّرَدُّد	low-frequency, LF
إِضْرَاب تَبَاطُؤ العَمَل	go-slow (strike)		

49 I بَرِئَ يَبْرَأُ bari'a yabra'u to be(come) free from من — برأ

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نَبْرَأُ	أَبْرَأُ	بَرِئْنَا	بَرِئْتُ
	تَبْرَأُونَ\تَبْرَؤُونَ	تَبْرَأُ	بَرِئْتُمْ	بَرِئْتَ
	تَبْرَأْنَ	تَبْرَئِينَ	بَرِئْتُنَّ	بَرِئْتِ
	يَبْرَأُونَ\يَبْرَؤُونَ	يَبْرَأُ	بَرِئُوا	بَرِئَا
	تَبْرَأْنَ	تَبْرَأُ	بَرِئْنَ	بَرِئَتَا
Jussive			Subjunctive	
	نَبْرَأْ	أَبْرَأْ	نَبْرَأْ	أَبْرَأْ
	تَبْرَأُوا\تَبْرَؤُوا	تَبْرَأْ	تَبْرَأُوا\تَبْرَؤُوا	تَبْرَأْ
	يَبْرَأْنَ	تَبْرَئِي	يَبْرَأْنَ	تَبْرَأْ
	يَبْرَأُوا\يَبْرَؤُوا	يَبْرَأْ	يَبْرَأُوا\يَبْرَؤُوا	يَبْرَأْ
	يَبْرَأْنَ	تَبْرَأْ	يَبْرَأْنَ	تَبْرَأْ

Verbal Noun barā'a **Participle** bāri' **Imperative** ibra'

بَرَاءَة	بَارِئ	اِبْرَأُوا\اِبْرَؤُوا	اِبْرَأْ
		اِبْرَأْنَ	اِبْرَئِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yubara'u يُبْرَأُ **Perfect** burī'a بُرِئَ

Participle mabrū' مَبْرُوء

II/IV بَرَّأَ\أَبْرَأَ to absolve from من ه 50/52

V تَبَرَّأَ to clear oneself of من 53

بَرِيء ج أَبْرِيَاء من free of — بَرَاء من free from, exempt from

على بَرَاءَة innocent — إِبْرَاء acquittal

تَبْرِئَة discharge, exemption

بَرَاءَة being free, innocence, diploma, patent

50 II هَنَّأَ يُهَنِّئُ hanna'a yuhanni'u هنأ

to congratulate on ه، ب\على

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	تُهَنِّئُ	أُهَنِّئُ	هَنَّأْنَا		هَنَّأْتُ
	تُهَنِّئُونَ	تُهَنِّئَانِ	تُهَنِّئُ	هَنَّأْتُمْ	هَنَّأْتَمَا	هَنَّأْتَ
	تُهَنِّئْنَ	تُهَنِّئَانِ	تُهَنِّئِينَ	هَنَّأْتُنَّ	هَنَّأْتَمَا	هَنَّأْتِ
	يُهَنِّئُونَ	يُهَنِّئَانِ	يُهَنِّئُ	هَنَّأُوا\هَنَّؤُوا	هَنَّآ	هَنَّأَ
	يُهَنِّئْنَ	تُهَنِّئَانِ	تُهَنِّئُ	هَنَّأْنَ	هَنَّأَتَا	هَنَّأَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	تُهَنِّئْ	أُهَنِّئْ	تُهَنِّئَ		أُهَنِّئَ
	تُهَنِّئُوا	تُهَنِّئَا	تُهَنِّئُوا	تُهَنِّئَا	تُهَنِّئَ
	تُهَنِّئْنَ	تُهَنِّئَا	تُهَنِّئْنَ	تُهَنِّئَا	تُهَنِّئِي
	يُهَنِّئُوا	يُهَنِّئَا	يُهَنِّئُوا	يُهَنِّئَا	يُهَنِّئَ
	يُهَنِّئْنَ	تُهَنِّئَا	يُهَنِّئْنَ	تُهَنِّئَا	تُهَنِّئَ

Verbal Noun tahni'a تَهْنِئَة Participle muhanni' مُهَنِّئ Imperative hanni'

هَنِّئْ هَنِّئَا هَنِّئُوا

هَنِّئِي هَنِّئَا هَنِّئْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yuhanna'u يُهَنَّأُ Perfect hunni'a هُنِّئَ

Participle muhanna' مُهَنَّأ

I (هَنَأَ) هَنِئَ يَهْنَأُ do good to/for ه، ل 49

V تَهَنَّأَ to enjoy ب 53

تَهْنِئَة ج تَهَانِئ congratulation

هَنَاء well-being

هَانِئَة servant-girl

هَنِيئًا! good health! bon appétit!

اللّه يُهَنِّئُك! same to you! (reply to هَنِيئًا)

مُهَنِّئ wellwisher

هَانِئ happy

هَنِيء wholesome

51 III كَافَأَ يُكَافِئُ kāfa'a yukāfi'u to reward ه، هـ كفأ

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نُكَافِئُ	أُكَافِئُ	كَافَأْنَا	كَافَأْتُ
تُكَافِئُونَ	تُكَافِئَانِ	تُكَافِئُ	كَافَأْتُمْ	كَافَأْتَ
تُكَافِئْنَ	تُكَافِئَانِ	تُكَافِئِينَ	كَافَأْتُمَا	كَافَأْتِ
يُكَافِئُونَ	يُكَافِئَانِ	يُكَافِئُ	كَافَأُوا\كَافَؤُوا	كَافَأَ كَافَأَ
يُكَافِئْنَ	تُكَافِئَانِ	تُكَافِئُ	كَافَأْنَ	كَافَأَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
	نُكَافِئْ	أُكَافِئْ	نُكَافِئَ	أُكَافِئَ
تُكَافِئُوا	تُكَافِئَا	تُكَافِئْ	تُكَافِئُوا	تُكَافِئَ
تُكَافِئْنَ	تُكَافِئَا	تُكَافِئِي	تُكَافِئْنَ	تُكَافِئَ
يُكَافِئُوا	يُكَافِئَا	يُكَافِئْ	يُكَافِئُوا	يُكَافِئَ
يُكَافِئْنَ	تُكَافِئَا	تُكَافِئْ	يُكَافِئْنَ	تُكَافِئَ

Verbal Noun mukāfa'a Participle mukāfi' Imperative kāfi'

مُكَافَأَة	مُكَافِئ	كَافِئُوا	كَافِئَا	كَافِئْ
		كَافِئْنَ	كَافِئَا	كَافِئِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yukāfa'u يُكَافَأُ Perfect kūfi'a كُوفِئَ

Participle mukāfa' مُكَافَأ

I (كَفْء) كَفَأَ يَكْفَأُ to invert ه, to turn away from من 47

IV أَكْفَأَ to invert ه 52; VI تَكَافَأَ to be equal to each other 54

VII اِنْكَفَأَ to be repelled 55

مُكَافَأَة reward		مُكَافِئ\كِفَاء	equivalent
كَفْء ج أَكْفَاء ل	equal to, suitable for	كِفَاءَة	equality
تَكَافُؤ	equivalence	مُتَكَافِئ	corresponding

52 IV أَنْشَأَ يُنْشِئُ 'ansha'a yunshi'u نشأ

to create, to construct ب

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
		أُنْشِئُ		أَنْشَأْنَا	أَنْشَأْتُ
		تُنْشِئُ	تُنْشِئَانِ	أَنْشَأْتُمَا	أَنْشَأْتَ
		تُنْشِئُ	تُنْشِئَانِ	أَنْشَأْتُمْ	أَنْشَأْتُمَا
		تُنْشِئِينَ	تُنْشِئَانِ	أَنْشَأْتُنَّ	أَنْشَأْتِ
		يُنْشِئُ	يُنْشِئَانِ	أَنْشَأُوا\أَنْشَؤُوا	أَنْشَأَ
		تُنْشِئُ	تُنْشِئَانِ	أَنْشَأْنَ	أَنْشَأَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive	
		أُنْشِئْ		أُنْشِئَ	
		تُنْشِئْ	تُنْشِئَا	تُنْشِئُوا	تُنْشِئَ
		تُنْشِئْ	تُنْشِئَا	تُنْشِئُوا	تُنْشِئَ
		تُنْشِئِي	تُنْشِئَا	تُنْشِئْنَ	تُنْشِئِي
		يُنْشِئْ	يُنْشِئَا	يُنْشِئُوا	يُنْشِئَ
		تُنْشِئْ	تُنْشِئَا	يُنْشِئْنَ	تُنْشِئَ

Verbal Noun 'inshā' إِنْشَاء Participle munshi' مُنْشِئ Imperative 'anshi'

أَنْشِئْ أَنْشِئَا أَنْشِئُوا

أَنْشِئِي أَنْشِئَا أَنْشِئْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yunsha'u يُنْشَأُ Perfect 'unshi'a أُنْشِئَ

Participle munsha' مُنْشَأ

I (نَشْء) نَشَأَ يَنْشَأُ to arise 47; II نَشَّأَ to bring up (a child) ◂ 50

إِنْشَاء creation, construction, composition نُشُوء evolution

إِنْشَائِي creative, editorial مُنْشِئ creator, author

إِعَادَة إِنْشَاء re-creation مَنْشَأ place of origin

مُنْشَأَة creation, production نَشْء younger generation

نَاشِئ عن arising from نَشْأَة\تَنْشِيء\تَنْشِئَة upbringing

53 V تَنَبَّأَ يَتَنَبَّأُ tanabba'a yatanabba'u to forecast ب نبأ

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَتَنَبَّأُ	أَتَنَبَّأُ		تَنَبَّأْنَا	تَنَبَّأْتُ
	تَتَنَبَّأُونَ\تَتَنَبَّأُونَ	تَتَنَبَّآنِ	تَتَنَبَّأُ	تَنَبَّأْتُمْ	تَنَبَّأْتَمَا	تَنَبَّأْتَ
	تَتَنَبَّأْنَ	تَتَنَبَّأْنَ	تَتَنَبَّئِينَ	تَنَبَّأْتُنَّ	تَنَبَّأْتَمَا	تَنَبَّأْتِ
	يَتَنَبَّأُونَ\يَتَنَبَّأُونَ	يَتَنَبَّآنِ	يَتَنَبَّأُ	تَنَبَّأُوا\تَنَبَّؤُوا	تَنَبَّآ	تَنَبَّأَ
	يَتَنَبَّأْنَ	تَتَنَبَّآنِ	تَتَنَبَّأُ	تَنَبَّأْنَ	تَنَبَّأَتَا	تَنَبَّأَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
	نَتَنَبَّأْ	أَتَنَبَّأْ		نَتَنَبَّأَ	أَتَنَبَّأَ
	تَتَنَبَّأُوا\تَتَنَبَّؤُوا	تَتَنَبَّآ	تَتَنَبَّأْ	تَتَنَبَّأُوا\تَتَنَبَّؤُوا	تَتَنَبَّآ	تَتَنَبَّأَ
	تَتَنَبَّأْنَ	تَتَنَبَّآ	تَتَنَبَّئِي	تَتَنَبَّأْنَ	تَتَنَبَّآ	تَتَنَبَّئِي
	يَتَنَبَّأُوا\يَتَنَبَّؤُوا	يَتَنَبَّآ	يَتَنَبَّأْ	يَتَنَبَّأُوا\يَتَنَبَّؤُوا	يَتَنَبَّآ	يَتَنَبَّأَ
	يَتَنَبَّأْنَ	تَتَنَبَّآ	تَتَنَبَّأْ	يَتَنَبَّأْنَ	تَتَنَبَّآ	تَتَنَبَّأَ

Verbal Noun tanabbu' **Participle** mutanabbi' **Imperative** tanabba'

	تَنَبُّؤ	مُتَنَبِّئ		تَنَبَّأُوا\تَنَبَّؤُوا	تَنَبَّآ	تَنَبَّأْ
				تَنَبَّأْنَ	تَنَبَّآ	تَنَبَّئِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yutanabba'u يُتَنَبَّأُ **Perfect** tunubbi'a تُنُبِّئَ

Participle mutanabba' مُتَنَبَّأ

II نَبَّأَ to inform عن\ب، ه 50; IV أَنْبَأَ to inform ب، ه 52

X اِسْتَنْبَأَ to inquire after هـ 57

---

news	نَبَأ ج أَنْبَاء	forecast	تَنَبُّؤ
prophecy	نُبُوَّة	notification	إِنْبَاء
weather forecast	التَنَبُّؤَات الجَوِّيَّة	inquiry	اِسْتِنْبَاء

54 VI تَبَاطَأَ يَتَبَاطَأُ tabāṭa'a yatabāṭa'u to be slow بطأ

ACTIVE	Imperfect				Perfect
	نَتَبَاطَأُ	أَتَبَاطَأُ		تَبَاطَأْنَا	تَبَاطَأْتُ
	تَتَبَاطَأُونَ\تَتَبَاطَأُونَ	تَتَبَاطَآنِ	تَتَبَاطَأُ	تَبَاطَأْتُمْ	تَبَاطَأْتَمَا	تَبَاطَأْتَ
	تَتَبَاطَأْنَ	تَتَبَاطَآنِ	تَتَبَاطَئِينَ	تَبَاطَأْتُنَّ	تَبَاطَأْتَمَا	تَبَاطَأْتِ
	يَتَبَاطَأُونَ\يَتَبَاطَأُونَ	يَتَبَاطَآنِ	يَتَبَاطَأُ	تَبَاطَأُوا\تَبَاطَؤُوا	تَبَاطَآ	تَبَاطَأَ
	يَتَبَاطَأْنَ	تَتَبَاطَآنِ	تَتَبَاطَأُ	تَبَاطَأْنَ	تَبَاطَأَتَا	تَبَاطَأَتْ

Jussive					Subjunctive
	نَتَبَاطَأْ	أَتَبَاطَأْ			أَتَبَاطَأْ
تَتَبَاطَأُوا\تَتَبَاطَؤُوا	تَتَبَاطَأُوا\تَتَبَاطَؤُوا	تَتَبَاطَآ	تَتَبَاطَأْ	تَتَبَاطَأُوا\تَتَبَاطَؤُوا	تَتَبَاطَآ	تَتَبَاطَأْ
	تَتَبَاطَأْنَ	تَتَبَاطَئِي	تَتَبَاطَآ	تَتَبَاطَأْنَ	تَتَبَاطَئِي
يَتَبَاطَأُوا\يَتَبَاطَؤُا	يَتَبَاطَأُوا\يَتَبَاطَؤُا	يَتَبَاطَآ	يَتَبَاطَأْ	يَتَبَاطَأُوا\يَتَبَاطَؤُا	يَتَبَاطَآ	يَتَبَاطَأْ
	يَتَبَاطَأْنَ	يَتَبَاطَآ	يَتَبَاطَأْ	يَتَبَاطَأْنَ	يَتَبَاطَآ	يَتَبَاطَأْ

Verbal Noun tabāṭu' **Participle** mutabāṭi' **Imperative** tabāṭa'

تَبَاطُؤٌ مُتَبَاطِئٌ تَبَاطَؤُوا\تَبَاطَأُوا تَبَاطَآ تَبَاطَأْ

تَبَاطَئِي تَبَاطَآ تَبَاطَأْنَ

PASSIVE none

See 48

55 VII انْكَفَأَ يَنْكَفِئُ inkafa'a yankafi'u to be repelled كفأ

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
		أَنْكَفِئُ	انْكَفَأْنَا		انْكَفَأْتُ
	تَنْكَفِئُونَ	تَنْكَفِئُ	تَنْكَفِئَانِ	انْكَفَأْتُمْ	انْكَفَأْتُمَا	انْكَفَأْتَ
	تَنْكَفِئْنَ	تَنْكَفِئِينَ	تَنْكَفِئَانِ	انْكَفَأْتُنَّ	انْكَفَأْتُمَا	انْكَفَأْتِ
	يَنْكَفِئُونَ	يَنْكَفِئُ	يَنْكَفِئَانِ	انْكَفَأُوا\انْكَفَؤُوا	انْكَفَأَا	انْكَفَأَ
	يَنْكَفِئْنَ	يَنْكَفِئُ	يَنْكَفِئَانِ	انْكَفَأْنَ	انْكَفَأَتَا	انْكَفَأَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
		أَنْكَفِئْ	نَنْكَفِئَ		أَنْكَفِئَ
	تَنْكَفِئُوا	تَنْكَفِئْ	تَنْكَفِئُوا	تَنْكَفِئَا	تَنْكَفِئَ
	تَنْكَفِئْنَ	تَنْكَفِئِي	تَنْكَفِئْنَ	تَنْكَفِئَا	تَنْكَفِئِي
	يَنْكَفِئُوا	يَنْكَفِئْ	يَنْكَفِئُوا	يَنْكَفِئَا	يَنْكَفِئَ
	يَنْكَفِئْنَ	يَنْكَفِئْ	يَنْكَفِئْنَ	تَنْكَفِئَا	تَنْكَفِئَ

Verbal Noun inkifā' Participle munkāfi' Imperative inkafi'

انْكِفَاء	مُنْكَفِئ	انْكَفِئُوا	انْكَفِئَا	انْكَفِئْ
		انْكَفِئْنَ	انْكَفِئَا	انْكَفِئِي

PASSIVE none

See 51

56 | VIII | اِبْتَدَأَ يَبْتَدِئُ ibtada'a yabtadi'u to begin ب | بدأ

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَبْتَدِئُ	أَبْتَدِئُ	ابْتَدَأْنَا	ابْتَدَأْتُ	
تَبْتَدِئُونَ	تَبْتَدِئَانِ	تَبْتَدِئُ	اَبْتَدَأْتُمْ	اَبْتَدَأْتُمَا	اَبْتَدَأْتَ
تَبْتَدِئْنَ	تَبْتَدِئَانِ	تَبْتَدِئِينَ	اَبْتَدَأْتُنَّ	اَبْتَدَأْتُمَا	اَبْتَدَأْتِ
يَبْتَدِئُونَ	يَبْتَدِئَانِ	يَبْتَدِئُ	اِبْتَدَأُوا\اَبْتَدَؤُوا	اِبْتَدَأَا	اَبْتَدَأَ
يَبْتَدِئْنَ	تَبْتَدِئَانِ	تَبْتَدِئُ	اِبْتَدَأْنَ	اِبْتَدَأَتَا	اَبْتَدَأَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive	
	نَبْتَدِئْ	أَبْتَدِئْ		نَبْتَدِئَ	أَبْتَدِئَ
تَبْتَدِئُوا	تَبْتَدِئَا	تَبْتَدِئْ	تَبْتَدِئُوا	تَبْتَدِئَا	تَبْتَدِئَ
تَبْتَدِئْنَ	تَبْتَدِئَا	تَبْتَدِئِي	تَبْتَدِئْنَ	تَبْتَدِئَا	تَبْتَدِئِي
يَبْتَدِئُوا	يَبْتَدِئَا	يَبْتَدِئْ	يَبْتَدِئُوا	يَبْتَدِئَا	يَبْتَدِئَ
يَبْتَدِئْنَ	تَبْتَدِئَا	تَبْتَدِئْ	يَبْتَدِئْنَ	تَبْتَدِئَا	تَبْتَدِئَ

Verbal Noun ibtidā' **Participle** mubtadi' **Imperative** ibtadi'

اِبْتِدَاء مُبْتَدِئ اِبْتَدِئُوا اِبْتَدِئَا اِبْتَدِئْ
اِبْتَدِئْنَ اِبْتَدِئَا اِبْتَدِئِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yubtada'u يُبْتَدَأُ **Perfect** ubtudi'a أُبْتُدِئَ
Participle mubtada' مُبْتَدَأ

I (بَدْء) بَدَأَ يَبْدَأُ to begin α\في\ب\هـ 47; II بَدَّأَ to give priority over هـ
50 على

اِبْتِدَاء\بَدْء\بِدَايَة\مُبْتَدَأ beginning (noun) مُبْتَدِئ beginner
بَادِئ\مُبْتَدِئ beginning (adjective) بَادِئُ الذِّكْر the first-mentioned
مَبْدَأ ج مَبَادِئ principle, origin مَبْدَئِي fundamental, original
مَبْدَئِيًّا in principle, originally اِبْتِدَائِي initial, primary
اِبْتِدَاءً من with effect from مِن البِدَايَة from the beginning
في البِدَايَة\الاِبْتِدَاء at the beginning مَدْرَسَة اِبْتِدَائِيَّة primary school
تَعْلِيم اِبْتِدَائِي elementary education

57 X اِسْتَقْرَأَ يَسْتَقْرِئُ istaqra'a yastaqri'u to investigate هـ قرأ

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نَسْتَقْرِئُ		أَسْتَقْرِئُ		اِسْتَقْرَأْنَا	اِسْتَقْرَأْتُ
	تَسْتَقْرِئُونَ	تَسْتَقْرِئَانِ	تَسْتَقْرِئُ	اِسْتَقْرَأْتُمْ	اِسْتَقْرَأْتُمَا	اِسْتَقْرَأْتَ
	تَسْتَقْرِئْنَ	تَسْتَقْرِئَانِ	تَسْتَقْرِئِينَ	اِسْتَقْرَأْتُنَّ	اِسْتَقْرَأْتُمَا	اِسْتَقْرَأْتِ
	يَسْتَقْرِئُونَ	يَسْتَقْرِئَانِ	يَسْتَقْرِئُ	اِسْتَقْرَأُوا\اِسْتَقْرَؤُوا	اِسْتَقْرَأَا	اِسْتَقْرَأَ
	يَسْتَقْرِئْنَ	تَسْتَقْرِئَانِ	تَسْتَقْرِئُ	اِسْتَقْرَأْنَ	اِسْتَقْرَأَتَا	اِسْتَقْرَأَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
	نَسْتَقْرِئْ		أَسْتَقْرِئْ	نَسْتَقْرِئَ	أَسْتَقْرِئَ
تَسْتَقْرِئُوا	تَسْتَقْرِئَا	تَسْتَقْرِئْ	تَسْتَقْرِئُوا	تَسْتَقْرِئَا	تَسْتَقْرِئَ
تَسْتَقْرِئْنَ	تَسْتَقْرِئَا	تَسْتَقْرِئِي	تَسْتَقْرِئْنَ	تَسْتَقْرِئَا	تَسْتَقْرِئِي
يَسْتَقْرِئُوا	يَسْتَقْرِئَا	يَسْتَقْرِئْ	يَسْتَقْرِئُوا	يَسْتَقْرِئَا	يَسْتَقْرِئَ
يَسْتَقْرِئْنَ	تَسْتَقْرِئَا	تَسْتَقْرِئْ	يَسْتَقْرِئْنَ	تَسْتَقْرِئَا	تَسْتَقْرِئَ

Verbal Noun istiqrā' **Participle** mustaqri' **Imperative** istaqri'

اِسْتِقْرَاء	مُسْتَقْرِئ	اِسْتَقْرِئُوا	اِسْتَقْرِئْ
		اِسْتَقْرِئْنَ	اِسْتَقْرِئِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yustaqra'u يُسْتَقْرَأُ **Perfect** ustuqri'a أُسْتُقْرِئَ

Participle mustaqra' مُسْتَقْرَأ

See 47

DOUBLED VERBS

Doubled verbs have identical middle and final radicals. These identical radicals are sound (i.e. not و, ي or ء). The initial radical is almost always sound; one doubled verb has initial-radical و and is listed here, as the و is mostly stable (i.e. has consonantal form, *w*). A few doubled verbs have initial-radical ء, but they commonly occur only in Forms II or V and conjugate like hamzated verbs, among which they are listed in this book.

Conjugation. The standard conjugation patterns shown in paras. 23, 25 and 29 to 33 of the introductory chapter (tenses, imperative, participles and verbal noun) apply to doubled verbs, with the following provisions:

- The identical radicals remain as two identical but separate letters:
  - whenever the personal ending begins with a consonant ('consonantal ending', e.g. مَرَرْتُ 'I passed',
  - whenever the measure requires a long vowel between the radicals, e.g. اِسْتِمْرَار 'continuity',
  - whenever there is no personal ending, i.e. the verb form ends with ْ... , e.g. the rarer jussive form تَمْرُرْ 'you pass' (see below).
- The identical radicals fall together as a doubled letter, which can be pointed with ّ... , whenever the personal ending begins with a vowel ('vocalic ending'), e.g. مَرُّوا 'they passed'.
- In all forms except II, III, V and VI there are two jussives: a commoner ('contracted') form identical to the subjunctive, and a rarer ('uncontracted') form in which the identical radicals separate when there is no personal ending, i.e. the verb ends in ْ... . In the tables the commoner jussive is marked (i) and the rarer one (ii). Similarly, there are two imperatives, one derived from each jussive.
- The contracted and uncontracted pairs (see above) are found all over Forms III and VI of the doubled verbs. The alternatives are shown; the contracted form is the commoner of the two, though none of the verbs concerned is very common.

The perfect and imperfect stems are derived as for sound verbs, but allowing for the separation or running together of the identical radicals.

The participles and verbal nouns are formed as for sound verbs, except that the ... vowel which in sound active participles follows the *middle* radical, in doubled active participles follows the *initial* radical in Forms IV and X, and is *dropped* in Forms I, VII and VIII. Verb no. **64** (Form IV), shown here has, exceptionally, an irregular verbal noun.

58 I مَرَّ يَمُرُّ marra yamurru to pass ب\على, to continue α مرّ

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect		
نَمُرُّ	أَمُرُّ		مَرَرْنَا		مَرَرْتُ
تَمُرُّونَ	تَمُرُّ	تَمُرَّانِ	مَرَرْتُمْ	مَرَرْتُمَا	مَرَرْتَ
تَمْرُرْنَ	تَمُرَّيْنَ	تَمُرَّانِ	مَرَرْتُنَّ	مَرَرْتُمَا	مَرَرْتِ
يَمُرُّونَ	يَمُرُّ	يَمُرَّانِ	مَرُّوا	مَرَّا	مَرَّ
يَمْرُرْنَ	تَمُرُّ	تَمُرَّانِ	مَرَرْنَ	مَرَّتَا	مَرَّتْ

Jussive (ii)			Subjunctive and Jussive (i)		
نَمْرُرْ	أَمْرُرْ		نَمُرَّ		أَمُرَّ
تَمُرُّوا	تَمْرُرْ	تَمُرَّا	تَمُرُّوا	تَمُرَّا	تَمُرَّ
تَمْرُرْنَ	تَمُرِّي	تَمُرَّا	تَمْرُرْنَ	تَمُرَّا	تَمُرِّي
يَمُرُّوا	يَمْرُرْ	يَمُرَّا	يَمُرُّوا	يَمُرَّا	يَمُرَّ
يَمْرُرْنَ	تَمْرُرْ	تَمُرَّا	يَمْرُرْنَ	تَمُرَّا	تَمُرَّ

Verbal Noun murūr	Participle mārr	Imperative murra/umrur		
مُرُور	مَارّ	مُرُّوا	مُرَّا	مُرَّ\أَمْرُرْ
		أَمْرُرْنَ		مُرِّي

PASSIVE° Imperfect yumarru يُمَرُّ Perfect murra مُرَّ

Participle mamrūr مَمْرُور

II/IV مَرَّرَ\أَمَرَّ to let pass ه، 62/64; X اِسْتَمَرَّ to continue α\في\على 70

مَارّ passing, passer-by إِمْرَار insertion مُسْتَمِرّ continuous

اِسْتِمْرَار continuity بِاسْتِمْرَار\مُسْتَمِرًّا continually

مع مُرُور الزَّمَن with the passing of time إِشَارَة المُرُور traffic light/signal

مَرَّات\عِدَّة مَرَّات often مَرَّتَيْن twice مَرَّة\مَرَّةً واحدةً once

كَم مَرَّةً؟ how often? مَرَّةً جديدةً\مَرَّةً ثانيةً\مَرَّةً أُخْرَى again

لأَوَّل\الآخر مَرَّة for the first/last time تَذْكِرَة المُرُور laissez-passer

أَمَرَّ نَظْرَهُ على to glance at تَيَّار مُسْتَمِرّ direct current, DC

59 | I | ظَلَّ يَظَلُّ ẓalla yaẓallu to become ا, to remain ا, to continue α | ظَلَّ

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect		
نَظَلُّ		أَظَلُّ	ظَلَلْنَا		ظَلَلْتُ
تَظَلُّونَ	تَظَلَّانَ	تَظَلُّ	ظَلَلْتُمْ	ظَلَلْتُمَا	ظَلَلْتَ
تَظَلَلْنَ	تَظَلَّانَ	تَظَلِّينَ	ظَلَلْتُنَّ	ظَلَلْتُمَا	ظَلَلْتِ
يَظَلُّونَ	يَظَلَّانِ	يَظَلُّ	ظَلُّوا	ظَلَّا	ظَلَّ
يَظَلَلْنَ	تَظَلَّانَ	تَظَلُّ	ظَلَلْنَ	ظَلَّتَا	ظَلَّتْ
	Jussive (ii)		Subjunctive and Jussive (i)		
نَظَلَّ		أَظَلَّ	نَظَلَّ		أَظَلَّ
تَظَلُّوا	تَظَلَّا	تَظَلَّ	تَظَلُّوا	تَظَلَّا	تَظَلَّ
تَظَلَلْنَ	تَظَلَّا	تَظَلِّي	تَظَلَلْنَ	تَظَلَّا	تَظَلِّي
يَظَلُّوا	يَظَلَّا	يَظَلَّ	يَظَلُّوا	يَظَلَّا	يَظَلَّ
يَظَلَلْنَ	تَظَلَّا	تَظَلَّ	يَظَلَلْنَ	تَظَلَّا	تَظَلَّ

Verbal Noun	Participle	Imperative		
ظَلّ ẓall	ظَالّ ẓāll	ظَلُّوا	ظَلَّا	ظَلَّ\اِظْلَلْ
		اِظْلَلْنَ	ظَلَّا	ظَلِّي

PASSIVE none

II/IV أَظَلَّ\ظَلَّلَ to overshadow هـ، 62/64; V تَظَلَّلَ to be overshadowed by ب 65; X اِسْتَظَلَّ to seek the protection of ب 70

ظِلّ ج ظِلَال\ظُلُول shade, shadow, patronage ظَلِيل shaded

مِظَلَّة sunshade, parachute مِظَلِّي paratrooper

مُظَلَّل shady في ظِلّ\تَحْتَ ظِلّ under the patronage of

ظَلَّ على رَأْيِهِ أَنَّ to maintain the opinion that

ظَلَّ يَدْرُسُ الهَنْدَسَةَ. He continued studying engineering.

60 I تَمَّ يَتِمُّ tamma yatimmu to end intr. تمّ

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
نَتِمُّ		أَتِمُّ	تَمَمْنَا		تَمَمْتُ	
تَتِمُّونَ	تَتِمَّانِ	تَتِمُّ	تَمَمْتُمْ	تَمَمْتُمَا	تَمَمْتَ	
تَتَمَمْنَ	تَتِمَّانِ	تَتِمِّينَ	تَمَمْتُنَّ	تَمَمْتُمَا	تَمَمْتِ	
يَتِمُّونَ	يَتِمَّانِ	يَتِمُّ	تَمُّوا	تَمَّا	تَمَّ	
يَتَمَمْنَ	تَتِمَّانِ	تَتِمُّ	تَمَمْنَ	تَمَّتَا	تَمَّتْ	

Jussive (ii)			Subjunctive and Jussive (i)		
نَتِمْ		أَتِمْ	نَتِمَّ		أَتِمَّ
تَتِمُّوا	تَتِمَّا	تَتِمْ	تَتِمُّوا	تَتِمَّا	تَتِمَّ
تَتَمَمْنَ	تَتِمَّا	تَتِمِّي	تَتَمَمْنَ	تَتِمَّا	تَتِمِّي
يَتِمُّوا	يَتِمَّا	يَتِمْ	يَتِمُّوا	يَتِمَّا	يَتِمَّ
يَتَمَمْنَ	تَتِمَّا	تَتِمْ	يَتَمَمْنَ	تَتِمَّا	تَتِمَّ

Verbal Noun tamām	Participle tāmm	Imperative timm/itmim		
تَمَام	تَامّ	تِمُّوا	تِمَّا	تِمّ\اِتْمِمْ
		اِتْمِمْنَ	تِمِّي	

PASSIVE° Imperfect yutammu يُتَمُّ Perfect tumma تُمَّ

II/IV تَمَّمَ\أَتَمَّ to finish ⇐ 62/64

تَمَام complete(ness), perfect(ion) تَامّ complete, perfect

تَمَامًا\بِالتَمَام completely, perfectly تَتْمِيم\إِتْمَام completion

قَمَر تَمَام full moon في تَمَام السَّاعَة الثَّالِثَة at 3 o'clock sharp

في تَمَام مَعْنَى الإِبارَة in the full meaning of the expression

تَمّ وُصُول إلى اتّفاقيَّة a decision was arrived at

تَمَّت دِراسَة المَوْضُوع the matter was studied

61 I وَدَّ يَوَدُّ wadda yawaddu to like, to love ه، ه\أن وَدَّ

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
			أَوَدُّ	وَدَدْنَا	وَدَدْتُ
			نَوَدُّ		
		تَوَدَّانِ	تَوَدُّ	وَدَدْتُمَا	وَدَدْتَ
		تَوَدُّونَ	تَوَدُّ	وَدَدْتُمْ	
		تَوَدَّانِ	تَوَدِّينَ	وَدَدْتُمَا	وَدَدْتِ
		تَوْدُدْنَ	تَوَدُّ	وَدَدْتُنَّ	
		يَوَدَّانِ	يَوَدُّ	وَدَّا	وَدَّ
		يَوَدُّونَ	يَوَدُّ	وَدُّوا	
		تَوَدَّانِ	تَوَدُّ	وَدَّتَا	وَدَّتْ
		يَوْدُدْنَ	تَوَدُّ	وَدَدْنَ	

Jussive (ii)			Subjunctive and Jussive (i)	
		أَوْدُدْ	نَوَدَّ	أَوَدَّ
		نَوْدُدْ		
	تَوَدَّا	تَوْدُدْ	تَوَدُّوا	تَوَدَّ
	تَوَدُّوا			
	تَوَدَّا	تَوَدِّي	تَوْدُدْنَ	تَوَدِّي
	تَوْدُدْنَ			
	يَوَدَّا	يَوْدُدْ	يَوَدُّوا	يَوَدَّ
	يَوَدُّوا			
	تَوَدَّا	تَوْدُدْ	يَوْدُدْنَ	تَوَدَّ
	يَوْدُدْنَ			

Verbal Noun wadd **Participle** wādd **Imperative** wadda/īdad

وَدَّ وَادّ وَدُّوا وَدَّا اِيدَدْ\وَدَّ

اِيدَدْنَ وَدَّا وَدِّي

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yuwaddu يُوَدُّ **Perfect** wudda وُدَّ

Participle mawdūd مَوْدُود

وَدّ\وِدَاد\مَوَدَّة friendship, love وَدِّي\وُدِّي friendly

وَدّ ج أَوْدَاد affectionate وَدُود\وَدِيد attached

تَوَادّ friendly relations ... أَوَدُّ أَنْ أَقُول I should like to say ...

كان بِوَدِّي لَوْ ... I would be pleased if... مُنَافَسَة وُدِّيَّة friendly contest

تَسْوِيَة وُدِّيَّة amicable settlement ... وَدِدْت لَوْ كُنْت I wish I were ...

62 II قَرَّرَ يُقَرِّرُ qarrara yuqarriru to report, to decide ه قرّ

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
نُقَرِّرُ	أُقَرِّرُ			قَرَّرْتُ		
تُقَرِّرُونَ	تُقَرِّرُ	تُقَرِّرَانِ	تُقَرِّرُونَ	قَرَّرْتَ	قَرَّرْتُمَا	قَرَّرْتُمْ
تُقَرِّرْنَ	تُقَرِّرِينَ	تُقَرِّرَانِ	تُقَرِّرْنَ	قَرَّرْتِ	قَرَّرْتُمَا	قَرَّرْتُنَّ
يُقَرِّرُونَ	يُقَرِّرُ	يُقَرِّرَانِ	يُقَرِّرُونَ	قَرَّرَ	قَرَّرَا	قَرَّرُوا
يُقَرِّرْنَ	تُقَرِّرُ	تُقَرِّرَانِ	يُقَرِّرْنَ	قَرَّرَتْ	قَرَّرَتَا	قَرَّرْنَ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
نُقَرِّرْ	أُقَرِّرْ			نُقَرِّرَ		
تُقَرِّرُوا	تُقَرِّرْ	تُقَرِّرَا	تُقَرِّرُوا	تُقَرِّرَ	تُقَرِّرَا	تُقَرِّرُوا
تُقَرِّرْنَ	تُقَرِّرِي	تُقَرِّرَا	تُقَرِّرْنَ	تُقَرِّرِي	تُقَرِّرَا	تُقَرِّرْنَ
يُقَرِّرُوا	يُقَرِّرْ	يُقَرِّرَا	يُقَرِّرُوا	يُقَرِّرَ	يُقَرِّرَا	يُقَرِّرُوا
يُقَرِّرْنَ	تُقَرِّرْ	تُقَرِّرَا	يُقَرِّرْنَ	تُقَرِّرَ	تُقَرِّرَا	يُقَرِّرْنَ

Verbal Noun taqrīr **Participle** muqarrir **Imperative** qarrir

تَقْرِير	مُقَرِّر	قَرِّرُوا	قَرِّرَا	قَرِّرْ
		قَرِّرْنَ	قَرِّرَا	قَرِّرِي

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yuqarraru يُقَرَّرُ **Perfect** qurrira قُرِّرَ

Participle muqarrar مُقَرَّر

I (قَرَار) قَرَّ يَقِرُّ to settle down 60; IV أَقَرَّ to settle, to establish ه، هـ 64; V تَقَرَّرَ to be decided 65; X اِسْتَقَرَّ to become stable 70

قَرَار stability, fixedness مَقَرّ site, habitation, headquarters

تَقْرِير\قِرَار decision تَقْرِير ج تَقَارِير report مُقَرِّر reporter

مُقَرَّر decided, fixed مُسْتَقِرّ stable, settled اِسْتِقْرَار stability

إِقْرَار establishment, confirmation قَارّ permanent

اتَّخَذَ قَرَارًا to take a decision لَجْنَة قَارَّة standing committee

تَقْرِير المصير self-determination مَقَرّ القِيَادَة command headquarters

63 III حَاجَّ يُحَاجُّ\يُحَاجِجُ ḥājja yuḥājju/yuḥājiju حجّ

to dispute with ه

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
حَاجَجْتُ		حَاجَجْنَا	أُحَاجُّ\أُحَاجِجُ		نُحَاجُّ\نُحَاجِجُ	
حَاجَجْتَ	حَاجَجْتُمَا	حَاجَجْتُمْ	تُحَاجُّ	تُحَاجَّانِ	تُحَاجُّونَ	
			\تُحَاجِجُ	\تُحَاجِجَانِ	\تُحَاجِجُونَ	
حَاجَجْتِ	حَاجَجْتُمَا	حَاجَجْتُنَّ	تُحَاجِّينَ	تُحَاجَّانِ	تُحَاجِجْنَ	
			\تُحَاجِجِينَ	\تُحَاجِجَانِ		
حَاجَّ	حَاجَّا	حَاجُّوا	يُحَاجُّ	يُحَاجَّانِ	يُحَاجُّونَ	
			\يُحَاجِجُ	\يُحَاجِجَانِ	\يُحَاجِجُونَ	
حَاجَّتْ	حَاجَّتَا	حَاجَجْنَ	تُحَاجُّ	تُحَاجَّانِ	يُحَاجِجْنَ	
			\تُحَاجِجُ	\تُحَاجِجَانِ		

Subjunctive and Jussive (i)			Jussive (ii)		
أُحَاجَّ\أُحَاجِجَ	نُحَاجَّ\نُحَاجِجَ		أُحَاجِجْ		نُحَاجِجْ
تُحَاجَّ	تُحَاجَّا	تُحَاجُّوا	تُحَاجِجْ	تُحَاجَّا	تُحَاجُّوا
\تُحَاجِجَ	\تُحَاجِجَا	\تُحَاجِجُوا		\تُحَاجِجَا	\تُحَاجِجُوا
تُحَاجِّي	تُحَاجَّا	تُحَجِجْنَ	تُحَاجِّي	تُحَاجَّا	تُحَاجِجْنَ
\تُحَاجِجِي	\تُحَاجِجَا		\تُحَاجِجِي	\تُحَاجِجَا	
يُحَاجَّ	يُحَاجَّا	يُحَاجُّوا	يُحَاجِجْ	يُحَاجَّا	يُحَاجُّوا
\يُحَاجِجَ	\يُحَاجِجَا	\يُحَاجِجُوا		\يُحَاجِجَا	\يُحَاجِجُوا
تُحَاجَّ	تُحَاجَّا	يُحَاجِجْنَ	تُحَاجِجْ	تُحَاجَّا	يُحَاجِجْنَ
\تُحَاجِجَ	\تُحَاجِجَا			\تُحَاجِجَا	

Verbal Noun muḥājaj(a)/ḥijāj مُحَاجَج\مُحَاجَجَة\حِجَاج

Imperative ḥājja/ḥājij

حَاجَّ\حَاجِجْ حَاجَّا\حَاجِجَا حَاجُّوا\حَاجِجُوا

حَاجِّي\حَاجِجِي حَاجَّا\حَاجِجَا جَاجِجْنَ

Participle muḥājj/muḥājij مُحَاجّ\مُحَاجِج

63 (continued)

PASSIVE **Perfect** ḥūjija حُوجِجَ

Imperfect yuḥājju/yuḥājaju يُحَاجُّ\يُحَاجَجُ **Participle** muḥājj مُحَاجّ

I (حَجَّ) حَجَّ يَحُجُّ to make the pilgrimage (to Mecca) 58; VI تَحَاجَّ to dispute with each other 66; VIII اِحْتَجَّ to plead ب ; to justify something ل ; to object against على 68

حَجّ\حِجَّة ج حَجَّات\حِجَّات\حِجَج pilgrimage مَحَجّ destination

ذُو الحِجَّة (the month) dhu l-ḥijja حَاجّ ج حُجَّاج\حَجِيج pilgrim, haji

حُجَّة ج حُجَج argument, pretext حَجَج dispute, debate

اِحْتِجَاج plea, objection

64 IV أَحَبَّ يُحِبُّ 'aḥabba yuḥibbu to love, to like حبّ ، ه\أن

ACTIVE	Imperfect					Perfect		
	نُحِبُّ		أُحِبُّ			أَحْبَبْنَا		أَحْبَبْتُ
	تُحِبُّونَ	تُحِبَّانِ	تُحِبُّ	تُحِبَّانِ	تُحِبَّانِ	أَحْبَبْتُمْ	أَحْبَبْتُمَا	أَحْبَبْتَ
	تُحْبِبْنَ	تُحِبَّانِ	تُحِبِّينَ	تُحِبَّانِ	تُحِبِّينَ	أَحْبَبْتُنَّ	أَحْبَبْتُمَا	أَحْبَبْتِ
	يُحِبُّونَ	يُحِبَّانِ	يُحِبُّ	يُحِبَّانِ	يُحِبُّ	أَحَبُّوا	أَحَبَّا	أَحَبَّ
	يُحْبِبْنَ	تُحِبَّانِ	تُحِبُّ	تُحِبَّانِ	تُحِبُّ	أَحْبَبْنَ	أَحَبَّتَا	أَحَبَّتْ

Jussive (ii)					Subjunctive and Jussive (i)			
نُحْبِبْ		أُحْبِبْ			نُحِبَّ			أُحِبَّ
تُحِبُّوا	تُحِبَّا	تُحْبِبْ	تُحِبِّي	تُحِبَّا	تُحِبُّوا	تُحِبَّا	تُحِبَّ	تُحِبَّ
تُحْبِبْنَ	تُحِبَّا	تُحِبِّي	تُحِبَّا	تُحْبِبْنَ	تُحْبِبْنَ	تُحِبَّا	تُحِبِّي	تُحِبَّ
يُحِبُّوا	يُحِبَّا	يُحِبَّ	يُحِبَّا	يُحِبُّوا	يُحِبَّ	يُحِبَّا	يُحِبَّ	يُحِبَّ
يُحْبِبْنَ	تُحِبَّا	تُحْبِبْ	تُحِبَّا	يُحْبِبْنَ	يُحْبِبْنَ	تُحِبَّا	تُحْبِبْ	تُحِبَّ

Verbal Noun maḥabba **Participle** muḥibb **Imperative** 'aḥibba/'aḥbib

(NB irregular for this verb) مَحَبَّة مُحِبّ أَحِبُّوا أَحِبَّا أَحْبِبْ\أَحِبَّ

أَحْبِبْنَ أَحِبَّا أَحِبِّي

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yuḥabbu يُحَبُّ **Perfect** 'uḥibba أُحِبَّ

Participle muḥabb مُحَبّ

I (حُبّ) حَبَّ يَحِبُّ 60 = (but less frequently used than) IV أَحَبَّ 64

حُبّ\مَحَبَّة love حُبِّي amicable, fair (also in law)

أَحَبّ preferable حُبِّيًّا amicably, fairly (also in law)

حِبّ\حَبِيب ج أَحْبَاب؛ حَبِيبَة ج حَبَائِب beloved, dearest (m.; f.)

حَبِيبِي\حَبِيبَتِي darling (m.; f., form of address) مَحْبُوب beloved

مُحِبّ lover, amateur مُحَبَّب agreeable مُسْتَحَبّ popular

حُبًّا لِ for love of حُبّ الوَطَن patriotism مُحِبّ لِلوَطَن patriotic

حُبّ الذَّات egoism مُحِبّ لِلذَّات egoistic مُحِبّ لِلسَّلَام peace-loving

65 V تَرَدَّدَ يَتَرَدَّدُ taraddada yataraddadu ; to hesitate in/to في\أن ; to keep coming back to على ردّ

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نَتَرَدَّدُ	أَتَرَدَّدُ		تَرَدَّدْتُ	
تَتَرَدَّدُونَ	تَتَرَدَّدُ	تَتَرَدَّدَانِ	تَرَدَّدْتَ	تَرَدَّدْتُمَا	تَرَدَّدْتُمْ
تَتَرَدَّدْنَ	تَتَرَدَّدِينَ	تَتَرَدَّدَانِ	تَرَدَّدْتِ	تَرَدَّدْتُمَا	تَرَدَّدْتُنَّ
يَتَرَدَّدُونَ	يَتَرَدَّدُ	يَتَرَدَّدَانِ	تَرَدَّدَ	تَرَدَّدَا	تَرَدَّدُوا
يَتَرَدَّدْنَ	تَتَرَدَّدُ	تَتَرَدَّدَانِ	تَرَدَّدَتْ	تَرَدَّدَتَا	تَرَدَّدْنَ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نَتَرَدَّدْ	أَتَرَدَّدْ		نَتَرَدَّدَ	أَتَرَدَّدَ
تَتَرَدَّدُوا	تَتَرَدَّدْ	تَتَرَدَّدَا	تَتَرَدَّدُوا	تَتَرَدَّدَ
تَتَرَدَّدْنَ	تَتَرَدَّدِي	تَتَرَدَّدَا	تَتَرَدَّدْنَ	تَتَرَدَّدِي
يَتَرَدَّدُوا	يَتَرَدَّدْ	يَتَرَدَّدَا	يَتَرَدَّدُوا	يَتَرَدَّدَ
يَتَرَدَّدْنَ	يَتَرَدَّدْ	تَتَرَدَّدَا	يَتَرَدَّدْنَ	تَتَرَدَّدَ

Verbal Noun taraddud **Participle** mutaraddid **Imperative** taraddad

تَرَدُّدٌ	مُتَرَدِّدٌ	تَرَدَّدُوا	تَرَدَّدَا	تَرَدَّدْ
		تَرَدَّدْنَ	تَرَدَّدَا	تَرَدَّدِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yutaraddadu يُتَرَدَّدُ **Perfect** turuddida تُرُدِّدَ

Participle mutaraddad مُتَرَدَّدٌ

I (رَدَّ) رَدَّ يَرُدُّ to give/send back هـ، ه; to reply to على 58; II رَدَّدَ to repel 62; VIII اِرْتَدَّ to abandon عن 68; X اِسْتَرَدَّ to reclaim, retrieve هـ 70

رَدٌّ ج رُدُود restitution — مَرَدّ rejection, logical basis

تَرْدِيد reiteration — تَرَدُّد hesitation, frequentation

اِرْتِدَاد desertion — اِسْتِرْدَاد retrieval — مَرْدُود (financial) yield

رَدّ فِعْل reaction — رَدّ فِعْل شَدِيد اللَّهْجَة a strongly worded reply

دَلِيل لا يُرَدُّ indisputable evidence — رَدّ الاعْتِبار (political) rehabilitation

اِسْتَرَدَّ نُقُودًا\اقْتِرَاحَهُ to withdraw money/one's proposal

66 VI تَضَادَّ يَتَضَادُّ\يَتَضَادَدُ taḍādda yataḍāddu/ yataḍādadu to contradict each other ضدّ

ACTIVE		Imperfect			Perfect
تَضَادَدْتُ		تَضَادَدْنَا	أَتَضَادُّ\أَتَضَادَدُ	نَتَضَادُّ\نَتَضَادَدُ	
تَضَادَدْتَ	تَضَادَدْتُمَا	تَضَادَدْتُمْ	تَتَضَادُّ	تَتَضَادَّانِ	تَتَضَادُّونَ
			\تَتَضَادَدُ	\تَتَضَادَدَانِ	\تَتَضَادَدُونَ
تَضَادَدْتِ	تَضَادَدْتُمَا	تَضَادَدْتُنَّ	تَتَضَادِّينَ	تَتَضَادَّانِ	تَتَضَادَدْنَ
			\تَتَضَادَدِينَ	\تَتَضَادَدَانِ	
تَضَادَّ	تَضَادَّا	تَضَادُّوا	يَتَضَادُّ	يَتَضَادَّانِ	يَتَضَادُّونَ
			\يَتَضَادَدُ	\يَتَضَادَدَانِ	\يَتَضَادَدُونَ
تَضَادَّتْ	تَضَادَّتَا	تَضَادَدْنَ	تَتَضَادُّ	تَتَضَادَّانِ	يَتَضَادَدْنَ
			\تَتَضَادَدُ	\تَتَضَادَدَانِ	

Jussive (ii)		Subjunctive and Jussive (i)		
	أَتَضَادَدْ	أَتَضَادَّ\أَتَضَادَدَ	نَتَضَادَّ\نَتَضَادَدَ	نَتَضَادَدْ
تَتَضَادَدْ	تَتَضَادَّا	تَتَضَادُّوا	تَتَضَادَّا	تَتَضَادُّوا
	\تَتَضَادَدَا	\تَتَضَادَدَا	\تَتَضَادَدُوا	\تَتَضَادَدُوا
تَتَضَادَّي	تَتَضَادَّا	تَتَضَادَدْنَ	تَتَضَادَّا	تَتَضَادَدْنَ
	\تَتَضَادَدِي	\تَتَضَادَدَا	\تَتَضَادَدِي	
يَتَضَادَدْ	يَتَضَادَّا	يَتَضَادُّوا	يَتَضَادَّا	يَتَضَادُّوا
	\يَتَضَادَدَا	\يَتَضَادَدَا	\يَتَضَادَدُوا	\يَتَضَادَدُوا
تَتَضَادَدْ	تَتَضَادَّا	يَتَضَادَدْنَ	تَتَضَادَّا	يَتَضَادَدْنَ
	\تَتَضَادَدَا	\تَتَضَادَدَا		

Verbal Noun taḍādd/taḍādud تَضَادّ\تَضَادُد

Imperative taḍādda/taḍādad

تَضَادَّ\تَضَادَدَ تَضَادَّا\تَضَادَدَا تَضَادُّوا\تَضَادَدُوا

تَضَادَّي\تَضَادَدِي تَضَادَّا\تَضَادَدَا تَضَادَدْنَ

Participle mutaḍādd/mutaḍādid مُتَضَادّ\مُتَضَادِد

66 (continued)

PASSIVE° **Perfect** tuḍūdida تُضُودِدَ
Imperfect yutaḍāddu يُتَضَادُّ

III ضَادَّ to contravene ـهـ, to oppose ـهـ، ه 63

مُضَادَّة\تَضَادّ	contrast, contradiction	مُضَادّ	opposed, contra-, anti-
ضِدّ	against	ضِدّ ج أَضْدَاد	contrary, opponent
ضِدِّيَّة	opposition	مُضَادّ حَشَرِي	insecticide
مُضَادّ للفَساد	antiseptic	ثَوْرَة مُضَادَّة	counter-revolution
هُجُوم مُضَادّ	counter-offensive	مُضَادّ حَيَوِي	antibiotic

أنا ضِدّ الاقْتِراح. I am against the proposal.

67 VII انحَلَّ يَنْحَلُّ inḥalla yanḥallu to be (dis)solved, to be untied حلّ

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	أَنْحَلُّ		انْحَلَلْنَا	انْحَلَلْتُ
تَنْحَلُّ	تَنْحَلُّ	تَنْحَلاَّنِ	انْحَلَلْتُمْ	انْحَلَلْتُمَا	انْحَلَلْتَ
تَنْحَلُّونَ	تَنْحَلَّينَ	تَنْحَلاَّنِ	انْحَلَلْتُنَّ	انْحَلَلْتُمَا	انْحَلَلْتِ
تَنْحَلِلْنَ	يَنْحَلُّ	يَنْحَلاَّنِ	انْحَلُّوا	انْحَلاَّ	انْحَلَّ
يَنْحَلُّونَ	تَنْحَلُّ	تَنْحَلاَّنِ	انْحَلَلْنَ	انْحَلَلْتَا	انْحَلَّتْ
يَنْحَلِلْنَ					

Jussive (ii)			Subjunctive and Jussive (i)		
	أَنْحَلِلْ		نَنْحَلَّ		أَنْحَلَّ
نَنْحَلِلْ	تَنْحَلِلْ	تَنْحَلاَّ	تَنْحَلُّوا	تَنْحَلاَّ	تَنْحَلَّ
تَنْحَلُّوا	تَنْحَلَّي	تَنْحَلاَّ	تَنْحَلِلْنَ	تَنْحَلاَّ	تَنْحَلَّي
تَنْحَلِلْنَ	يَنْحَلِلْ	يَنْحَلاَّ	يَنْحَلُّوا	يَنْحَلاَّ	يَنْحَلَّ
يَنْحَلُّوا	تَنْحَلِلْ	تَنْحَلاَّ	يَنْحَلِلْنَ	تَنْحَلاَّ	تَنْحَلَّ
يَنْحَلِلْنَ					

Verbal Noun	Participle	Imperative	
انْحِلاَل	مُنْحَلّ munḥall	انْحَلُّوا	انْحَلِلْ انْحَلاَّ انْحَلِلْ\انْحَلَّ inḥalla/inḥalil
		انْحَلِلْنَ	انْحَلاَّ انْحَلِلِي

PASSIVE none (active has passive meaning)

I (حَلَّ) حَلَّ يَحُلُّ to untie ـهـ, to (dis)solve ـهـ, to release ـهـ، ه 58

II حَلَّلَ to analyse ـهـ, to absolve ه, to permit ـهـ 62; IV أَحَلَّ to release ـهـ, to permit ـهـ, to relocate ـهـ 64; VIII احْتَلَّ to occupy ـهـ 68

حَلّ ج حُلُول (dis)solution انْحِلاَل (dis)solution مُنْحَلّ\مَحْلُول (dis)solved

مَحَلّ place مَحَلِّي local مَحَلَّة stopover تَحْلِيل analysis

تَحْلِيلِي analytical احْتِلاَل occupation مُحْتَلّ occupying, occupied

تَحْلِيل نَفْسِي psychoanalysis قُوات مُحْتَلَّة occupying forces

الأَرَاضِي المُحْتَلَّة the occupied territories قابِل للحَلّ soluble

حَلّ مَحَلّ to take the place of بالتَّحْلِيل in detail

68 VIII امْتَدَّ يَمْتَدُّ imtadda yamtaddu to be extended مدّ

ACTIVE

Perfect			Imperfect		
امْتَدَدْتُ	امْتَدَدْنَا		أَمْتَدُّ	نَمْتَدُّ	
امْتَدَدْتَ	امْتَدَدْتُمَا	امْتَدَدْتُمْ	تَمْتَدُّ	تَمْتَدَّانِ	تَمْتَدُّونَ
امْتَدَدْتِ	امْتَدَدْتُمَا	امْتَدَدْتُنَّ	تَمْتَدِّينَ	تَمْتَدَّانِ	تَمْتَدِدْنَ
امْتَدَّ	امْتَدَّا	امْتَدُّوا	يَمْتَدُّ	يَمْتَدَّانِ	يَمْتَدُّونَ
امْتَدَّتْ	امْتَدَّتَا	امْتَدَدْنَ	تَمْتَدُّ	تَمْتَدَّانِ	يَمْتَدِدْنَ

Subjunctive and Jussive (i)			Jussive (ii)		
أَمْتَدَّ	نَمْتَدَّ		أَمْتَدَدْ	نَمْتَدَدْ	
تَمْتَدَّ	تَمْتَدَّا	تَمْتَدُّوا	تَمْتَدَدْ	تَمْتَدَّا	تَمْتَدُّوا
تَمْتَدِّي	تَمْتَدَّا	تَمْتَدِدْنَ	تَمْتَدِّي	تَمْتَدَّا	تَمْتَدِدْنَ
يَمْتَدَّ	يَمْتَدَّا	يَمْتَدُّوا	يَمْتَدَدْ	يَمْتَدَّا	يَمْتَدُّوا
تَمْتَدَّ	تَمْتَدَّا	يَمْتَدِدْنَ	تَمْتَدَدْ	تَمْتَدَّا	يَمْتَدِدْنَ

Verbal Noun imtidād **Participle** mumtadd **Imperative** imtadda/imtadid

امْتَدَّ\امْتَدِدْ امْتَدَّا امْتَدُّوا مُمْتَدّ امْتِدَاد

اِمْتَدِّي اِمْتَدَّا اِمْتَدِدْنَ

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yumtaddu يُمْتَدُّ **Perfect** umtudda أُمْتُدَّ

I/II مَدَّ يَمُدُّ (مَدَّ)\مَدَّدَ to extend هـ 58/62; IV أَمَدَّ to provide with ه، هـ

ب 64; V تَمَدَّدَ to extend intr. 65

مَدّ ج مُدُود	extension	مُدَّة ج مُدَد	period of time
تَمْدِيد\تَمَدُّد	extension	إِمْدَاد	supply
امْتِدَاد	extension, extensibility	مَادّ	extending
مَادَّة ج مَوَادّ	material, clause (of document)	مَادِّي	material(ist(ic))
مَادِّيَّة	materialism	مَمْدُود\مُمَدَّد\مُمْتَدّ	extended
مَوَادّ أَوَّلِيَّة\مَوَادّ خام	raw materials	مَوَادّ تجارِيَّة	commodities
مَوَادّ مَصْنُوعَة	manufactured goods	مَوَادّ غِذَائِيَّة	foodstuffs
مَدَّ يَدَهُ	to hold out one's hand	في مُدَّة يَوْمَيْن	within two days

69 VIII اِضْطَرَّ يَضْطَرُّ iḍṭarra yaḍṭarru to compel to ه إلى ضَرَّ

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نَضْطَرُّ	أَضْطَرُّ	اِضْطَرَرْنَا	اِضْطَرَرْتُ
	تَضْطَرُّونَ	تَضْطَرَّانِ	تَضْطَرُّ	اِضْطَرَرْتُمَا	اِضْطَرَرْتُمْ	اِضْطَرَرْتَ
	تَضْطَرِرْنَ	تَضْطَرَّانِ	تَضْطَرِّينَ	اِضْطَرَرْتُمَا	اِضْطَرَرْتُنَّ	اِضْطَرَرْتِ
	يَضْطَرُّونَ	يَضْطَرَّانِ	يَضْطَرُّ	اِضْطَرُّوا	اِضْطَرَّ
	يَضْطَرِرْنَ	تَضْطَرَّانِ	تَضْطَرُّ	اِضْطَرَرْنَ	اِضْطَرَّتَا	اِضْطَرَّتْ

Jussive (ii)			Subjunctive and Jussive (i)		
نَضْطَرِرْ	أَضْطَرِرْ		نَضْطَرَّ	أَضْطَرَّ	
تَضْطَرُّوا	تَضْطَرَّا	تَضْطَرِرْ	تَضْطَرُّوا	تَضْطَرَّا	تَضْطَرَّ
تَضْطَرِرْنَ	تَضْطَرَّا	تَضْطَرِّي	تَضْطَرِرْنَ	تَضْطَرَّا	تَضْطَرِّي
يَضْطَرُّوا	يَضْطَرَّا	يَضْطَرِرْ	يَضْطَرُّوا	يَضْطَرَّا	يَضْطَرَّ
يَضْطَرِرْنَ	تَضْطَرَّا	تَضْطَرِرْ	يَضْطَرِرْنَ	تَضْطَرَّا	تَضْطَرَّ

Verbal Noun iḍṭirār **Participle** muḍṭarr **Imperative** iḍṭarra/iḍṭarir

اِضْطِرَار مُضْطَرّ اِضْطَرُّوا اِضْطَرِرْ\اِضْطَرَّ

اِضْطَرِرْنَ اِضْطَرَّا اِضْطَرِّي

PASSIVE Imperfect yuḍṭarru يُضْطَرُّ **Perfect** uḍṭurra أُضْطُرَّ

Participle muḍṭarr مُضْطَرّ

I (ضَرَّ) ضَرَّ يَضُرُّ to damage ه، هـ 58; IV أَضَرَّ to oblige to ه على 64

VII اِنْضَرَّ to be damaged 67

ضَرّ damage ضَرَر ج أَضْرَار damage

ضَرُورَة necessity, emergency ضَرُورِي necessary

اِضْطِرَار compulsion اِضْطِرَارِي compulsory بِالضَّرُورَة necessarily

ضَارّ\مُضِرّ harmful مُضْطَرّ إِلَى compelled to ضَرُورِيَّات necessities

عِنْدَ الضَّرُورَة if necessary; in an emergency

(لَيْسَ) مِن الضَّرُورِي أَن ... it is (not) necessary that ...

70 X اِسْتَحَقَّ يَسْتَحِقُّ istaḥaqqa yastaḥiqqu to deserve هـ حَقَّ

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	أَسْتَحِقُّ	نَسْتَحِقُّ	اِسْتَحْقَقْتُ	اِسْتَحْقَقْنَا
تَسْتَحِقُّ	تَسْتَحِقَّانِ	تَسْتَحِقُّونَ	اِسْتَحْقَقْتَ	اِسْتَحْقَقْتُمَا	اِسْتَحْقَقْتُمْ
تَسْتَحِقِّينَ	تَسْتَحِقَّانِ	تَسْتَحْقُقْنَ	اِسْتَحْقَقْتِ	اِسْتَحْقَقْتُمَا	اِسْتَحْقَقْتُنَّ
يَسْتَحِقُّ	يَسْتَحِقَّانِ	يَسْتَحِقُّونَ	اِسْتَحَقَّ	اِسْتَحَقَّا	اِسْتَحَقُّوا
تَسْتَحِقُّ	تَسْتَحِقَّانِ	يَسْتَحْقُقْنَ	اِسْتَحَقَّتْ	اِسْتَحَقَّتَا	اِسْتَحْقَقْنَ

Jussive (ii)			Subjunctive and Jussive (i)		
	أَسْتَحِقَّ	نَسْتَحِقَّ		أَسْتَحِقَّ	نَسْتَحِقَّ
تَسْتَحِقَّ	تَسْتَحِقَّا	تَسْتَحِقُّوا	تَسْتَحِقَّ	تَسْتَحِقَّا	تَسْتَحِقُّوا
تَسْتَحِقِّي	تَسْتَحِقَّا	تَسْتَحْقُقْنَ	تَسْتَحِقِّي	تَسْتَحِقَّا	تَسْتَحْقُقْنَ
يَسْتَحِقَّ	يَسْتَحِقَّا	يَسْتَحِقُّوا	يَسْتَحِقَّ	يَسْتَحِقَّا	يَسْتَحِقُّوا
تَسْتَحِقَّ	تَسْتَحِقَّا	يَسْتَحْقُقْنَ	تَسْتَحِقَّ	تَسْتَحِقَّا	يَسْتَحْقُقْنَ

Verbal Noun istiḥqāq اِسْتِحْقَاق **Imperative** istaḥiqqa/istaḥqiq اِسْتَحِقَّ\اِسْتَحْقِقْ اِسْتَحِقَّا اِسْتَحِقُّوا اِسْتَحِقِّي اِسْتَحِقَّا اِسْتَحْقُقْنَ

Participle mustaḥiqq مُسْتَحِقّ

PASSIVE Imperfect yustaḥaqqu يُسْتَحَقُّ **Perfect** ustuḥiqqa أُسْتُحِقَّ **Participle** mustaḥaqq مُسْتَحَقّ

I حَقَّ يَحِقُّ (حَقَّ) to be true 60; II حَقَّقَ to realise, to implement, to confirm هـ 62; IV أَحَقَّ to be right in في 64; V تَحَقَّقَ to materialise intr., to be convinced of هـ 65

حَقّ ج حُقُوق right (noun) حَقِيقَة ج حَقَائِق truth, reality حَقِيقِي true
تَحْقِيق realisation, confirmation, identification تَحَقُّق verification
اِسْتِحْقَاق merit مَحْقُوق\مُسْتَحَقّ deserving مُحَقِّق investigator
مُحِقّ truthful مُتَحَقِّق convinced of حَقِيقَةً\في الحَقِيقَة\حَقًّا\بالحَقّ in truth
مُسْتَحَقّ due (payment) مُحَقَّق indisputable حُقُوق jurisprudence
الحَقّ معه\عليه he is right/wrong حُقُوق إِنْسَانِيَّة\مَدَنِيَّة human/civil rights

ASSIMILATED VERBS

Assimilated verbs are the first sub-class of the weak class. They have a weak letter, و or ي , as initial radical, and two sound radicals (in one or two roots, middle ء and a final sound radical). All common assimilated verbs have initial و ; initial ي verbs are few and infrequently used.

One root with initial و and identical sound middle and final radicals (ودّ) is studied under the doubled verbs (no. **61**).

Conjugation. The standard conjugation patterns shown in paras. 23, 25 and 29 to 33 of the introductory chapter (tenses, imperative, participles and verbal noun) apply to assimilated verbs, subject to the following provisions:

- In the active imperfect tenses of Form I of all common verbs with initial و , the initial radical and its vowel are dropped. In the affirmative imperative of such verbs, the initial radical and its vowel, and also the imperative prefix, are dropped. In a few exceptional roots, however, the initial *w* remains consonantal in Form I and the conjugation is sound. All verbs with initial-radical ي are sound throughout Form I.
- The theoretical combination *uw/uy* becomes ...وُ *ū* and the theoretical combination *iw/iy* becomes ...يِ *ī* .
- In Forms II, III, V and VI the weak radical stabilises as a consonant (*w* or *y*), and the conjugation follows the standard pattern completely.
- In Form VIII the initial radical و plus the ت of the form become تّ .

Verbs with inital و are listed, in all forms, before verbs with initial ي .

71 | I | وَجَدَ يَجِدُ wajada yajidu to find هـ | وجد

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَجِدُ		أَجِدُ	وَجَدْنَا	وَجَدْتُ
	تَجِدُونَ	تَجِدَانِ	تَجِدُ	وَجَدْتُمْ	وَجَدْتُمَا	وَجَدْتَ
	تَجِدْنَ	تَجِدَانِ	تَجِدِينَ	وَجَدْتُنَّ	وَجَدْتُمَا	وَجَدْتِ
	يَجِدُونَ	يَجِدَانِ	يَجِدُ	وَجَدُوا	وَجَدَا	وَجَدَ
	يَجِدْنَ	تَجِدَانِ	تَجِدُ	وَجَدْنَ	وَجَدَتَا	وَجَدَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive		
	نَجِدْ		أَجِدْ	نَجِدَ		أَجِدَ
	تَجِدُوا	تَجِدَا	تَجِدْ	تَجِدُوا	تَجِدَا	تَجِدَ
	تَجِدْنَ	تَجِدَا	تَجِدِي	تَجِدْنَ	تَجِدَا	تَجِدِي
	يَجِدُوا	يَجِدَا	يَجِدْ	يَجِدُوا	يَجِدَا	يَجِدَ
	يَجِدْنَ	تَجِدَا	تَجِدْ	يَجِدْنَ	تَجِدَا	تَجِدَ

Verbal Noun wujūd وُجُود **Participle** wājid وَاجِد **Imperative** jid

جِدْ	جِدُوا	وَاجِد
جِدِي	جِدَا	جِدْنَ

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yūjadu يُوجَدُ **Perfect** wujida وُجِدَ

Participle mawjūd مَوْجُود

I, *passive* وُجِدَ يُوجَدُ to exist, to be there 71

IV أَوْجَدَ to bring about, to accomplish هـ 77

وُجُود	existence	مَوْجُود	found, present	مُوجِد	originator
مَوْجُودَات (سائلِيَّة\ثابِتَة)	(liquid/fixed) assets			وَجْد	passion
إِيجَاد	production, supply			there is/are (things)	يُوجَدُ\تُوجَدُ
وُجُودِي	existentialist			existentialism	وُجُودِيَّة
إن وُجِدَ\إن وُجِدَتْ	if there is/are any, if applicable			(in statistics, reports etc.)	
لا يُوجَدُ\لا تُوجَدُ	there is/are none, nil				

72 I وَضَعَ يَضَعُ waḍa'a yaḍa'u to place, to set down هـ وضع

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نَضَعُ	أَضَعُ	وَضَعْنَا	وَضَعْتُ	
تَضَعُونَ	تَضَعَانِ	تَضَعُ	وَضَعْتُمْ	وَضَعْتُمَا	وَضَعْتَ
تَضَعْنَ	تَضَعَانِ	تَضَعِينَ	وَضَعْتُنَّ	وَضَعْتُمَا	وَضَعْتِ
يَضَعُونَ	يَضَعَانِ	يَضَعُ	وَضَعُوا	وَضَعَا	وَضَعَ
يَضَعْنَ	تَضَعَانِ	تَضَعُ	وَضَعْنَ	وَضَعَتَا	وَضَعَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نَضَعْ	أَضَعْ		نَضَعَ	أَضَعَ	
تَضَعُوا	تَضَعَا	تَضَعْ	تَضَعُوا	تَضَعَا	تَضَعَ
تَضَعْنَ	تَضَعَا	تَضَعِي	تَضَعْنَ	تَضَعَا	تَضَعِي
يَضَعُوا	يَضَعَا	يَضَعْ	يَضَعُوا	يَضَعَا	يَضَعَ
يَضَعْنَ	تَضَعَا	تَضَعْ	يَضَعْنَ	تَضَعَا	تَضَعَ

Verbal Noun waḍ' وَضْع **Participle** wāḍi' وَاضِع **Imperative** ḍa' ضَعْ ضَعَا ضَعُوا ضَعِي ضَعَا ضَعْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yuḍa'u يُوضَعُ **Perfect** wuḍi'a وُضِعَ

Participle mawḍū' مَوْضُوع

VI/VIII تَوَاضَعَ\اتَّضَعَ to humble oneself 79/80

وَضْع ج أَوْضَاع setting down, position, situation

وَضْعِي situational مَوْضُوع ج مَوَاضِيع subject, topic

مَوْضُوعِي objective (adjective) وَضْعِيَّة positivism

مَوْضِع ج مَوَاضِع spot, passage (text) وَضَعَ تقريراً to make a report

تَوَاضُع\اتِّضَاع humility وَضَعَ سلاحَهُ to lay down one's arms

وَضَعَ يَدَهُ على to lay hands on مَوْضِع الاهْتِمام focus of attention

شَكْلاً ومَوضُوعًا in form and substance في مَوْضِعِه in its place

73 I وَرِثَ يَرِثُ warit<u>h</u>a yarit<u>h</u>u to inherit from ه\عن\من، هـ ورث

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
نَرِثُ		أَرِثُ	وَرِثْنَا		وَرِثْتُ
تَرِثُونَ	تَرِثَانِ	تَرِثُ	وَرِثْتُمْ	وَرِثْتُمَا	وَرِثْتَ
تَرِثْنَ	تَرِثَانِ	تَرِثِينَ	وَرِثْتُنَّ	وَرِثْتُمَا	وَرِثْتِ
يَرِثُونَ	يَرِثَانِ	يَرِثُ	وَرِثُوا	وَرِثَا	وَرِثَ
يَرِثْنَ	تَرِثَانِ	تَرِثُ	وَرِثْنَ	وَرِثَتَا	وَرِثَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نَرِثْ		أَرِثْ	نَرِثَ		أَرِثَ
تَرِثُوا	تَرِثَا	تَرِثْ	تَرِثُوا	تَرِثَا	تَرِثَ
تَرِثْنَ	تَرِثَا	تَرِثِي	تَرِثْنَ	تَرِثَا	تَرِثِي
يَرِثُوا	يَرِثَا	يَرِثْ	يَرِثُوا	يَرِثَا	يَرِثَ
يَرِثْنَ	تَرِثَا	تَرِثْ	يَرِثْنَ	تَرِثَا	تَرِثَ

Verbal Noun wirth/wirāth<u>a</u> **Participle** wārith **Imperative** rith

وِرْث\وِرَاثَة	وَارِث	رِثُوا	رِثَا	رِثْ
		رِثْنَ	رِثَا	رِثِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yūrath<u>u</u> يُورَثُ **Perfect** wurith<u>a</u> وُرِثَ

Participle mawrūth مَوْرُوث

II/IV وَرَّثَ\أَوْرَثَ to appoint as heir ه , to bequeath to ه، هـ 75/77

VI تَوَارَثَ to hold as a bequest هـ 79

وِرْث	legacy	وِرَاثِي	hereditary
وَرِيث ج وُرَثَاء	heir	وَارِث ج وَرَثَة	heir
مُوَرِّث\مُورِث	testator	مَوْرُوث	inherited, traditional
مُتَوَارَث	inherited	تَوَارُث	heredity
وِرَاثَة\تُرَاث	inheritance, heritage		

74 I وَجُهَ يَوْجُهُ wajuha yawyuhu to be distinguished وجه

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نَوْجُهُ	أَوْجُهُ		وَجُهْنَا	وَجُهْتُ
تَوْجُهُونَ	تَوْجُهَانِ	تَوْجُهُ	وَجُهْتُمْ	وَجُهْتَ وَجُهْتُمَا
تَوْجُهْنَ	تَوْجُهَانِ	تَوْجُهِينَ	وَجُهْتُنَّ	وَجُهْتِ وَجُهْتُمَا
يَوْجُهُونَ	يَوْجُهَانِ	يَوْجُهُ	وَجُهُوا	وَجُهَا وَجُهَا
يَوْجُهْنَ	تَوْجُهَانِ	تَوْجُهُ	وَجُهْنَ	وَجُهْنَا وَجُهْتَا
	Jussive		Subjunctive	
نَوْجُهْ	أَوْجُهْ		نَوْجُهَ	أَوْجُهَ
تَوْجُهُوا	تَوْجُهَا	تَوْجُهْ	تَوْجُهُوا	تَوْجُهَ تَوْجُهَا
تَوْجُهْنَ	تَوْجُهَا	تَوْجُهِي	تَوْجُهْنَ	تَوْجُهِي تَوْجُهَا
يَوْجُهُوا	يَوْجُهَا	يَوْجُهْ	يَوْجُهُوا	يَوْجُهَ يَوْجُهَا
يَوْجُهْنَ	تَوْجُهَا	تَوْجُهْ	يَوْجُهْنَ	تَوْجُهَ تَوْجُهَا

Verbal Noun wajāha **Participle** wājih **Imperative** ūjuh

وَجَاهَة	وَاجِه	أُوجُهُوا أُوجُهَا أُوجُهْ
		أُوجُهْنَ أُوجُهَا أُوجُهِي

PASSIVE none

II وَجَّهَ to turn towards intr./إلى ه, to direct towards إلى ه 75

III وَاجَهَ to face ه، ه 76; V تَوَجَّهَ to head for ل\إلى 78

VI تَوَاجَهَ to face each other 79; VIII اتَّجَهَ to be directed at إلى 80

وَجْه ج وُجُوه	face (also figurative)	وَجْهِي	facial
جِهَة	side, direction	مُوَاجَهَة	confrontation
وِجْهَة\اتِّجَاه	direction, orientation, trend	تُجَاه	opposite (preposition)
تَوْجِيه	guidance	وِجْهَة نَظَر	point of view
من جِهَة أُخْرَى	on the other hand	من جِهَتِي	for my part
من كُلّ جِهَة	on all sides	(شَهَادَة) تَوْجِيهِيَّة	school-leaving certificate
بِوَجْه خَاصّ	especially	من كُلّ وِجْهَة	in every respect

وصل 75 II وَصَّلَ يُوَصِّلُ waṣṣala yuwaṣṣilu to convey ه، هـ to connect ... with هـ ب

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نُوَصِّلُ		أُوَصِّلُ	وَصَّلْنَا	وَصَّلْتُ
	تُوَصِّلُونَ	تُوَصِّلاَنِ	تُوَصِّلُ	وَصَّلْتُمْ	وَصَّلْتَ
	تُوَصِّلْنَ	تُوَصِّلاَنِ	تُوَصِّلِينَ	وَصَّلْتُنَّ	وَصَّلْتِ
	يُوَصِّلُونَ	يُوَصِّلاَنِ	يُوَصِّلُ	وَصَّلُوا	وَصَّلاَ
	يُوَصِّلْنَ	تُوَصِّلاَنِ	تُوَصِّلُ	وَصَّلْنَ	وَصَّلَتْ
		Jussive		Subjunctive	
	نُوَصِّلْ		أُوَصِّلْ	نُوَصِّلَ	أُوَصِّلَ
	تُوَصِّلُوا	تُوَصِّلاَ	تُوَصِّلْ	تُوَصِّلُوا	تُوَصِّلاَ	تُوَصِّلَ
	تُوَصِّلْنَ	تُوَصِّلاَ	تُوَصِّلِي	تُوَصِّلْنَ	تُوَصِّلاَ	تُوَصِّلِي
	يُوَصِّلُوا	يُوَصِّلاَ	يُوَصِّلْ	يُوَصِّلُوا	يُوَصِّلاَ	يُوَصِّلَ
	يُوَصِّلْنَ	تُوَصِّلاَ	تُوَصِّلْ	يُوَصِّلْنَ	تُوَصِّلاَ	تُوَصِّلَ

Verbal Noun tawṣīl تَوْصِيل **Participle** muwaṣṣil مُوَصِّل **Imperative** waṣṣil

وَصِّلْ	وَصِّلاَ	وَصِّلُوا
وَصِّلِي	وَصِّلاَ	وَصِّلْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yuwaṣṣalu يُوَصَّلُ **Perfect** wuṣṣila وُصِّلَ

Participle muwaṣṣal مُوَصَّل

I (وُصُول) وَصَلَ يَصِلُ to arrive at ه، هـ\إلى 71; III وَاصَلَ to be connected with هـ 76 IV أَوْصَلَ 77 = II وَصَّلَ 75; V تَوَصَّلَ to gain access to إلى 78 VI تَوَاصَلَ to be interconnected 79; VIII اتَّصَلَ to contact ب 80

وَصْل\صِلة\وَصْلَة ج وُصَل connexion وُصُول إلى arrival at

مُوَاصَلَة\إِيصَال connexion تَوْصِيلة\تَوْصِيل connexion, contact

تَوَاصُل continuity اتِّصَال (written) receipt مُوَاصَلاَت communications

اتِّصَال ب contact with مُتَّصِل\مُتَوَاصِل continuous مَوْصُول ب fixed to

اتِّصَالاَت عن بُعْد telecommunications تَوَصُّل إلى attainment of

76 III وَافَقَ يُوَافِقُ wāfaqa yuwāfiqu to suit ه, to agree with ... on/to على ه، وفق

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	أُوَافِقُ	نُوَافِقُ	وَافَقْتُ	وَافَقْنَا
	تُوَافِقُ	تُوَافِقَانِ	وَافَقْتَ	وَافَقْتُمَا	وَافَقْتُمْ
	تُوَافِقِينَ	تُوَافِقَانِ	وَافَقْتِ	وَافَقْتُمَا	وَافَقْتُنَّ
	يُوَافِقُ	يُوَافِقَانِ	وَافَقَ	وَافَقَا	وَافَقُوا
	تُوَافِقُ	تُوَافِقَانِ	وَافَقَتْ	وَافَقَتَا	وَافَقْنَ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
	أُوَافِقْ	نُوَافِقْ	أُوَافِقَ	نُوَافِقَ
	تُوَافِقْ	تُوَافِقَا	تُوَافِقَ	تُوَافِقَا	تُوَافِقُوا
	تُوَافِقِي	تُوَافِقَا	تُوَافِقَ	تُوَافِقَا	تُوَافِقْنَ
	يُوَافِقْ	يُوَافِقَا	يُوَافِقَ	يُوَافِقَا	يُوَافِقُوا
	تُوَافِقْ	تُوَافِقَا	تُوَافِقَ	تُوَافِقَا	يُوَافِقْنَ

Verbal Noun muwāfaqa/wifāq **Participle** muwāfiq **Imperative** wāfiq

وَافِقْ وَافِقَا وَافِقُوا مُوَافِقٌ مُوَافَقَةٌ\وِفَاقٌ

وَافِقِي وَافِقَا وَافِقْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yuwāfaqu يُوَافَقُ **Perfect** wūfiqa وُوفِقَ

Participle muwāfaq مُوَافَقٌ

I وَفَقَ يَفِقُ (وَفْق) to be suitable 73; II وَفَّقَ to adjust هـ, to reconcile بين وبين ... ,*passive* وُفِّقَ to be successful in 75ل\إلى

VIII اتَّفَقَ to agree with ... on على، مع, to happen by chance 80

مُوَافَقَةٌ\وَفْقٌ agreement, conformity, (diplomatic) agrément

وِفَاقٌ agreement تَوْفِيقٌ adjustment, reconciliation مُوَفَّقٌ successful

تَوَافُقٌ consistency اتِّفَاقٌ agreement, coincidence اتِّفَاقًا by chance

اتِّفَاقِيَّةٌ written agreement, treaty وَفْقًا لِ in accordance with

مُوَافِقٌ appropriate الإِجْرَاءَاتُ المُتَّفَقُ عليها the measures agreed on

77 IV أَوْجَبَ يُوجِبُ 'awjaba yūjibu to impose on هـ على، وجب

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نُوجِبُ	أُوجِبُ		أَوْجَبْنَا	أَوْجَبْتُ
	تُوجِبُونَ	تُوجِبَانِ	تُوجِبُ	أَوْجَبْتُمْ	أَوْجَبْتُمَا	أَوْجَبْتَ
	تُوجِبْنَ	تُوجِبَانِ	تُوجِبِينَ	أَوْجَبْتُنَّ	أَوْجَبْتُمَا	أَوْجَبْتِ
	يُوجِبُونَ	يُوجِبَانِ	يُوجِبُ	أَوْجَبُوا	أَوْجَبَا	أَوْجَبَ
	يُوجِبْنَ	تُوجِبَانِ	تُوجِبُ	أَوْجَبْنَ	أَوْجَبَتَا	أَوْجَبَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نُوجِبْ		أُوجِبْ	نُوجِبَ		أُوجِبَ
تُوجِبُوا	تُوجِبَا	تُوجِبْ	تُوجِبُوا	تُوجِبَا	تُوجِبَ
تُوجِبْنَ	تُوجِبَا	تُوجِبِي	تُوجِبْنَ	تُوجِبَا	تُوجِبِي
يُوجِبُوا	يُوجِبَا	يُوجِبْ	يُوجِبُوا	يُوجِبَا	يُوجِبَ
يُوجِبْنَ	تُوجِبَا	تُوجِبْ	يُوجِبْنَ	تُوجِبَا	تُوجِبَ

Verbal Noun 'ījāb	Participle mūjib	Imperative 'ajib		
إِيجَاب	مُوجِب	أَجِبُوا	أَجِبَا	أَجِبْ
		أَجِبْنَ	أَجِبَا	أَجِبِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yūjabu يُوجَبُ Perfect 'ūjiba أُوجِبَ

Participle mūjab مُوجَب

77 أَوْجَبَ IV = 75 وَجَّبَ II ; 71 أن to be necessary وَجَبَ يَجِبُ (وُجُوب) I

إِيجَاب	obligation	إِيجَابِي	positive
وَاجِب	necessary, duty	مَوجُوب	moral duty
مُوجِب	compelling, exigency	مُوجَب	obligatory
مُوجِبَة	motive	على مُوجَب	on the basis of

يَجِبُ (عليه) أنْ يَحْضُرَ. he must attend

كانَ يَجِبُ (عليه) أنْ يَحْضُرَ. he had to attend

78 V تَوَسَّعَ يَتَوَسَّعُ tawassa'a yatawassa'u to expand intr. وسع

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نَتَوَسَّعُ		أَتَوَسَّعُ		تَوَسَّعْنَا	تَوَسَّعْتُ
	تَتَوَسَّعُونَ	تَتَوَسَّعَانِ	تَتَوَسَّعُ	تَوَسَّعْتُمْ	تَوَسَّعْتُمَا	تَوَسَّعْتَ
	تَتَوَسَّعْنَ	تَتَوَسَّعَانِ	تَتَوَسَّعِينَ	تَوَسَّعْتُنَّ	تَوَسَّعْتُمَا	تَوَسَّعْتِ
	يَتَوَسَّعُونَ	يَتَوَسَّعَانِ	يَتَوَسَّعُ	تَوَسَّعُوا	تَوَسَّعَا	تَوَسَّعَ
	يَتَوَسَّعْنَ	تَتَوَسَّعَانِ	تَتَوَسَّعُ	تَوَسَّعْنَ	تَوَسَّعَتَا	تَوَسَّعَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
	نَتَوَسَّعْ		أَتَوَسَّعْ		نَتَوَسَّعَ	أَتَوَسَّعَ
	تَتَوَسَّعُوا	تَتَوَسَّعَا	تَتَوَسَّعْ		تَتَوَسَّعُوا	تَتَوَسَّعَ
	تَتَوَسَّعْنَ	تَتَوَسَّعَا	تَتَوَسَّعِي		تَتَوَسَّعْنَ	تَتَوَسَّعَ
	يَتَوَسَّعُوا	يَتَوَسَّعَا	يَتَوَسَّعْ		يَتَوَسَّعُوا	يَتَوَسَّعَ
	يَتَوَسَّعْنَ	تَتَوَسَّعَا	تَتَوَسَّعْ		يَتَوَسَّعْنَ	تَتَوَسَّعَ

Verbal Noun tawassu' **Participle** mutawassi' **Imperative** tawassa'

تَوَسَّعْ	تَوَسَّعَا	تَوَسَّعُوا	مُتَوَسِّع	تَوَسُّع
تَوَسَّعِي	تَوَسَّعَا	تَوَسَّعْنَ		

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yutawassa'u يُتَوَسَّعُ **Perfect** tuwussi'a تُوُسِّعَ

I (سَعَة) وَسِعَ يَسَعُ to be wide/roomy, to be wide/roomy enough for ه، هـ

perfect 73, *imperfect* 72; II/IV وَسَّعَ\أَوْسَعَ to broaden هـ 75/77

VIII اِتَّسَعَ to be expanded, to be wide/roomy enough for ل 80

تَوَسُّع expansion تَوَسُّعِي expansionist تَوَسُّعِيَّة expansionism

وَاسِع\وَسِيع ج وِسَاع wide, roomy تَوْسِيع broadening

وُسْعَة wideness, roominess اِتِّسَاع extensiveness, extent

مُتَّسِع extensive مُتَّسَع space, room

سَعَة capacity (also mechanical/electrical)

مع التَّوَسُّع by extension في سَعَتِي within my capacity

79 VI تَوَاجَهَ يَتَوَاجَهُ tawājaha yatawājahu to face each other وجه

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	أَتَوَاجَهُ		نَتَوَاجَهُ	تَوَاجَهْتُ		تَوَاجَهْنَا
تَتَوَاجَهُ	تَتَوَاجَهَانِ		تَتَوَاجَهُونَ	تَوَاجَهْتَ	تَوَاجَهْتُمَا	تَوَاجَهْتُمْ
تَتَوَاجَهِينَ	تَتَوَاجَهَانِ		تَتَوَاجَهْنَ	تَوَاجَهْتِ	تَوَاجَهْتُمَا	تَوَاجَهْتُنَّ
يَتَوَاجَهُ	يَتَوَاجَهَانِ		يَتَوَاجَهُونَ	تَوَاجَهَ	تَوَاجَهَا	تَوَاجَهُوا
تَتَوَاجَهُ	تَتَوَاجَهَانِ		يَتَوَاجَهْنَ	تَوَاجَهَتْ	تَوَاجَهَتَا	تَوَاجَهْنَ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
أَتَوَاجَهْ		نَتَوَاجَهْ	أَتَوَاجَهَ		نَتَوَاجَهَ
تَتَوَاجَهْ	تَتَوَاجَهَا	تَتَوَاجَهُوا	تَتَوَاجَهَ	تَتَوَاجَهَا	تَتَوَاجَهُوا
تَتَوَاجَهِي	تَتَوَاجَهَا	تَتَوَاجَهْنَ	تَتَوَاجَهِي	تَتَوَاجَهَا	تَتَوَاجَهْنَ
يَتَوَاجَهْ	يَتَوَاجَهَا	يَتَوَاجَهُوا	يَتَوَاجَهَ	يَتَوَاجَهَا	يَتَوَاجَهُوا
تَتَوَاجَهْ	تَتَوَاجَهَا	يَتَوَاجَهْنَ	تَتَوَاجَهَ	تَتَوَاجَهَا	يَتَوَاجَهْنَ

Verbal Noun تَوَاجُه **Participle** مُتَوَاجِه **Imperative** تَوَاجَهْ تَوَاجَهَا تَوَاجَهُوا تَوَاجَهِي تَوَاجَهَا تَوَاجَهْنَ

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** يُتَوَاجَهُ yutawājahu **Perfect** تُوُوجِهَ tuwūjiha

---

See 74

80 VIII اِتَّفَقَ يَتَّفِقُ to agree with ... on مع، على ، to happen by chance وفق

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نَتَّفِقُ	أَتَّفِقُ	اتَّفَقْنَا	اتَّفَقْتُ
	تَتَّفِقُونَ	تَتَّفِقَانِ	اتَّفَقْتُمْ	اتَّفَقْتَ
	تَتَّفِقْنَ	تَتَّفِقَانِ	اتَّفَقْتُنَّ	اتَّفَقْتِ
	يَتَّفِقُونَ	يَتَّفِقَانِ	اتَّفَقُوا	اتَّفَقَا
	يَتَّفِقْنَ	تَتَّفِقَانِ	اتَّفَقْنَ	اتَّفَقَتَا
	Jussive		Subjunctive	
	نَتَّفِقْ	أَتَّفِقْ	نَتَّفِقَ	أَتَّفِقَ
	تَتَّفِقُوا	تَتَّفِقَا	تَتَّفِقُوا	تَتَّفِقَا
	تَتَّفِقْنَ	تَتَّفِقَا	تَتَّفِقْنَ	تَتَّفِقَا
	يَتَّفِقُوا	يَتَّفِقَا	يَتَّفِقُوا	يَتَّفِقَا
	تَتَّفِقْنَ	تَتَّفِقَا	يَتَّفِقْنَ	تَتَّفِقَا

Verbal Noun ittifāq Participle muttafiq Imperative ittafiq

اتِّفَاق	مُتَّفِق	اتَّفِقُوا	اتَّفِقَا	اتَّفِقْ
		اتَّفِقْنَ	اتَّفِقَا	اتَّفِقِي

PASSIVE° Imperfect yuttafaqu يُتَّفَقُ Perfect uttufiqa أُتُّفِقَ

Participle muttafaq مُتَّفَق

See 76

81 X اِسْتَوْرَدَ يَسْتَوْرِدُ istawrada yastawridu to import ه ورد

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نَسْتَوْرِدُ		أَسْتَوْرِدُ		اِسْتَوْرَدْنَا	اِسْتَوْرَدْتُ
	تَسْتَوْرِدُونَ	تَسْتَوْرِدَانِ	تَسْتَوْرِدُ	اِسْتَوْرَدْتُمْ	اِسْتَوْرَدْتُمَا	اِسْتَوْرَدْتَ
	تَسْتَوْرِدْنَ	تَسْتَوْرِدَانِ	تَسْتَوْرِدِينَ	اِسْتَوْرَدْتُنَّ	اِسْتَوْرَدْتُمَا	اِسْتَوْرَدْتِ
	يَسْتَوْرِدُونَ	يَسْتَوْرِدَانِ	يَسْتَوْرِدُ	اِسْتَوْرَدُوا	اِسْتَوْرَدَا	اِسْتَوْرَدَ
	يَسْتَوْرِدْنَ	يَسْتَوْرِدَانِ	تَسْتَوْرِدُ	اِسْتَوْرَدْنَ	اِسْتَوْرَدَتَا	اِسْتَوْرَدَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive		
	نَسْتَوْرِدْ		أَسْتَوْرِدْ		نَسْتَوْرِدَ	أَسْتَوْرِدَ
	تَسْتَوْرِدُوا	تَسْتَوْرِدَا	تَسْتَوْرِدْ	تَسْتَوْرِدُوا	تَسْتَوْرِدَا	تَسْتَوْرِدَ
	تَسْتَوْرِدْنَ	تَسْتَوْرِدَا	تَسْتَوْرِدِي	تَسْتَوْرِدْنَ	تَسْتَوْرِدَا	تَسْتَوْرِدِي
	يَسْتَوْرِدُوا	يَسْتَوْرِدَا	يَسْتَوْرِدْ	يَسْتَوْرِدُوا	يَسْتَوْرِدَا	يَسْتَوْرِدَ
	يَسْتَوْرِدْنَ	تَسْتَوْرِدَا	تَسْتَوْرِدْ	يَسْتَوْرِدْنَ	تَسْتَوْرِدَا	تَسْتَوْرِدَ

Verbal Noun istīrād **Participle** mustawrid **Imperative** istawrid

اِسْتِيرَاد مُسْتَوْرِد اِسْتَوْرِدُوا اِسْتَوْرِدَا اِسْتَوْرِدْ
اِسْتَوْرِدْنَ اِسْتَوْرِدَا اِسْتَوْرِدِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yustawradu يُسْتَوْرَدُ **Perfect** ustūrida أُسْتُورِدَ
Participle mustawrad مُسْتَوْرَد

I وَرَدَ يَرِدُ (وُرُود) to arrive at ه\إلى, to appear 71; II وَرَّدَ to supply with ه ب، 75; IV أَوْرَدَ to transfer ه, to import ه, to quote ه 77

اِسْتِيرَاد	importation	مُسْتَوْرِد	importer
مُسْتَوْرَد	import (goods)	إِيرَاد	quotation, importation, revenue
مُوَرِّد	supplier	وَارِد ج وُرَّاد	arriving, import, income
مَوْرِد ج مَوَارِد	source, revenue	وَارِدَات وصَادِرَات	imports and exports
مَوَارِد حُكُومِيَّة	government revenue	تَوْرِيد	supply

الأَنْبَاء الوَارِدَة من بَغْدَاد the news from Baghdad

82 I يَبِسَ يَيْبَسُ yabisa yaybasu to be(come) dry **يبس**

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
نَيْبَسُ		أَيْبَسُ	يَبِسْنَا		يَبِسْتُ
تَيْبَسُونَ	تَيْبَسَانِ	تَيْبَسُ	يَبِسْتُمْ	يَبِسْتُمَا	يَبِسْتَ
تَيْبَسْنَ	تَيْبَسَانِ	تَيْبَسِينَ	يَبِسْتُنَّ	يَبِسْتُمَا	يَبِسْتِ
يَيْبَسُونَ	يَيْبَسَانِ	يَيْبَسُ	يَبِسُوا	يَبِسَا	يَبِسَ
يَيْبَسْنَ	تَيْبَسَانِ	تَيْبَسُ	يَبِسْنَ	يَبِسَتَا	يَبِسَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نَيْبَسْ		أَيْبَسْ	نَيْبَسَ		أَيْبَسَ
تَيْبَسُوا	تَيْبَسَا	تَيْبَسْ	تَيْبَسُوا	تَيْبَسَا	تَيْبَسَ
تَيْبَسْنَ	تَيْبَسَا	تَيْبَسِي	تَيْبَسْنَ	تَيْبَسَا	تَيْبَسِي
يَيْبَسُوا	يَيْبَسَا	يَيْبَسْ	يَيْبَسُوا	يَيْبَسَا	يَيْبَسَ
يَيْبَسْنَ	تَيْبَسَا	تَيْبَسْ	يَيْبَسْنَ	تَيْبَسَا	تَيْبَسَ

Verbal Noun yabs **Participle** yābis **Imperative** ības

يَبْس	يَابِس	اِيبَسُوا اِيبَسَا اِيبَسْ
		اِيبَسْنَ اِيبَسَا اِيبَسِي

PASSIVE none

II/IV يَبَّسَ\أَيْبَسَ to dry ← 83/85

يَبْس dryness, dried, arid يَابِس dry, arid

اليَبْس\اليَابِس terra firma

83 II يَسَّرَ يُيَسِّرُ yassara yuyassiru to ease على، هـ يسر

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
نُيَسِّرُ	أُيَسِّرُ			يَسَّرْتُ	يَسَّرْنَا	
تُيَسِّرُونَ	تُيَسِّرَانِ	تُيَسِّرُ	تُيَسِّرُونَ	يَسَّرْتَ	يَسَّرْتُمَا	يَسَّرْتُمْ
تُيَسِّرْنَ	تُيَسِّرَانِ	تُيَسِّرِينَ	تُيَسِّرْنَ	يَسَّرْتِ	يَسَّرْتُمَا	يَسَّرْتُنَّ
يُيَسِّرُونَ	يُيَسِّرَانِ	يُيَسِّرُ	يُيَسِّرُونَ	يَسَّرَ	يَسَّرَا	يَسَّرُوا
يُيَسِّرْنَ	تُيَسِّرَانِ	تُيَسِّرُ	يُيَسِّرْنَ	يَسَّرَتْ	يَسَّرَتَا	يَسَّرْنَ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
نُيَسِّرْ	أُيَسِّرْ			نُيَسِّرَ		
تُيَسِّرُوا	تُيَسِّرَا	تُيَسِّرْ	تُيَسِّرُوا	تُيَسِّرَ	تُيَسِّرَا	أُيَسِّرَ
تُيَسِّرْنَ	تُيَسِّرَا	تُيَسِّرِي	تُيَسِّرْنَ	تُيَسِّرَي	تُيَسِّرَا	تُيَسِّرَ
يُيَسِّرُوا	يُيَسِّرَا	يُيَسِّرْ	يُيَسِّرُوا	يُيَسِّرَ	يُيَسِّرَا	يُيَسِّرَ
يُيَسِّرْنَ	تُيَسِّرَا	تُيَسِّرْ	يُيَسِّرْنَ	تُيَسِّرَ	تُيَسِّرَا	تُيَسِّرَ

Verbal Noun taysîr **Participle** muyassir **Imperative** yassir

تَيْسِير	مُيَسِّر	يَسِّرُوا	يَسِّرَا	يَسِّرْ
		يَسِّرْنَ	يَسِّرَا	يَسِّرِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yuyassaru يُيَسَّرُ **Perfect** yussira يُسِّرَ

Participle مُيَسَّر muyassar

I يَسِرَ يَيْسَرُ (يَسَرَ) to be(come) easy 82; III يَاسَرَ to indulge ه 84

V تَيَسَّرَ to flourish 86

يَسَار	ease, left(-hand)	يَسَارِي	left-wing
تَيْسِير	facilitation	يَسِير إِلَى	easy for
مَيْسُور ج مَيَاسِير	easy to do, prosperous	مُيَسَّر	facilitated
على اليَسَار	on the left	مُتَيَسِّر\مُوسِر ج مَيَاسِير	prosperous

84 III يَاسَرَ يُيَاسِرُ yāsara yuyāsiru to indulge ه يسر

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نُيَاسِرُ	أُيَاسِرُ		يَاسَرْنَا	يَاسَرْتُ
	تُيَاسِرُونَ	تُيَاسِرَانِ	تُيَاسِرُ	يَاسَرْتُمْ	يَاسَرْتَ
	تُيَاسِرْنَ	تُيَاسِرَانِ	تُيَاسِرِينَ	يَاسَرْتُنَّ	يَاسَرْتِ
	يُيَاسِرُونَ	يُيَاسِرَانِ	يُيَاسِرُ	يَاسَرُوا	يَاسَرَا	يَاسَرَ
	يُيَاسِرْنَ	تُيَاسِرَانِ	تُيَاسِرُ	يَاسَرْنَ	يَاسَرَتَا	يَاسَرَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نُيَاسِرْ	أُيَاسِرْ		نُيَاسِرَ		أُيَاسِرَ
تُيَاسِرُوا	تُيَاسِرَا	تُيَاسِرْ	تُيَاسِرُوا	تُيَاسِرَا	تُيَاسِرَ
تُيَاسِرْنَ	تُيَاسِرَا	تُيَاسِرِي	تُيَاسِرْنَ	تُيَاسِرَا	تُيَاسِرِي
يُيَاسِرُوا	يُيَاسِرَا	يُيَاسِرْ	يُيَاسِرُوا	يُيَاسِرَا	يُيَاسِرَ
يُيَاسِرْنَ	تُيَاسِرَا	تُيَاسِرْ	يُيَاسِرْنَ	تُيَاسِرَا	تُيَاسِرَ

Verbal Noun muyāsara مُيَاسَرَة **Participle** muyāsir مُيَاسِر **Imperative** yāsir

يَاسِرُوا	يَاسِرَا	يَاسِرْ
يَاسِرْنَ	يَاسِرَا	يَاسِرِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yuyāsaru يُيَاسَرُ **Perfect** yūsira يُوسِرَ

Participle muyāsar مُيَاسَر

See 83

85 IV أَيْقَنَ يوقِنُ 'ayqana yūqinu to ascertain هـ\ب يقن

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نُوقِنُ		أُوقِنُ	أَيْقَنَّا	أَيْقَنْتُ
	تُوقِنُونَ	تُوقِنَانِ	تُوقِنُ	أَيْقَنْتُمَا	أَيْقَنْتَ
	تُوقِنَّ	تُوقِنَانِ	تُوقِنِينَ	أَيْقَنْتُنَّ	أَيْقَنْتِ
	يُوقِنُونَ	يُوقِنَانِ	يُوقِنُ	أَيْقَنُوا	أَيْقَنَا	أَيْقَنَ
	يُوقِنَّ	تُوقِنَانِ	تُوقِنُ	أَيْقَنَّ	أَيْقَنَتَا	أَيْقَنَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive	
	نُوقِنْ		أُوقِنْ	نُوقِنَ	أُوقِنَ
	تُوقِنُوا	تُوقِنَا	تُوقِنْ	تُوقِنُوا	تُوقِنَا	تُوقِنَ
	تُوقِنَّ	تُوقِنَا	تُوقِنِي	تُوقِنَّ	تُوقِنَا	تُوقِنِي
	يُوقِنُوا	يُوقِنَا	يُوقِنْ	يُوقِنُوا	يُوقِنَا	يُوقِنَ
	يُوقِنَّ	تُوقِنَا	تُوقِنْ	يُوقِنَّ	تُوقِنَا	تُوقِنَ

Verbal Noun 'īqān إِيقَان — Participle mūqin مُوقِن — Imperative 'ayqin

أَيْقِنْ أَيْقِنَا أَيْقِنُوا
أَيْقِنِي أَيْقِنَا أَيْقِنَّ

PASSIVE Imperfect yūqanu يُوقَنُ Perfect 'ūqina أُوقِنَ

Participle mūqan مُوقَن

I (يَقْن) يَقِنَ يَيْقَنُ to be sure of هـ\ب 82

V/X اِسْتَيْقَنَ تَيَقَّنَ هـ\ب 86/87 = IV أَيْقَنَ 85

---

certainty of يَقِين ب\يَقْن ب — certain of مُوقِن ب\على يَقِين من

convinced مُتَيَقِّن — indisputable يَقِينِي

86 V تَيَقَّظَ يَتَيَقَّظُ tayaqqaẓa yatayaqqaẓu to be vigilant يقظ

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نَتَيَقَّظُ	أَتَيَقَّظُ	تَيَقَّظْنَا	تَيَقَّظْتُ
تَتَيَقَّظُونَ	تَتَيَقَّظَانِ	تَتَيَقَّظُ	تَيَقَّظْتُمْ	تَيَقَّظْتُمَا	تَيَقَّظْتَ
تَتَيَقَّظْنَ	تَتَيَقَّظَانِ	تَتَيَقَّظِينَ	تَيَقَّظْتُنَّ	تَيَقَّظْتُمَا	تَيَقَّظْتِ
يَتَيَقَّظُونَ	يَتَيَقَّظَانِ	يَتَيَقَّظُ	تَيَقَّظُوا	تَيَقَّظَا	تَيَقَّظَ
يَتَيَقَّظْنَ	يَتَيَقَّظَانِ	تَتَيَقَّظُ	تَيَقَّظْنَ	تَيَقَّظْتَا	تَيَقَّظْتُ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	نَتَيَقَّظْ	أَتَيَقَّظْ	نَتَيَقَّظَ		أَتَيَقَّظَ
تَتَيَقَّظُوا	تَتَيَقَّظَا	تَتَيَقَّظْ	تَتَيَقَّظُوا	تَتَيَقَّظَا	تَتَيَقَّظَ
تَتَيَقَّظْنَ	تَتَيَقَّظَا	تَتَيَقَّظِي	تَتَيَقَّظْنَ	تَتَيَقَّظَا	تَتَيَقَّظِي
يَتَيَقَّظُوا	يَتَيَقَّظَا	يَتَيَقَّظْ	يَتَيَقَّظُوا	يَتَيَقَّظَا	يَتَيَقَّظَ
يَتَيَقَّظْنَ	يَتَيَقَّظَا	تَتَيَقَّظْ	يَتَيَقَّظْنَ	تَتَيَقَّظَا	تَتَيَقَّظَ

Verbal Noun tayaqquẓ **Participle** mutayaqqiẓ **Imperative** tayaqqaẓ

تَيَقُّظ	مُتَيَقِّظ	تَيَقَّظُوا	تَيَقَّظَا	تَيَقَّظْ
		تَيَقَّظْنَ	تَيَقَّظَا	تَيَقَّظِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yutayaqqaẓu يُتَيَقَّظُ **Perfect** tuyuqqiẓa تُيُقِّظَ

I/X يَقِظَ يَيْقَظُ (يَقَظَ)\اسْتَيْقَظَ to be awake, to awake 82/87

II/IV يَقَّظَ\أَيْقَظَ to waken ، 83/85

تَيَقُّظ vigilance — مُتَيَقِّظ\يَقْظ ج أَيْقَاظ vigilant

مُسْتَيْقِظ awake — إِيقَاظ awaking

يَقْظَان (m.) ، يَقْظَى (f.) ج يَقَاظَى (m./f.) vigilant

87 X **اِسْتَيْقَظَ يَسْتَيْقِظُ** istayqaẓa yastayqiẓu **يقظ**

to be awake, to awake

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نَسْتَيْقِظُ	أَسْتَيْقِظُ		اِسْتَيْقَظْنَا	اِسْتَيْقَظْتُ
تَسْتَيْقِظُونَ	تَسْتَيْقِظَانِ	تَسْتَيْقِظُ	اِسْتَيْقَظْتُمْ	اِسْتَيْقَظْتُمَا	اِسْتَيْقَظْتَ
تَسْتَيْقِظْنَ	تَسْتَيْقِظَانِ	تَسْتَيْقِظِينَ	اِسْتَيْقَظْتُنَّ	اِسْتَيْقَظْتُمَا	اِسْتَيْقَظْتِ
يَسْتَيْقِظُونَ	يَسْتَيْقِظَانِ	يَسْتَيْقِظُ	اِسْتَيْقَظُوا	اِسْتَيْقَظَا	اِسْتَيْقَظَ
يَسْتَيْقِظْنَ	تَسْتَيْقِظَانِ	تَسْتَيْقِظُ	اِسْتَيْقَظْنَ	اِسْتَيْقَظَتَا	اِسْتَيْقَظَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نَسْتَيْقِظْ	أَسْتَيْقِظْ		نَسْتَيْقِظَ	أَسْتَيْقِظَ
تَسْتَيْقِظُوا	تَسْتَيْقِظَا	تَسْتَيْقِظْ	تَسْتَيْقِظُوا	تَسْتَيْقِظَا	تَسْتَيْقِظَ
تَسْتَيْقِظْنَ	تَسْتَيْقِظَا	تَسْتَيْقِظِي	تَسْتَيْقِظْنَ	تَسْتَيْقِظَا	تَسْتَيْقِظِي
يَسْتَيْقِظُوا	يَسْتَيْقِظَا	يَسْتَيْقِظْ	يَسْتَيْقِظُوا	يَسْتَيْقِظَا	يَسْتَيْقِظَ
يَسْتَيْقِظْنَ	يَسْتَيْقِظَا	تَسْتَيْقِظْ	يَسْتَيْقِظْنَ	تَسْتَيْقِظَا	تَسْتَيْقِظَ

Verbal Noun istīqāẓ **Participle** mustayqiẓ **Imperative** istayqiẓ

اِسْتِيقَاظ مُسْتَيْقِظ اِسْتَيْقِظُوا اِسْتَيْقِظَا اِسْتَيْقِظْ

اِسْتَيْقِظْنَ اِسْتَيْقِظَا اِسْتَيْقِظِي

PASSIVE none

See **86**

HOLLOW VERBS

Hollow verbs are the second sub-class of the weak verbs. They are those with a weak letter, و or ي , as middle radical. The other two radicals are sound; a few roots have initial ء and a sound final radical. A few roots have alternative middle radicals و or ي ; their conjugation mostly follows the pattern of و .

Conjugation. The standard conjugation patterns shown in paras. 23, 25 and 29 to 33 of the introductory chapter (tenses, imperative, participles and verbal noun) apply to hollow verbs in the active voice, subject to the following provisions:

- In Form I, the weak middle radical vocalises, i.e. becomes a vowel: و becomes short ...ُ or long ...ُو or ...ا , ي becomes short ... or long ...يِ or ...ا . One small but important group of middle-و verbs follows an anomalous pattern, with و becoming short ... or ...َ , or long ...ا .
- In Forms IV, VII, VIII and X the weak middle radical vocalises:
  - in Forms IV and X, both middle و and middle ي become ...َ\...ا in the 1st principal part (i.e. the perfect tense) and the verbal noun; and ...يِ\... in the 2nd principal part (i.e. the imperfect tenses), imperative and participle.
  - in Forms VII and VIII, both middle و and middle ي become ...َ\...ا throughout the tenses, imperative and participle.
- In Forms II, III, V, VI and IX, and in a few anomalous verbs in Forms IV, VIII and X, the middle radical stabilises as a consonant, and the conjugation follows the standard (i.e. sound) pattern completely.
- Whenever the middle radical vocalises as indicated above, it becomes a long vowel when the final radical is followed by a vowel ('vocalic ending'), and a short vowel when the final radical is followed by a consonant ('consonantal ending') or by ...ْ .
- The verbal nouns of Forms IV and X have ...َة after the final radical.

The stem of a hollow verb is derived as follows:

- **Perfect (active) stem**: the final ...َ is dropped from the first principal part; further, if the middle radical is vocalised, it is long (always ...ا...) before a vocalic personal ending and short before a consonantal personal ending (see above), e.g.:
  first principal part سَاقَ , perfect stem سَاقـ...\سُقْـ...
- **Imperfect (active) stem**: the prefix ...يَـ\...يُـ and the final ...ُ from the

second principal part are dropped; further, if the middle radical is vocalised, it is long before a vocalic personal ending and short before a consonantal personal ending or ْ... (see notes above), e.g.:
second principal part يَسُوقُ , imperfect stem ...سُقْـ...\...سُوقـ....

Middle و and middle ي verbs are listed together (و first) under each form (I - X).

88 I سَاقَ يَسُوقُ sāqa yasūqu to drive هـ سوق

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
نَسُوقُ	أَسُوقُ		سُقْنَا	سُقْتُ	
تَسُوقُونَ	تَسُوقَانِ	تَسُوقُ	سُقْتُمْ	سُقْتَ	سُقْتَمَا
تَسُقْنَ	تَسُوقَانِ	تَسُوقِينَ	سُقْتُنَّ	سُقْتِ	سُقْتُمَا
يَسُوقُونَ	يَسُوقَانِ	يَسُوقُ	سَاقُوا	سَاقَا	سَاقَ
يَسُقْنَ	تَسُوقَانِ	تَسُوقُ	سُقْنَ	سَاقَتَا	سَاقَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نَسُقْ	أَسُقْ		نَسُوقَ	أَسُوقَ	
تَسُوقُوا	تَسُقْ	تَسُوقَا	تَسُوقُوا	تَسُوقَا	تَسُوقَ
تَسُقْنَ	تَسُوقَا	تَسُوقِي	تَسُقْنَ	تَسُوقَا	تَسُوقِي
يَسُوقُوا	يَسُقْ	يَسُوقَا	يَسُوقُوا	يَسُوقَا	يَسُوقَ
يَسُقْنَ	تَسُقْ	تَسُوقَا	يَسُقْنَ	تَسُوقَا	تَسُوقَ

Verbal Noun	Participle	Imperative	
سِيَاقَة	سَائِق	سُوقُوا	سُقْ
		سُقْنَ	سُوقِي

PASSIVE Imperfect يُسَاقُ yusāqu **Perfect** سِيقَ sīqa

Participle مَسُوق masūq

II سَوَّقَ to market هـ 93; III سَاوَقَ to accompany ه 95

V تَسَوَّقَ to deal in the market 99; VI تَسَاوَقَ to form a series 101

VII انْسَاقَ to be driven 103; VIII اِسْتَاقَ to herd هـ 105

سُوق ج أَسْوَاق (m./f.) market — سِيَاق series

السُّوق الحُرَّة free market — السُّوق السَّوْدَاء black market

مَسَاق course, trend — سَائِق driving force, driver — تَسْوِيق marketing

سَاقَ حَدِيثًا to pursue a discussion — رُخْصَة السِّيَاقَة driving licence

السُّوق الأُورُبِّيَّة المُشْتَرَكَة the Common Market

مَسَاقُهُ إلى هذا it comes down to this

89 | I | آبَ يَؤُوبُ 'āba ya'ūbu to return intr., to incur ب, to be left with ب | أوب

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect		
	نَؤُوبُ	أَؤُوبُ		أُبْنَا	أُبْتُ
	تَؤُوبُونَ	تَؤُوبَانِ	تَؤُوبُ	أُبْتُمْ	أُبْتُمَا	أُبْتَ
	تَؤْبْنَ	تَؤُوبَانِ	تَؤُوبِينَ	أُبْتُنَّ	أُبْتُمَا	أُبْتِ
	يَؤُوبُونَ	يَؤُوبَانِ	يَؤُوبُ	آبُوا	آبَا	آبَ
	يَؤْبْنَ	تَؤُوبَانِ	تَؤُوبُ	أُبْنَ	آبَتَا	آبَتْ
	Jussive		Subjunctive		
	نَؤُبْ	أَؤُبْ		نَؤُوبَ		أَؤُوبَ
	تَؤُوبُوا	تَؤُوبَا	تَؤُبْ	تَؤُوبُوا	تَؤُوبَا	تَؤُوبَ
	تَؤْبْنَ	تَؤُوبَا	تَؤُوبِي	تَؤْبْنَ	تَؤُوبَا	تَؤُوبِي
	يَؤُوبُوا	يَؤُوبَا	يَؤُبْ	يَؤُوبُوا	يَؤُوبَا	يَؤُوبَ
	يَؤْبْنَ	تَؤُوبَا	تَؤُبْ	يَؤْبْنَ	تَؤُوبَا	تَؤُوبَ

Verbal Noun 'iyāb/'awb(a) إِيَاب\أَوْب\أَوْبَة **Participle** 'ā'ib آئِب **Imperative** 'ub

أُبْ	أُوبَا	أُوبُوا
أُوبِي	أُوبَا	أُبْنَ

PASSIVE None

مَآب	homecoming	ذَهَابًا وإِيَابًا	there and back
من كُلّ أَوْب	on/from every side	ذُهُوب ومَآب	coming and going
تَذْكِرَة ذَهَاب وإِيَاب	return ticket		

خوف ه\من، هـ\من

90 I خَافَ يَخَافُ khāfa yakhāfu to fear

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
نَخَافُ		أَخَافُ	خَفْنَا		خَفْتُ
تَخَافُونَ	تَخَافَانِ	تَخَافُ	خَفْتُمْ	خَفْتُمَا	خَفْتَ
تَخَفْنَ	تَخَافَانِ	تَخَافِينَ	خَفْتُنَّ	خَفْتُمَا	خَفْتِ
يَخَافُونَ	يَخَافَانِ	يَخَافُ	خَافُوا	خَافَا	خَافَ
يَخَفْنَ	تَخَافَانِ	تَخَافُ	خِفْنَ	خَافَتَا	خَافَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
نَخَفْ		أَخَفْ	نَخَافَ		أَخَافَ
تَخَافُوا	تَخَافَا	تَخَفْ	تَخَافُوا	تَخَافَا	تَخَافَ
تَخَفْنَ	تَخَافَا	تَخَافِي	تَخَفْنَ	تَخَافَا	تَخَافِي
يَخَافُوا	يَخَافَا	يَخَفْ	يَخَافُوا	يَخَافَا	يَخَافَ
يَخَفْنَ	تَخَافَا	تَخَفْ	يَخَفْنَ	تَخَافَا	تَخَافَ

Verbal Noun khawf/mukhāfa **Participle** khā'if **Imperative** khaf

خَفْ خَافَا خَافُوا خَائِف خَوْف\مَخَافَة

خَافِي خَافَا خَفْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yukhāfu يُخَافُ **Perfect** khīfa خِيفَ

Participle makhūf مَخُوف

II/IV خَوَّفَ\أَخَافَ to frighten هـ، 93/97; V تَخَوَّفَ = I 99 خَافَ 90

خَوْف من	fear of	مَخَافَة ج مَخَاوِف من	fear of
تَخْوِيف\إِخَافَة	intimidation	مَخُوف	feared
مُخِيف	dreadful	تَخَوُّف	dread
خَائِف ج خُوَّاف من	frightened of	خَائِف ج خُوَّاف على	anxious for
خَوْفًا من	for fear of	خَوْفًا على	fearing for
مَخَافَةَ أن	for fear that		

91 I زَادَ يَزِيدُ zāda yazīdu to increase intr./هـ زيد

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
نَزِيدُ	أَزِيدُ	زِدْنَا		زِدْتُ	
تَزِيدُونَ	تَزِيدَانِ	تَزِيدُ	زِدْتُمْ	زِدْتُمَا	زِدْتَ
تَزِدْنَ	تَزِيدَانِ	تَزِيدِينَ	زِدْتُنَّ	زِدْتُمَا	زِدْتِ
يَزِيدُونَ	يَزِيدَانِ	يَزِيدُ	زَادُوا	زَادَا	زَادَ
يَزِدْنَ	تَزِيدَانِ	تَزِيدُ	زِدْنَ	زَادَتَا	زَادَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive	
نَزِدْ	أَزِدْ	نَزِيدَ		أَزِيدَ	
تَزِيدُوا	تَزِيدَا	تَزِدْ	تَزِيدُوا	تَزِيدَا	تَزِيدَ
تَزِدْنَ	تَزِيدَا	تَزِدْنَ	تَزِيدِي	تَزِيدَا	تَزِيدِي
يَزِيدُوا	يَزِيدَا	يَزِدْ	يَزِيدُوا	يَزِيدَا	يَزِيدَ
يَزِدْنَ	يَزِيدَا	تَزِدْ	يَزِدْنَ	تَزِيدَا	تَزِيدَ

Verbal Noun ziyāda زِيَادَة **Participle** zā'id زَائِد **Imperative** zid زِدْ زِيدَا زِيدُوا زِدْنَ زِيدِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yuzādu يُزَادُ **Perfect** zīda زِيدَ

Participle mazīd مَزِيد

II زَيَّدَ to increase هـ 94; III زَايَدَ to outbid ه 96; V تَزَيَّدَ to increase intr., to exaggerate intr. 100; VI تَزَايَدَ to intensify intr. **102**; VIII ازْدَادَ to increase intr. **108**; X اسْتَزَادَ to aim for more هـ, to demand more of ه 113

زِيَادَة\ازْدِيَاد increase مَزَاد\مُزَايَدَة auction تَزَايُد increment

تَزَيُّد exaggeration مَزِيد excess, increased (verb) form

زَائِدَة ج زَوَائِد appendage زَائِد عن الحاجة surplus to requirements

زِيَادَةً على ذلك moreover زَادَ الطِّين بَلَّةً to make matters worse

ازْدِيَاد الأَسْعَار price rise

بِمَزِيد الشُّكْر\الأَسَف with many thanks/much regret

92 I

لَيْسَ laysa not to be ب\أ

ليس

ACTIVE

Perfect

(with present meaning, 'I am not' etc.:
see para. 8 of the introductory chapter)

لَسْتُ		لَسْنَا
لَسْتَ	لَسْتُمَا	لَسْتُمْ
لَسْتِ	لَسْتُمَا	لَسْتُنَّ
لَيْسَ	لَيْسَا	لَيْسُوا
لَيْسَتْ	لَيْسَتَا	لَسْنَ

NB: 1. Personal endings are always sounded, even in short pronunciation.

2. For future, use لا يكون 88; for past, use ما كان 88.

3. For present affirmative, see para. 2 of the introductory chapter.

Imperfect, Subjunctive, Jussive, Imperative, Participle, Verbal Noun: none

---

PASSIVE none

Increased Forms none

أَلَيْسَ كَذَلِكَ؟ is that not so?

لَيْسَ ... بَلْ ... not only ... but also ...

لَيْسَ\لَيْسَتْ لَهُ he has not/no

لَيْسَ\لَيْسَتْ هُنَاك there is no

لَيْسَ بِقَائِل he cannot say

93 II مَوَّلَ يُمَوِّلُ mawwala yumawwilu to finance ه, to enrich ه

مول

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
نُمَوِّلُ		أُمَوِّلُ	مَوَّلْنَا		مَوَّلْتُ
تُمَوِّلُونَ	تُمَوِّلاَنِ	تُمَوِّلُ	مَوَّلْتُمْ	مَوَّلْتُمَا	مَوَّلْتَ
تُمَوِّلْنَ	تُمَوِّلاَنِ	تُمَوِّلِينَ	مَوَّلْتُنَّ	مَوَّلْتُمَا	مَوَّلْتِ
يُمَوِّلُونَ	يُمَوِّلاَنِ	يُمَوِّلُ	مَوَّلُوا	مَوَّلاَ	مَوَّلَ
يُمَوِّلْنَ	تُمَوِّلاَنِ	تُمَوِّلُ	مَوَّلْنَ	مَوَّلْتَا	مَوَّلَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive	
نُمَوِّلْ		أُمَوِّلْ	نُمَوِّلَ		أُمَوِّلَ
تُمَوِّلُوا	تُمَوِّلاَ	تُمَوِّلْ	تُمَوِّلُوا	تُمَوِّلاَ	تُمَوِّلَ
تُمَوِّلْنَ	تُمَوِّلاَ	تُمَوِّلِي	تُمَوِّلْنَ	تُمَوِّلاَ	تُمَوِّلِي
يُمَوِّلُوا	يُمَوِّلاَ	يُمَوِّلْ	يُمَوِّلُوا	يُمَوِّلاَ	يُمَوِّلَ
يُمَوِّلْنَ	تُمَوِّلاَ	تُمَوِّلْ	يُمَوِّلْنَ	تُمَوِّلاَ	تُمَوِّلَ

Verbal Noun tamwīl تَمْوِيل **Participle** mumawwil مُمَوِّل **Imperative** mawwil

مَوِّلْ	مَوِّلاَ	مَوِّلُوا
مَوِّلِي	مَوِّلاَ	مَوِّلْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yumawwalu يُمَوَّلُ **Perfect** muwwila مُوِّلَ

Participle mumawwal مُمَوَّل

V تَمَوَّلَ to be financed, to become rich 99; X اِستَمَالَ to become rich 111

مَال ج أَمْوَال wealth, property مَالِي financial مُمَوِّل financier

مُمَوَّل\ذو مَال wealthy تَمْوِيل financing سَنَة مَالِيَّة financial year

تضخُّم مَالِي inflation مؤسَّسَة كَثِيرَة المَال a wealthy foundation

مَال ثابت ج أَمْوَال ثابتَة fixed asset وَضْع مَالِي financial status

مَال نَقْلِي ج أَمْوَال نَقْلِيَّة movable asset

وزارَة\وَزِير (الأُمُور) المَالِيَّة Ministry/Minister of Finance

94 II مَيَّلَ يُمَيِّلُ mayyala yumayyilu to incline ه ، هـ ميل

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نُمَيِّلُ	أُمَيِّلُ	مَيَّلْنَا	مَيَّلْتُ
تُمَيِّلُونَ	تُمَيِّلَانِ	تُمَيِّلُ	مَيَّلْتُمْ	مَيَّلْتَ
تُمَيِّلْنَ	تُمَيِّلَانِ	تُمَيِّلِينَ	مَيَّلْتُنَّ	مَيَّلْتُمَا
يُمَيِّلُونَ	يُمَيِّلَانِ	يُمَيِّلُ	مَيَّلُوا	مَيَّلَا
يُمَيِّلْنَ	تُمَيِّلَانِ	تُمَيِّلُ	مَيَّلْنَ	مَيَّلَتَا

Jussive			Subjunctive	
	نُمَيِّلْ	أُمَيِّلْ	نُمَيِّلَ	أُمَيِّلَ
تُمَيِّلُوا	تُمَيِّلَا	تُمَيِّلْ	تُمَيِّلُوا	تُمَيِّلَا
تُمَيِّلْنَ	تُمَيِّلَا	تَمَيِّلِي	تُمَيِّلْنَ	تُمَيِّلَا
يُمَيِّلُوا	يُمَيِّلَا	يُمَيِّلْ	يُمَيِّلُوا	يُمَيِّلَا
يُمَيِّلْنَ	تُمَيِّلَا	تُمَيِّلْ	يُمَيِّلْنَ	تُمَيِّلَا

Verbal Noun tamyīl **Participle** mumayyil **Imperative** mayyil

تَمْيِيل	مُمَيِّل	مَيِّلُوا	مَيِّلَا	مَيِّلْ
		مَيِّلْنَ	مَيِّلَا	مَيِّلِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yumayyalu يُمَيَّلُ **Perfect** muyyila مُيِّلَ

Participle mumayyal مُمَيَّل

I (مَيْل) مَالَ يَمِيلُ to incline towards إلى 91; IV أَمَالَ 98 = II مَيَّلَ 94

V/VI تَمَيَّلَ\تَمَايَلَ to sway 100/102

X اِسْتَمَالَ to attract towards ه إلى، هـ إلى 113

مَيْل ج مُيُول\أَمْيَال inclination, trend مَيَّال إلى biased towards

مَائِل إلى tilting, tending towards أَمْيَل إلى more in favour of

95 III حَاوَلَ يُحَاوِلُ ḥāwala yuḥāwilu to try هـ\أن حول

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نُحَاوِلُ		أُحَاوِلُ	حَاوَلْنَا	حَاوَلْتُ
	تُحَاوِلُونَ	تُحَاوِلاَنِ	تُحَاوِلُ	حَاوَلْتُمَا	حَاوَلْتَ
	تُحَاوِلْنَ	تُحَاوِلاَنِ	تُحَاوِلِينَ	حَاوَلْتُنَّ	حَاوَلْتِ
	يُحَاوِلُونَ	يُحَاوِلاَنِ	يُحَاوِلُ	حَاوَلُوا	حَاوَلاَ
	يُحَاوِلْنَ	تُحَاوِلاَنِ	تُحَاوِلُ	حَاوَلْنَ	حَاوَلَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نُحَاوِلْ	أُحَاوِلْ	نُحَاوِلَ		أُحَاوِلَ
تُحَاوِلُوا	تُحَاوِلاَ	تُحَاوِلُوا	تُحَاوِلاَ	تُحَاوِلَ
تُحَاوِلْنَ	تُحَاوِلِي	تُحَاوِلْنَ	تُحَاوِلاَ	تُحَاوِلِي
يُحَاوِلُوا	يُحَاوِلاَ	يُحَاوِلُوا	يُحَاوِلاَ	يُحَاوِلَ
يُحَاوِلْنَ	يُحَاوِلاَ	يُحَاوِلْنَ	تُحَاوِلاَ	تُحَاوِلَ

Verbal Noun muḥāwala **Participle** muḥāwil **Imperative** hāwil

مُحَاوَلَة	مُحَاوِل	حَاوِلُوا	حَاوِلاَ	حَاوِلْ
		حَاوِلْنَ	حَاوِلاَ	حَاوِلِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yuḥāwalu يُحَاوَلُ **Perfect** ḥūwila حُوِولَ
Participle muḥāwal مُحَاوَل

I (حَالَ) حَالَ يَحُولُ to be changed into إلى\هـ, (حَيْلُولَة) to prevent 88 دون
II حَوَّلَ to transfer هـ 93; II/IV حَوَّلَ\أَحَالَ to transform from ... to إلى\هـ هـ
93/97; V تَحَوَّلَ to be transferred/transformed إلى to/into 99; VI تَحَاوَلَ to
strive for على 101; VIII احْتَالَ to deceive على 105
IX احْوَلَّ to squint 109; X اِسْتَحَالَ to be transformed into إلى 111

حَال ج أَحْوَال condition, state حَالَة case حَالِي present, actual
حَائِل ج حَوَائِل obstacle حَالِيًا at present مُتَحَوِّل variable
حَوَالَى\حَوْلَ about, approximately تَحْوِيل\تَحَوُّل transformation, transfer
مُحَاوَلَة attempt فِي حَالَة in the event of عَلَى كُلِّ حَال in any case

96 III بَايَعَ يُبَايِعُ bāya'a yubāyi'u to make a contract with ه بيع

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	أُبَايِعُ		نُبَايِعُ	بَايَعْنَا	بَايَعْتُ
	تُبَايِعُ	تُبَايِعَانِ	تُبَايِعُونَ	بَايَعْتُمَا	بَايَعْتَ
	تُبَايِعِينَ	تُبَايِعَانِ	تُبَايِعْنَ	بَايَعْتُمَا	بَايَعْتِ
	يُبَايِعُ	يُبَايِعَانِ	يُبَايِعُونَ	بَايَعَا	بَايَعَ
	تُبَايِعُ	تُبَايِعَانِ	يُبَايِعْنَ	بَايَعَتَا	بَايَعَتْ
Jussive				Subjunctive	
	أُبَايِعْ		نُبَايِعْ	نُبَايِعَ	أُبَايِعَ
	تُبَايِعْ	تُبَايِعَا	تُبَايِعُوا	تُبَايِعُوا	تُبَايِعَ
	تُبَايِعِي	تُبَايِعَا	تُبَايِعْنَ	تُبَايِعَا	تُبَايِعِي
	يُبَايِعْ	يُبَايِعَا	يُبَايِعُوا	يُبَايِعُوا	يُبَايِعَ
	تُبَايِعْ	تُبَايِعَا	يُبَايِعْنَ	تُبَايِعَا	تُبَايِعَ

Verbal Noun mubāya'a Participle mubāyi' Imperative bāyi'

مُبَايَعَة	مُبَايِع	بَايِعُوا	بَايِعْ
		بَايِعْنَ	بَايِعِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yubāya'u يُبَايَعُ Perfect būyi'a بُويِعَ

Participle mubāya' مُبَايَع

I (بَيْع) بَاعَ يَبِيعُ to sell ، ه\إلى 91; IV أَبَاعَ to offer for sale ه 98

VI تَبَايَعَ to conclude a deal 102; VII اِنْبَاعَ to be sold **104**

VIII اِبْتَاعَ to buy ه\من ، 107

sale	بَيْع ج بُيُوع	transaction	بَيْعَة\مُبَايَعَة
salesman	بَيَّاع	sale, sold	مَبِيع
seller	بَائِع ج بَاعَة	buyer	مُبْتَاع
purchase	اِبْتِيَاع	wholesale / retail	بَيْع بِالجُمْلَة / بَيْع بِالفَرْد
for sale	لِلبَيْع	terms/conditions of sale	شُرُوط البَيْع

97 IV أَقَامَ يُقِيمُ 'aqāma yuqīmu to organise ه, to rectify ه, to raise ه, to reside قوم

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نُقِيمُ	أُقِيمُ		أَقَمْنَا	أَقَمْتُ
تُقِيمُونَ	تُقِيمَانِ	تُقِيمُ	أَقَمْتُمَا	أَقَمْتُمْ
تُقَمْنَ	تُقِيمَانِ	تُقِيمِينَ	أَقَمْتُمَا	أَقَمْتُنَّ
يُقِيمُونَ	يُقِيمَانِ	يُقِيمُ	أَقَامُوا	أَقَامَا	أَقَامَ
يُقَمْنَ	تُقِيمَانِ	تُقِيمُ	أَقَمْنَ	أَقَامَتَا	أَقَامَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نُقِمْ	أُقِمْ		نُقِيمَ	أُقِيمَ
تُقِيمُوا	تُقِيمَا	تُقِمْ	تُقِيمُوا	تُقِيمَا	تُقِيمَ
تُقَمْنَ	تُقِيمَا	تُقِيمِي	تُقَمْنَ	تُقِيمَا	تُقِيمِي
يُقِيمُوا	يُقِيمَا	يُقِمْ	يُقِيمُوا	يُقِيمَا	يُقِيمَ
يُقَمْنَ	تُقِيمَا	تُقِمْ	يُقَمْنَ	تُقِيمَا	تُقِيمَ

Verbal Noun 'iqāma **Participle** muqīm **Imperative** 'aqim

إِقَامَة مُقِيم أَقِيمُوا أَقِيمَا أَقِمْ
أَقِمْنَ أَقِيمَا أَقِيمِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yuqāmu يُقَامُ **Perfect** 'uqīma أُقِيمَ
Participle muqām مُقَام

I قَامَ يَقُومُ (قِيَامَة\قَوْمَة) to rise, to undertake ب, to take charge of على 88; II قَوَّمَ to raise ه, to evaluate ه, to adjust ه 93; III قَاوَمَ to resist ه، ه 95; X اِسْتَقَامَ to stand up 111

قَوْم ج أَقْوَام nation قَوْمِي national(ist) قَوْمِيَّة nationalism
قِيمَة ج قِيَم value قِيَام uprising قَائِمَة خ قَوَائِم list, register
مَقَام site قَائِم ج قُوَّام rising, upright إِقَامَة raising, residence
اِسْتِقَامَة probity قَوَّام على custodian of قِوَامَة على stewardship of
تَقْوِيم ج تَقَاوِيم raising, adjustment قَائِم ج قُوَّام بِالأَعْمَال chargé d'affaires

98 IV أَذَاعَ يُذِيعُ 'adhā'a yudhī'u to broadcast هـ\ب ذيع

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
			أُذِيعُ	أَذَعْنَا	أَذَعْتُ
			تُذِيعُ	أَذَعْتُمَا	أَذَعْتَ
			تُذِيعِينَ	أَذَعْتُنَّ	أَذَعْتِ
			يُذِيعُ	أَذَاعُوا	أَذَاعَ
			تُذِيعُ	أَذَعْنَ	أَذَاعَتْ
			أُذِيعُ	نُذِيعُ	
			تُذِيعَانِ	تُذِيعَانِ	تُذِيعُونَ
			تُذِيعَانِ	يُذِيعَانِ	يُذِيعُونَ
			تُذِيعَانِ	تُذِيعَانِ	تُذِعْنَ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
		أُذِعْ	نُذِيعَ		أُذِيعَ
		تُذِعْ	تُذِيعُوا	تُذِيعَا	تُذِيعَ
		تُذِيعِي	تُذِعْنَ	تُذِيعَا	تُذِيعِي
		يُذِعْ	يُذِيعُوا	يُذِيعَا	يُذِيعَ
		تُذِعْ	يُذِعْنَ	تُذِيعَا	تُذِيعَ
					أَذِعْ
				أَذِيعَا	أَذِيعِي
				أَذِعْنَ	

Verbal Noun 'idhā'a Participle mudhī' Imperative 'adhi'

إِذَاعَة مُذِيع

PASSIVE Imperfect yudhā'u يُذَاعُ Perfect 'udhī'a أُذِيعَ

Participle mudhā' مُذَاع

I ذَاعَ يَذِيعُ (ذُيُوع) to spread intr. 91

ذُيُوع	diffusion, circulation	إِذَاعَة	broadcasting
مِذْيَاع ج مَذَايِيع	microphone	مُذِيع	transmitter, announcer
ذَائِع	widespread	إِذَاعَة لا سِلكِيَّة	radio broadcast(ing)
إِذَاعَة تَلْفَزِيَّة	television broadcast(ing)		
إِذَاعَة الأَخْبَار	news broadcast(ing)		

99 V تَصَوَّرَ يَتَصَوَّرُ taṣawwara yataṣawwaru to imagine ه, to be portrayed — صور

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نَتَصَوَّرُ	أَتَصَوَّرُ	تَصَوَّرْنَا	تَصَوَّرْتُ
تَتَصَوَّرُونَ	تَتَصَوَّرَانِ	تَتَصَوَّرُ	تَصَوَّرْتُمْ	تَصَوَّرْتُمَا	تَصَوَّرْتَ
تَتَصَوَّرْنَ	تَتَصَوَّرَانِ	تَتَصَوَّرِينَ	تَصَوَّرْتُنَّ	تَصَوَّرْتُمَا	تَصَوَّرْتِ
يَتَصَوَّرُونَ	يَتَصَوَّرَانِ	يَتَصَوَّرَ	تَصَوَّرُوا	تَصَوَّرَا	تَصَوَّرَ
يَتَصَوَّرْنَ	تَتَصَوَّرَانِ	تَتَصَوَّرُ	تَصَوَّرْنَ	تَصَوَّرَتَا	تَصَوَّرَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	نَتَصَوَّرْ	أَتَصَوَّرْ	نَتَصَوَّرَ		أَتَصَوَّرَ
تَتَصَوَّرُوا	تَتَصَوَّرَا	تَتَصَوَّرْ	تَتَصَوَّرُوا	تَتَصَوَّرَا	تَتَصَوَّرَ
تَتَصَوَّرْنَ	تَتَصَوَّرَا	تَتَصَوَّرِي	تَتَصَوَّرْنَ	تَتَصَوَّرَا	تَتَصَوَّرِي
يَتَصَوَّرُوا	يَتَصَوَّرَا	يَتَصَوَّرْ	يَتَصَوَّرُوا	يَتَصَوَّرَا	يَتَصَوَّرَ
يَتَصَوَّرْنَ	يَتَصَوَّرَا	يَتَصَوَّرْ	يَتَصَوَّرْنَ	تَتَصَوَّرَا	تَتَصَوَّرَ

Verbal Noun taṣawwur **Participle** mutaṣawwir **Imperative** taṣawwar

تَصَوُّر	مُتَصَوِّر	تَصَوَّرُوا	تَصَوَّرَا	تَصَوَّرْ
		تَصَوَّرْنَ	تَصَوَّرَا	تَصَوَّرِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yutaṣawwaru يُتَصَوَّرُ **Perfect** tuṣuwwira تُصُوِّرَ
Participle mutaṣawwar مُتَصَوَّر

II صَوَّرَ to depict ه, ه, to photograph ه, ه 93

صُورَة ج صُوَر	picture, form	تَصْوِير	depiction, photography
مُصَوِّر	photographer	مُصَوِّرَة	camera
تَصَوُّر	imagination	تَصَوُّرِي	imaginary
مُصَوَّر	illustrated	صُوَرِي	formal, artificial
بِصُورَة رَسْمِيَّة	officially	بِصُورَة غَيْر رَسْمِيَّة	unofficially
بِصُورَة عامَّة	generally	(غَيْر) قابِل التَّصَوُّر	(un)imaginable
بِصُورَة أَوْضَح	more clearly	ضَعِيف ج ضُعَفَاء التَّصَوُّر	unimaginative

100 V تَغَيَّرَ يَتَغَيَّرُ taghayyara yataghayyaru to change intr. غير

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نَتَغَيَّرُ		أَتَغَيَّرُ		تَغَيَّرْنَا	تَغَيَّرْتُ
	تَتَغَيَّرُونَ	تَتَغَيَّرَانِ	تَتَغَيَّرُ		تَغَيَّرْتُمْ	تَغَيَّرْتُمَا	تَغَيَّرْتَ
	تَتَغَيَّرْنَ	تَتَغَيَّرَانِ	تَتَغَيَّرِينَ		تَغَيَّرْتُنَّ	تَغَيَّرْتُمَا	تَغَيَّرْتِ
	يَتَغَيَّرُونَ	يَتَغَيَّرَانِ	يَتَغَيَّرُ		تَغَيَّرُوا	تَغَيَّرَا	تَغَيَّرَ
	يَتَغَيَّرْنَ	تَتَغَيَّرَانِ	تَتَغَيَّرُ		تَغَيَّرْنَ	تَغَيَّرَتَا	تَغَيَّرَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نَتَغَيَّرْ		أَتَغَيَّرْ	نَتَغَيَّرَ		أَتَغَيَّرَ
تَتَغَيَّرُوا	تَتَغَيَّرَا	تَتَغَيَّرْ	تَتَغَيَّرُوا	تَتَغَيَّرَا	تَتَغَيَّرَ
تَتَغَيَّرْنَ	تَتَغَيَّرَا	تَتَغَيَّرِي	تَتَغَيَّرْنَ	تَتَغَيَّرَا	تَتَغَيَّرِي
يَتَغَيَّرُوا	يَتَغَيَّرَا	يَتَغَيَّرْ	يَتَغَيَّرُوا	يَتَغَيَّرَا	يَتَغَيَّرَ
يَتَغَيَّرْنَ	تَتَغَيَّرَا	تَتَغَيَّرْ	يَتَغَيَّرْنَ	تَتَغَيَّرَا	تَتَغَيَّرَ

Verbal Noun taghayyur **Participle** mutaghayyir **Imperative** taghayyar

تَغَيُّر	مُتَغَيِّر	تَغَيَّرُوا	تَغَيَّرَا	تَغَيَّرْ
		تَغَيَّرْنَ	تَغَيَّرَا	تَغَيَّرِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yutaghayyaru يُتَغَيَّرُ **Perfect** tughuyyira تُغُيِّرَ

Participle mutaghayyar مُتَغَيَّر

I (غَيْرَة) غَارَ يَغِيرُ to be jealous of من 91; II غَيَّرَ to change هـ 94

III غَايَرَ to differ from هـ، ه, to compete with ه 96; IV أَغَارَ to make jealous ه 98; VI تَغَايَرَ to be varied 102

غَيْرُ other than, dis-/un- غَيْرَ except for الغَيْر other people, others

وغَيْرُهُ et cetera تَغْيِير change مُتَغَيِّر variable

غَيْرِي altruist(ic) غَيْرِيَّة altruism تَغَيُّر alteration

غَيْرُ مَعْرُوفٍ unknown عَيْرَ هذا moreover

غَيْرَ أَنَّ except that بغَيْر\من غَيْر without

غَيْرُ مَقْبُولٍ unacceptable غَيْرُ مَعْقُولٍ unreasonable

101 VI تَعَاوَنَ يَتَعَاوَنُ ta'āwana yata'āwanu to cooperate عون

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نَتَعَاوَنُ		أَتَعَاوَنُ		تَعَاوَنَّا	تَعَاوَنْتُ
تَتَعَاوَنُونَ	تَتَعَاوَنَانِ	تَتَعَاوَنُ	تَتَعَاوَنْتُمْ	تَعَاوَنْتُمَا	تَعَاوَنْتَ
تَتَعَاوَنَّ	تَتَعَاوَنَانِ	تَتَعَاوَنِينَ	تَتَعَاوَنْتُنَّ	تَعَاوَنْتُمَا	تَعَاوَنْتِ
يَتَعَاوَنُونَ	يَتَعَاوَنَانِ	يَتَعَاوَنُ	تَعَاوَنُوا	تَعَاوَنَا	تَعَاوَنَ
يَتَعَاوَنَّ	يَتَعَاوَنَانِ	تَتَعَاوَنُ	تَعَاوَنَّ	تَعَاوَنَتَا	تَعَاوَنَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive	
	نَتَعَاوَنْ		أَتَعَاوَنْ		نَتَعَاوَنَ
تَتَعَاوَنُوا	تَتَعَاوَنَا	تَتَعَاوَنْ	تَتَعَاوَنُوا	تَتَعَاوَنَا	تَتَعَاوَنَ
تَتَعَاوَنَّ	تَتَعَاوَنَا	تَتَعَاوَنِي	تَتَعَاوَنَّ	تَتَعَاوَنَا	تَتَعَاوَنِي
يَتَعَاوَنُوا	يَتَعَاوَنَا	يَتَعَاوَنْ	يَتَعَاوَنُوا	يَتَعَاوَنَا	يَتَعَاوَنَ
يَتَعَاوَنَّ	يَتَعَاوَنَا	تَتَعَاوَنْ	يَتَعَاوَنَّ	يَتَعَاوَنَا	تَتَعَاوَنَ

Verbal Noun ta'āwun **Participle** muta'āwin **Imperative** ta'āwan

تَعَاوُن	مُتَعَاوِن	تَعَاوَنُوا	تَعَاوَنْ
		تَعَاوَنَّ	تَعَاوَنَا
			تَعَاوَنِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yuta'āwanu يُتَعَاوَنُ **Perfect** tu'ūwina تُعُووِنَ

Participle muta'āwan مُتَعَاوَن

III/IV عَاوَنَ\أَعَانَ to help ه 95/97; X اِسْتَعَانَ to ask for help against ه، على 111

تَعَاوُن cooperation عَوْن ج أَعْوَان assistant عَوْن\مُعَاوَنَة help

إِعَانَة subsidy تَعَاوُنِيَّة cooperativism تَعَاوُنِي cooperative

عَدِيم التَعَاوُن uncooperative مُعَاوِن assistant, adjutant

شَرِكَة تَعَاوُنِيَّة cooperative society عَدَم التَعَاوُن non-cooperation

مُعْطِي العَوْن aid donor تَعَاوُن على التَنْمِيَة development cooperation

عَوْن السِّلَع commodity aid عَوْن غِذَائِي food aid

102 VI تَزَايَدَ يَتَزَايَدُ tazāyada yatazāyadu to intensify intr. زيد

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نَتَزَايَدُ		أَتَزَايَدُ	تَزَايَدْنَا		تَزَايَدْتُ
تَتَزَايَدُونَ	تَتَزَايَدَانِ	تَتَزَايَدُ	تَتَزَايَدُ	تَزَايَدْتُمْ	تَزَايَدْتُمَا	تَزَايَدْتَ
تَتَزَايَدْنَ	تَتَزَايَدَانِ	تَتَزَايَدِينَ	تَتَزَايَدِينَ	تَزَايَدْتُنَّ	تَزَايَدْتُمَا	تَزَايَدْتِ
يَتَزَايَدُونَ	يَتَزَايَدَانِ	يَتَزَايَدُ	يَتَزَايَدُ	تَزَايَدُوا	تَزَايَدَا	تَزَايَدَ
يَتَزَايَدْنَ	تَتَزَايَدَانِ	تَتَزَايَدُ	تَتَزَايَدُ	تَزَايَدْنَ	تَزَايَدَتَا	تَزَايَدَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
	نَتَزَايَدْ		أَتَزَايَدْ	نَتَزَايَدَ		أَتَزَايَدَ
تَتَزَايَدُوا	تَتَزَايَدَا	تَتَزَايَدْ	تَتَزَايَدْ	تَتَزَايَدُوا	تَتَزَايَدَا	تَتَزَايَدَ
تَتَزَايَدْنَ	تَتَزَايَدَا	تَتَزَايَدِي	تَتَزَايَدِي	تَتَزَايَدْنَ	تَتَزَايَدَا	تَتَزَايَدِي
يَتَزَايَدُوا	يَتَزَايَدَا	يَتَزَايَدْ	يَتَزَايَدْ	يَتَزَايَدُوا	يَتَزَايَدَا	يَتَزَايَدَ
يَتَزَايَدْنَ	تَتَزَايَدَا	تَتَزَايَدْ	تَتَزَايَدْ	يَتَزَايَدْنَ	تَتَزَايَدَا	تَتَزَايَدَ

Verbal Noun tazāyud **Participle** mutazāyid **Imperative** tazāyad

تَزَايُد	مُتَزَايِد	تَزَايَدُوا	تَزَايَدَا	تَزَايَدْ
		تَزَايَدْنَ	تَزَايَدَا	تَزَايَدِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yutazāyadu يُتَزَايَدُ **Perfect** tuzūyida تُزُوِيدَ

Participle mutazāyad مُتَزَايَد

See 91

103 VII انْحَازَ يَنْحَازُ inhāza yanḥāzu — حوز (حيز)

to withdraw from عن\من, to join إلى

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	أَنْحَازُ		انْحَزْنَا		انْحَزْتُ
تَنْحَازُ	تَنْحَازُ	تَنْحَازَانِ	تَنْحَازِينَ	انْحَزْتَمْ	انْحَزْتَمَا	انْحَزْتَ
تَنْحَزْنَ	تَنْحَازَانِ	تَنْحَازَانِ	تَنْحَزْنَّ	انْحَزْتُنَّ	انْحَزْتُمَا	انْحَزْتِ
يَنْحَازُونَ	يَنْحَازَانِ	يَنْحَازَانِ	يَنْحَازُ	انْحَازُوا	انْحَازَا	انْحَازَ
يَنْحَزْنَ	تَنْحَازَانِ	تَنْحَازَانِ	تَنْحَزْنَ	انْحَزْنَ	انْحَازَتَا	انْحَازَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
	أَنْحَزْ		نَنْحَزْ		أَنْحَازَ
تَنْحَازُوا	تَنْحَزْ	تَنْحَازَا	تَنْحَزْ	تَنْحَازُوا	تَنْحَازَا	تَنْحَازَ
تَنْحَزْنَ	تَنْحَازِي	تَنْحَازَا	تَنْحَزْنَ	تَنْحَزْنَ	تَنْحَازَا	تَنْحَازِي
يَنْحَازُوا	يَنْحَزْ	يَنْحَازَا	يَنْحَزْ	يَنْحَازُوا	يَنْحَازَا	يَنْحَازَ
يَنْحَزْنَ	تَنْحَزْ	تَنْحَازَا	يَنْحَزْنَ	يَنْحَزْنَ	تَنْحَازَا	تَنْحَازَ

Verbal Noun inḥiyāz **Participle** munḥāz **Imperative** inḥaz

انْحِيَاز	مُنْحَاز	انْحَازُوا	انْحَزْ
		انْحَزْنَ	انْحَازِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yunḥāzu يُنْحَازُ **Perfect** unḥīza أُنْحِيزَ

Participle munḥāz مُنْحَاز

I حَازَ يَحُوزُ (حَوْز\حِيَازَة) to gain هـ 88

V تَحَوَّزَ (تَحَيَّزَ) 99/100 = VII انْحَازَ **103**; VIII احْتَازَ to possess هـ 105

حَوْز\حَوْزَة\حِيَازَة	possession, tenure	حَائِز	possessor, tenant
تَحَيُّز	partiality, bias	انْحِيَاز	isolation
مُتَحَيِّز	partial, biased	مُنْحَاز	isolated, outsider
حَيْز ج أَحْيَاز	range	في حَيْز الإِمْكَان	as much as possible

104 VII انْبَاعَ يَنْبَاعُ inbā'a yanbā'u to be sold بيع

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect		
	أَنْبَاعُ	نَنْبَاعُ		انْبَعْتَا	انْبَعْتُ
	تَنْبَاعُ	تَنْبَاعَانِ	تَنْبَاعُونَ	انْبَعْتُمْ	انْبَعْتُمَا	انْبَعْتَ
	تَنْبَاعِينَ	تَنْبَاعَانِ	تَنْبَعْنَ	انْبَعْتُنَّ	انْبَعْتُمَا	انْبَعْتِ
	يَنْبَاعُ	يَنْبَاعَانِ	يَنْبَاعُونَ	انْبَاعُوا	انْبَاعَا	انْبَاعَ
	تَنْبَاعُ	تَنْبَاعَانِ	يَنْبَعْنَ	انْبَعْنَ	انْبَاعَتَا	انْبَاعَتْ
	Jussive			**Subjunctive**		
	أَنْبَعْ	نَنْبَعْ		نَنْبَاعَ	أَنْبَاعَ	
	تَنْبَعْ	تَنْبَاعَا	تَنْبَاعُوا	تَنْبَاعُوا	تَنْبَاعَا	تَنْبَاعَ
	تَنْبَاعِي	تَنْبَاعَا	تَنْبَعْنَ	تَنْبَعْنَ	تَنْبَاعَا	تَنْبَاعِي
	يَنْبَعْ	يَنْبَاعَا	يَنْبَاعُوا	يَنْبَاعُوا	يَنْبَاعَا	يَنْبَاعَ
	تَنْبَعْ	تَنْبَاعَا	يَنْبَعْنَ	يَنْبَعْنَ	تَنْبَاعَا	تَنْبَاعَ

Verbal Noun inbiyā' **Participle** munbā' **Imperative** inba'

انْبِيَاع	مُنْبَاع	انْبَاعُوا	انْبَاعَا	انْبَعْ
		انْبَعْنَ	انْبَاعَا	انْبَاعِي

PASSIVE none (active verb has passive meaning)

See 96

105 VIII اِحْتَاجَ يَحْتَاجُ iḥtāja yaḥtāju to need إلى حوج

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect
	أَحْتَاجُ	احْتَجْنَا	احْتَجْتُ
	تَحْتَاجُ	اَحْتَجْتُمْ	اَحْتَجْتَ
	تَحْتَاجَانِ	اَحْتَجْتُمَا	اَحْتَجْتِ
	تَحْتَاجِينَ	اَحْتَجْتُنَّ	اَحْتَجْتِ
	يَحْتَاجُ	اَحْتَاجُوا	اَحْتَاجَ
	يَحْتَاجَانِ	اَحْتَاجَا	اَحْتَاجَتْ
	تَحْتَاجُ	اَحْتَجْنَ	اَحْتَاجَتَا
	تَحْتَاجَانِ	اِحْتَجْنَ	اِحْتَاجَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive
	أَحْتَجْ	نَحْتَجْ	أَحْتَاجَ
	تَحْتَجْ	تَحْتَاجَا	تَحْتَاجَ
	تَحْتَجْ	تَحْتَاجُوا	تَحْتَاجَا
	تَحْتَاجِي	تَحْتَجْنَ	تَحْتَاجِي
	يَحْتَجْ	تَحْتَاجَا	يَحْتَاجَ
	يَحْتَجْ	يَحْتَاجُوا	يَحْتَاجَا
	تَحْتَجْ	يَحْتَجْنَ	تَحْتَاجَ

Verbal Noun iḥtiyāj	Participle muḥtāj	Imperative iḥtaj	
اِحْتِيَاج	مُحْتَاج	اِحْتَاجُوا	اِحْتَجْ
		اِحْتَجْنَ	اِحْتَاجِي

PASSIVE° Imperfect يُحْتَاجُ yuḥtāju Perfect أُحْتِيجَ uḥtīja
Participle مُحْتَاج muḥtāj

IV أَحْوَجَ to need, to require إلى, to compel إلى ه, to impoverish ه 10

مُحْتَاج needy مُحْتَاج إليه needed اِحْتِيَاج إلى need of
حَوْج need, destitution حَاجَة إلى necessity for غَيْر حَاجَة unnecessary
حَاجَة ج حَوَائِج necessity (thing needed) حَاجِيَات (basic) necessities
عِنْد الحَاجَة if need be حَاجِيَاتُنا الأَسَاسِيَة our basic needs
زائد عن الحَاجَة surplus to requirements
كُلّ ما يَحْتَاجُون إليه everything they need
ما تَحْتَاج الشَّرِكَة إليه من التَّمْوِيل the ('whatever') finance the company needs

106 VIII اِزْدَوَجَ يَزْدَوِجُ izdawaja yazdawiju to be in pairs زوج

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	أَزْدَوِجُ		نَزْدَوِجُ		اِزْدَوَجْنَا	اِزْدَوَجْتُ
	تَزْدَوِجُ	تَزْدَوِجَانِ	تَزْدَوِجُونَ		اِزْدَوَجْتُمْ	اِزْدَوَجْتَ
	تَزْدَوِجِينَ	تَزْدَوِجَانِ	تَزْدَوِجْنَ		اِزْدَوَجْتُنَّ	اِزْدَوَجْتِ
	يَزْدَوِجُ	يَزْدَوِجَانِ	يَزْدَوِجُونَ		اِزْدَوَجُوا	اِزْدَوَجَا	اِزْدَوَجَ
	تَزْدَوِجُ	تَزْدَوِجَانِ	يَزْدَوِجْنَ		اِزْدَوَجْنَ	اِزْدَوَجَتَا	اِزْدَوَجَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
أَزْدَوِجْ		نَزْدَوِجْ	أَزْدَوِجَ		نَزْدَوِجَ
تَزْدَوِجْ	تَزْدَوِجَا	تَزْدَوِجُوا	تَزْدَوِجَ	تَزْدَوِجَا	تَزْدَوِجُوا
تَزْدَوِجِي	تَزْدَوِجَا	تَزْدَوِجْنَ	تَزْدَوِجِي	تَزْدَوِجَا	تَزْدَوِجْنَ
يَزْدَوِجْ	يَزْدَوِجَا	يَزْدَوِجُوا	يَزْدَوِجَ	يَزْدَوِجَا	يَزْدَوِجُوا
تَزْدَوِجْ	تَزْدَوِجَا	يَزْدَوِجْنَ	تَزْدَوِجَ	تَزْدَوِجَا	يَزْدَوِجْنَ

Verbal Noun izdiwāj **Participle** muzdawij **Imperative** izdawij

اِزْدِوَاج	مُزْدَوِج	اِزْدَوِجُوا	اِزْدَوِجَا	اِزْدَوِجْ
		اِزْدَوِجْنَ	اِزْدَوِجَا	اِزْدَوِجِي

PASSIVE none

II زَوَّجَ to pair هـ 93; III زَاوَجَ to pair هـ, to join in marriage ه 95

V تَزَوَّجَ to get married to ب\على\ه 99

VI تَزَاوَجَ to intermarry, to be in pairs 101

زَوْج ج أَزْوَاج	husband, pair	زَوْجَة	wife
مُزْدَوِج	double(d)	اِزْدِوَاج	duality
تَزَوُّج	marriage	زَوَاج من	wedding, marriage to
مُتَزَوِّج	married	زِوَاج	duplication
زَوْجِيَّة	matrimony	مُزَاوَجَة	pairing

107 VIII اِمْتازَ يَمْتازُ imtāza yamtāzu to be distinguished ميز

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
تَمْتازُ		أَمْتازُ		امْتَزْتُ	
تَمْتازُونَ	تَمْتازانِ	تَمْتازُ		امْتَزْتَ	امْتَزْتُما
تَمْتَزْنَ	تَمْتازانِ	تَمْتازِينَ		امْتَزْتِ	امْتَزْتُما
يَمْتازُونَ	يَمْتازانِ	يَمْتازُ		امْتازَ	امْتازا
يَمْتَزْنَ	تَمْتازانِ	تَمْتازُ		امْتازَتْ	امْتازَتا
	Jussive			**Subjunctive**	
تَمْتَزْ		أَمْتَزْ		تَمْتازَ	
تَمْتازُوا	تَمْتازا	تَمْتَزْ		تَمْتازَ	تَمْتازا
تَمْتَزْنَ	تَمْتازا	تَمْتازِي		تَمْتازِي	تَمْتازا
يَمْتازُوا	يَمْتازا	يَمْتَزْ		يَمْتازَ	يَمْتازا
يَمْتَزْنَ	تَمْتازا	تَمْتَزْ		تَمْتازَ	تَمْتازا

Verbal Noun imtiyāz **Participle** mumtāz **Imperative** imtaz

اِمْتِيازٌ	مُمْتازٌ	امْتازُوا	امْتازا	امْتَزْ
		اِمْتَزْنَ	اِمْتازا	اِمْتازِي

PASSIVE none

I/IV مازَ يَميزُ (مَيْز)\أَمازَ to differentiate ه 91/98; II مَيَّزَ to distinguish ه، ه 94; V تَمَيَّزَ 100 = VIII اِمْتازَ **107**; VI تَمايَزَ to differ intr. 102

مَيْز	preferment	أَمْيَز على	preferable to
تَمْييز	distinction, preference	اِمْتِياز	distinction, honour, concession
مُمْتاز	outstanding	مُمَيَّز\مُتَمَيِّز	distinguished
مُمَيِّزَة	distinctive feature	تَمْييز عُنْصُرِي	racial discrimination
		اِمْتِيازات دِبْلُوماسِيَّة	diplomatic privileges
		صاحِب ج أَصْحاب الاِمْتِياز	franchise/concession holder
		تَمْييز الجِنْس	sex discrimination

108 VIII اِزْدَادَ يَزْدَادُ izdāda yazdādu to increase intr. زيد

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَزْدَادُ	أَزْدَادُ		ازْدَدْتُ	
	تَزْدَادُونَ	تَزْدَادُ	تَزْدَادَانِ	ازْدَدْتَ	ازْدَدْتُمَا
	تَزْدَدْنَ	تَزْدَادِينَ	تَزْدَادَانِ	ازْدَدْتِ	ازْدَدْتُمَا
	يَزْدَادُونَ	يَزْدَادُ	يَزْدَادَانِ	ازْدَادَ	ازْدَادَا
	يَزْدَدْنَ	تَزْدَادُ	تَزْدَادَانِ	ازْدَادَتْ	ازْدَادَتَا
	Jussive			Subjunctive	
	نَزْدَدْ	أَزْدَدْ		نَزْدَادَ	أَزْدَادَ
	تَزْدَادُوا	تَزْدَدْ	تَزْدَادَا	تَزْدَادُوا	تَزْدَادَ
	تَزْدَدْنَ	تَزْدَادِي	تَزْدَادَا	تَزْدَدْنَ	تَزْدَادِي
	يَزْدَادُوا	يَزْدَدْ	يَزْدَادَا	يَزْدَادُوا	يَزْدَادَ
	يَزْدَدْنَ	تَزْدَدْ	تَزْدَادَا	يَزْدَدْنَ	تَزْدَادَ

Verbal Noun izdiyād اِزْدِيَاد Participle muzdād مُزْدَاد Imperative izdad

اِزْدَدْ	اِزْدَادَا	اِزْدَادُوا
اِزْدَادِي	اِزْدَادَا	اِزْدَدْنَ

PASSIVE° Imperfect yuzdādu يُزْدَادُ Perfect uzdīda أُزْدِيدَ

Participle muzdād مُزْدَاد

See 91

109 IX اِسْوَدَّ يَسْوَدُّ iswadda yaswaddu to be/turn black سود

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نَسْوَدُّ		أَسْوَدُّ		اِسْوَدَدْتُ	اِسْوَدَدْنَا
	تَسْوَدُّونَ	تَسْوَدَّانِ	تَسْوَدُّ		اِسْوَدَدْتَ	اِسْوَدَدْتُمَا	اِسْوَدَدْتُمْ
	تَسْوَدَدْنَ	تَسْوَدَّانِ	تَسْوَدِّينَ		اِسْوَدَدْتِ	اِسْوَدَدْتُمَا	اِسْوَدَدْتُنَّ
	يَسْوَدُّونَ	يَسْوَدَّانِ	يَسْوَدُّ		اِسْوَدَّ	اِسْوَدَّا	اِسْوَدُّوا
	يَسْوَدَدْنَ	تَسْوَدَّانِ	تَسْوَدُّ		اِسْوَدَّتْ	اِسْوَدَّتَا	اِسْوَدَدْنَ

	Jussive (ii)			Subjunctive and Jussive (i)		
	نَسْوَدْ		أَسْوَدْ		أَسْوَدَّ	
	تَسْوَدُّوا	تَسْوَدَّا	تَسْوَدَّ		تَسْوَدَّ	تَسْوَدَّا	تَسْوَدُّوا
	تَسْوَدَدْنَ	تَسْوَدَّا	تَسْوَدَّي		تَسْوَدَّي	تَسْوَدَّا	تَسْوَدَدْنَ
	يَسْوَدُّوا	يَسْوَدَّا	يَسْوَدَّ		يَسْوَدَّ	يَسْوَدَّا	يَسْوَدُّوا
	يَسْوَدَدْنَ	تَسْوَدَّا	تَسْوَدَّ		تَسْوَدَّ	تَسْوَدَّا	يَسْوَدَدْنَ

Verbal Noun iswidād اِسْوِدَاد

Imperative iswadda/iswadid

اِسْوَدَّ\اِسْوَدِدْ	اِسْوَدَّا	اِسْوَدُّوا	
اِسْوَدِّي	اِسْوَدَّا	اِسْوَدِدْنَ	

Participle muswadd مُسْوَدّ

PASSIVE does not exist in Form IX.

II سَوَّدَ to blacken ه, to draft ه 93

أَسْوَد (m.) ، سَوْدَاء (f.) ج سُود (m./f.) black

اِسْوِدَاد	blackening	السُودَان	Sudan
مُسَوَّدَة	draft (of a document)	سَوَاد	blackness
تَسْوِيد	drafting	أَكْثَر سَوَاداً	blacker
سَوْدَاوِي	depressed, dejected		

110 IX ابْيَضَّ يَبْيَضُّ ibyaḍḍa yabyaḍḍu to be/turn white, to blanch intr. بيض

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	أَبْيَضُّ		نَبْيَضُّ	ابْيَضَضْتُ	ابْيَضَضْنَا
	تَبْيَضُّ	تَبْيَضَّانِ	تَبْيَضُّونَ	ابْيَضَضْتَ	ابْيَضَضْتُمَا ابْيَضَضْتُمْ
	تَبْيَضِّينَ	تَبْيَضَّانِ	تَبْيَضْضْنَ	ابْيَضَضْتِ	ابْيَضَضْتُمَا ابْيَضَضْتُنَّ
	يَبْيَضُّ	يَبْيَضَّانِ	يَبْيَضُّونَ	ابْيَضَّ	ابْيَضَّا ابْيَضُّوا
	تَبْيَضُّ	تَبْيَضَّانِ	يَبْيَضْضْنَ	ابْيَضَّتْ	ابْيَضَّتَا ابْيَضَضْنَ

Jussive (ii)			Subjunctive and Jussive (i)		
	أَبْيَضَّ		نَبْيَضَّ	أَبْيَضَّ	
	تَبْيَضَّ	تَبْيَضَّا	تَبْيَضُّوا	تَبْيَضَّ	تَبْيَضَّا
	تَبْيَضَّي	تَبْيَضَّا	تَبْيَضْضْنَ	تَبْيَضَّي	تَبْيَضَّا
	يَبْيَضَّ	يَبْيَضَّا	يَبْيَضُّوا	يَبْيَضَّ	يَبْيَضَّا
	تَبْيَضَّ	تَبْيَضَّا	يَبْيَضْضْنَ	تَبْيَضَّ	تَبْيَضَّا

Verbal Noun ibyiḍāḍ ابْيِضَاض

Imperative ibyaḍḍa/ibyaḍiḍ

ابْيَضَّ\ابْيَضِضْ ابْيَضَّا ابْيَضُّوا

ابْيَضِّي ابْيَضَّا ابْيَضِضْنَ

Participle mubyaḍḍ مُبْيَضّ

PASSIVE does not exist in Form IX.

I بَاضَ يَبِيضُ (بيض) to lay (eggs هـ) 91; II بَيَّضَ to whiten هـ, to make a fair copy هـ 94; V تَبَيَّضَ to be whitened 100

(m./f.) ج بِيض (f.) بَيْضَاء ، (m.) أَبْيَض white ابْيِضَاض whitening

بَيْض (collective) eggs بَيْضَة an egg

بُيَيْضَة small egg بَيْضِي\بَيْضَوِي oval

بَيَاض whiteness, a blank أَكْثَر بَيَاضًا whiter

تَبْيِيضَة\مُبَيَّضَة fair copy مُبَيِّض copy typist

بَيَاض البَيْض albumen صَحِيفَة بَيْضَاء blameless reputation

111 X اسْتَرَاحَ يَسْتَرِيحُ istarāḥa yastarīḥu to rest intr. روح (ريح)

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	أَسْتَرِيحُ		نَسْتَرِيحُ		اسْتَرَحْنَا	اسْتَرَحْتُ
	تَسْتَرِيحُ	تَسْتَرِيحَانِ	تَسْتَرِيحُونَ	اسْتَرَحْتُمْ	اسْتَرَحْتُمَا	اسْتَرَحْتَ
	تَسْتَرِيحِينَ	تَسْتَرِيحَانِ	تَسْتَرِحْنَ	اسْتَرَحْتُنَّ	اسْتَرَحْتُمَا	اسْتَرَحْتِ
	يَسْتَرِيحُ	يَسْتَرِيحَانِ	يَسْتَرِيحُونَ	اسْتَرَاحُوا	اسْتَرَاحَا	اسْتَرَاحَ
	تَسْتَرِيحُ	تَسْتَرِيحَانِ	يَسْتَرِحْنَ	اسْتَرَحْنَ	اسْتَرَاحَتَا	اسْتَرَاحَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
	أَسْتَرِحْ		نَسْتَرِحْ		نَسْتَرِيحَ	أَسْتَرِيحَ
	تَسْتَرِحْ	تَسْتَرِيحَا	تَسْتَرِيحُوا		تَسْتَرِيحُوا	تَسْتَرِيحَا	تَسْتَرِيحَ
	تَسْتَرِحِي	تَسْتَرِيحَا	تَسْتَرِحْنَ		تَسْتَرِحْنَ	تَسْتَرِيحَا	تَسْتَرِيحِي
	يَسْتَرِحْ	يَسْتَرِيحَا	يَسْتَرِيحُوا		يَسْتَرِيحُوا	يَسْتَرِيحَا	يَسْتَرِيحَ
	تَسْتَرِحْ	تَسْتَرِيحَا	يَسْتَرِحْنَ		يَسْتَرِحْنَ	تَسْتَرِيحَا	تَسْتَرِيحَ

Verbal Noun istirāḥa **Participle** mustarīḥ **Imperative** istarīḥ

اسْتِرَاحَة مُسْتَرِيح اسْتَرِيحُوا اسْتَرِيحَا اسْتَرِحْ

اسْتَرِيحَنَ اسْتَرِيحَا اسْتَرِيحِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yustarāḥu يُسْتَرَاحُ **Perfect** usturīḥa أُسْتُرِيحَ

Participle mustarāḥ مُسْتَرَاح

I (رَوَاح) رَاحَ يَرُوحُ to depart 88; II رَوَّحَ to revive هـ 93, رَيَّحَ to rest هـ، 94; IV أَرَاحَ to comfort ه 97; VI تَرَاوَحَ to fluctuate between بين 101; VIII ارْتَاحَ to rest intr., to be content with إلى 105

رَاحَة\اسْتِرَاحَة repose (m./f) رِيح ج رِيَاح\أَرْيَاح wind

(m./f.) رُوح ج أَرْوَاح soul, spirit (also liquid) رُوحِيّ spiritual, spirituous

تَرْوِيح fanning ارْتِيَاح contentment مُرِيح restful

مُرْتَاح\مُسْتَرِيح relaxing مُسْتَرَاح lavatory مُرْتَاح البَال at ease in one's mind

112 X **اِسْتَجْوَبَ يَسْتَجْوِبُ** istajwaba yastajwibu **جوب**

to interrogate ه

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَسْتَجْوِبُ	أَسْتَجْوِبُ		اِسْتَجْوَبْنَا	اِسْتَجْوَبْتُ
	تَسْتَجْوِبُونَ	تَسْتَجْوِبَانِ	تَسْتَجْوِبُ	اِسْتَجْوَبْتُمْ	اِسْتَجْوَبْتُمَا	اِسْتَجْوَبْتَ
	تَسْتَجْوِبْنَ	تَسْتَجْوِبَانِ	تَسْتَجْوِبِينَ	اِسْتَجْوَبْتُنَّ	اِسْتَجْوَبْتُمَا	اِسْتَجْوَبْتِ
	يَسْتَجْوِبُونَ	يَسْتَجْوِبَانِ	يَسْتَجْوِبُ	اِسْتَجْوَبُوا	اِسْتَجْوَبَا	اِسْتَجْوَبَ
	يَسْتَجْوِبْنَ	تَسْتَجْوِبَانِ	تَسْتَجْوِبُ	اِسْتَجْوَبْنَ	اِسْتَجْوَبَتَا	اِسْتَجْوَبَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نَسْتَجْوِبْ	أَسْتَجْوِبْ		نَسْتَجْوِبَ	أَسْتَجْوِبَ
تَسْتَجْوِبُوا	تَسْتَجْوِبَا	تَسْتَجْوِبْ	تَسْتَجْوِبُوا	تَسْتَجْوِبَا	تَسْتَجْوِبَ
تَسْتَجْوِبْنَ	تَسْتَجْوِبَا	تَسْتَجْوِبِي	تَسْتَجْوِبْنَ	تَسْتَجْوِبَا	تَسْتَجْوِبِي
يَسْتَجْوِبُوا	يَسْتَجْوِبَا	يَسْتَجْوِبْ	يَسْتَجْوِبُوا	يَسْتَجْوِبَا	يَسْتَجْوِبَ
يَسْتَجْوِبْنَ	يَسْتَجْوِبَا	تَسْتَجْوِبْ	يَسْتَجْوِبْنَ	تَسْتَجْوِبَا	تَسْتَجْوِبَ

Verbal Noun istijwāb **Participle** mustajwib **Imperative** istajwib

اِسْتِجْوَاب	مُسْتَجْوِب	اِسْتَجْوِبُوا	اِسْتَجْوِبَا	اِسْتَجْوِبْ
		اِسْتَجْوِبْنَ	اِسْتَجْوِبَا	اِسْتَجْوِبِي

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yustajwabu **يُسْتَجْوَبُ** **Perfect** ustujwiba **أُسْتُجْوِبَ**

Participle mustajwab **مُسْتَجْوَب**

I (جَوْب) جَابَ يَجُوبُ to wander هـ 88; III جَاوَبَ to answer على ه، 95

IV أَجَابَ to answer على، إلى\ه 97; VI تَجَاوَبَ to harmonise 101

VII اِنْجَابَ to be dispelled 103; X اِسْتَجَابَ to grant هـ 111

جَوَاب ج أَجْوِبَة answer — إِجَابَة response, compliance

اِسْتِجْوَاب interrogation, parliamentary question — مُسْتَجِيب responsive

اِسْتِجَابَة granting (of a request) — إِجَابَةً لِ in compliance with

تَجَاوُب harmony — مُتَجَاوِب harmonious

113 X **اِسْتَفَادَ يَسْتَفِيدُ** istafāda yastafīdu **فيد**

to benefit from من, to be informed about هـ\ب

ACTIVE		Imperfect			Perfect	
		نَسْتَفِيدُ	أَسْتَفِيدُ		اِسْتَفَدْنَا	اِسْتَفَدْتُ
		تَسْتَفِيدُونَ	تَسْتَفِيدَانِ	تَسْتَفِيدُ	اِسْتَفَدْتُمْ	اِسْتَفَدْتَمَا	اِسْتَفَدْتَ
		تَسْتَفِدْنَ	تَسْتَفِيدَانِ	تَسْتَفِيدِينَ	اِسْتَفَدْتُنَّ	اِسْتَفَدْتَمَا	اِسْتَفَدْتِ
		يَسْتَفِيدُونَ	يَسْتَفِيدَانِ	يَسْتَفِيدُ	اِسْتَفَادُوا	اِسْتَفَادَا	اِسْتَفَادَ
		يَسْتَفِدْنَ	تَسْتَفِيدَانِ	تَسْتَفِيدُ	اِسْتَفَدْنَ	اِسْتَفَادَتَا	اِسْتَفَادَتْ
			Jussive			Subjunctive	
		نَسْتَفِدْ	أَسْتَفِدْ		نَسْتَفِيدَ	أَسْتَفِيدَ
		تَسْتَفِيدُوا	تَسْتَفِيدَا	تَسْتَفِدْ	تَسْتَفِيدُوا	تَسْتَفِيدَا	تَسْتَفِيدَ
		تَسْتَفِدْنَ	تَسْتَفِيدَا	تَسْتَفِيدِي	تَسْتَفِدْنَ	تَسْتَفِيدَا	تَسْتَفِيدِي
		يَسْتَفِيدُوا	يَسْتَفِيدَا	يَسْتَفِدْ	يَسْتَفِيدُوا	يَسْتَفِيدَا	يَسْتَفِيدَ
		يَسْتَفِدْنَ	تَسْتَفِيدَا	تَسْتَفِدْ	يَسْتَفِدْنَ	تَسْتَفِيدَا	تَسْتَفِيدَ

Verbal Noun istifāda **Participle** mustafīd **Imperative** istafid

اِسْتِفَادَة مُسْتَفِيد اِسْتَفِيدُوا اِسْتَفِيدَا اِسْتَفِدْ

اِسْتَفِدْنَ اِسْتَفِيدَا اِسْتَفِيدِي

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yustafādu يُسْتَفَادُ **Perfect** ustufīda أُسْتُفِيدَ

Participle mustafād مُسْتَفَاد

IV أَفَادَ to benefit ه, to inform of ب، ه 98, = X اِسْتَفَادَ 113

فَائِدَة ج فَوَائِد benefit, profit, interest مُفِيد useful

إِفَادَة usefulness, information, attestation مُفَاد contents, purport

اِسْتِفَادَة use مُسْتَفِيد beneficiary غَيْر مُفِيد useless

تُفِيد الأَنْبَاء (بـ)أَنَّ it is reported ('the news tells') that

قَرْض مُنْخَفَض الفَائِدَة low-interest loan فَائِدَة صَافِيَة net interest

قَرْض اِسْمِي الفَائِدَة nominal-interest loan

DEFECTIVE VERBS

Defective verbs are the third sub-class of the weak class. They have a weak letter, و or ي , as final radical, and two sound radicals. A few defective roots have alternative final radicals و or ي ; most of these follow the commoner ي conjugation.

The defective verbs follow the standard (i.e. sound) patterns shown in paras. 23,25 and 29 to 33 of the introductory chapter (tenses, imperative, participles, verbal noun) *up to and including the middle radical without its vowel.* The provisions which follow all refer to that part of the defective verb following the middle radical.

Tenses. For the tenses:

- Whenever a (first or second) principal part has ...َ before the last radical, the whole tense derived from that part (perfect from the first principal part, imperfect from the second) will have ...َ in this position throughout; otherwise it will not.
- The final ...َ of the sound 3rd person singular perfect endings (m. and f.) is dropped everywhere except in the perfect active of verbs like no. **115**, and in the passive of all verbs. The ...ُ of the sound 3rd person singular imperfect endings (m. and f.) is dropped everywhere.
- The active voice of Form I has four patterns (nos. **114** to **117** in the tables), whereas the increased forms have, irrespective of the root ...ىَ (perfect) and ...ي (imperfect) in Forms II-IV and VII-X, and ...ىَ in all tenses of Forms V and VI. In the passive, the perfect has ...يِ and the imperfect has ...ىَ , everywhere.
- The subjunctive is formed as follows, from the imperfect (indicative):
  - for those persons ending in ...ُو or ...ي , add ...َ ,
  - for those persons ending in ...ىَ , make no change,
  - for other persons, follow the pattern given for sound verbs.
- The jussive is formed as follows, from the subjunctive:
  - change the endings ...ىَ to ...َ , ...ُوَ to ...ُ and ...يِ to ...ِ ,
  - leave the rest unchanged.
- Since ى (*'alif maqṣūra*) can appear only as last letter of a word, it changes to ا whenever a pronoun object suffix is added.
- As with final ...ُوا in verbs of other classes, the silent ا of the defective endings ...ُوا and ...َوا is dropped before a pronoun suffix.

- All the 3rd person object pronoun suffixes except ـهَا... change their vowel ...ُ to ...ِ after the verb-ending ...ِ, ...ِي or ...ِيْ:
  يَرْمِيه. He throws it.

For the defective verbs it is impractical to look for a perfect or imperfect stem, as the final radical often incorporates the personal ending as well.

Imperative. Imperatives are formed regularly from the jussive. The last-but-one indent given above (endings ...ُوا and ...ُوْا) applies here also.

Participles. For the *active participle*, add endings after the middle radical of the sound measure as follows (you will note that the m.s. has two forms, indefinite and definite; the tables show both):

m.s.	nom. and gen.	indef. ...ٍ,	def. ...ِي
	acc.	indef. ...ِيًا,	def. ...ِيَ
f.s.	(regularly declined) ...ِيَة		
m. dual	(regularly declined)	nom. ...ِيَانِ,	acc./gen. ...ِيَيْنِ
f. dual	(regularly declined)	nom. ...ِيَتَانِ,	acc./gen. ...ِيَتَيْنِ
m. pl.	(sound)	nom. ...ُونَ,	acc./gen. ...ِينَ
f. pl.	(sound)	...ِيَات	

For the *passive participle*:

- **Form I**: after the middle radical of the sound pattern, add ...ُوٌ for verbs with final-radical و and ...ِيٌ for verbs with final-radical ي.
- **Forms II to X**: add endings after the middle radical as follows (the m.s. has two forms, indefinite and definite, both indeclinable):

m.s.	all cases	indef. ...ًى,	def. ...َى
f.s.	(regularly declined) ...ًاة		
m. dual	(regularly declined)	nom. ...ًانِ ,	acc./gen. ...َيْنِ
f. dual	(regularly declined)	nom. ...ًتَانِ ,	acc./gen. ...َتَيْنِ
m. pl.	(sound)	nom. ...ُونَ ,	acc./gen. ...ِينَ
f. pl.	(sound)	...ًات	

Verbal Noun. Form I verbal noun is irregular, as with all verb classes. For the increased forms, add the following endings after the middle radical:

Form II: ...ِيَة Form III: ...ًاء\...ًاة Forms IV, VII, VIII, X: ...ًاء
Forms V, VI: as for m. s. active participle (...ِي\... etc., see above)

114 I رَجَا يَرْجُو rajā yarjū to expect هـ, to hope for هـ, to request من، هـ\أن

رجو

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نَرْجُو		أَرْجُو		رَجَوْنَا	رَجَوْتُ
	تَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُوَانِ	تَرْجُو	رَجَوْتُمْ	رَجَوْتُمَا	رَجَوْتَ
	تَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُوَانِ	تَرْجِينَ	رَجَوْتُنَّ	رَجَوْتُمَا	رَجَوْتِ
	يَرْجُونَ	يَرْجُوَانِ	يَرْجُو	رَجَوْا	رَجَوَا	رَجَا
	يَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُوَانِ	تَرْجُو	رَجَوْنَ	رَجَتَا	رَجَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نَرْجُ		أَرْجُ	نَرْجُوَ		أَرْجُوَ
تَرْجُوا	تَرْجُوَا	تَرْجُ	تَرْجُوا	تَرْجُوَا	تَرْجُوَ
تَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُوَا	تَرْجِي	تَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُوَا	تَرْجِي
يَرْجُوا	يَرْجُوَا	يَرْجُ	يَرْجُوا	يَرْجُوَا	يَرْجُوَ
يَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُوَا	تَرْجُ	يَرْجُونَ	تَرْجُوَا	تَرْجُوَ

Verbal Noun	Participle		Imperative	
رَجَاء	رَاجٍ\الرَاجِي	أُرْجُوا	أُرْجُوَا	أُرْجُ
		أُرْجُونَ	أُرْجُوَا	أُرْجِي

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yurjā يُرْجَى **Perfect** rujiya رُجِيَ

Participle marjūw مَرْجُوّ

V/X تَرَجَّى\اِسْتَرْجَى to anticipate هـ 121/126

---

gen. رَجَاء ب\فى\ hope of, expectation of رَاجٍ\الرَّاجِي hopeful

رَجَاة\مَرْجَاة hope, expectation مَرْجُوّ expected, requested, hoped for

الرَّجَاء أن\المَرْجُوّ أن ... I/we hope that ... أَرْجَاء (inan. pl.) full extent

في أَرْجَاء البِلاَد throughout the country

الرَّجَاء الـ... Please } (+ definite

الرَّجَاء عَدَم الـ... Please do not } verbal noun)

رَجَا فَضْلاً من to ask a favour of

نسي

ه، هـ\أن

115 I نَسِيَ يَنْسَى nasiya yansā to forget

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
نَنْسَى		أَنْسَى	نَسِينَا		نَسِيتُ
تَنْسَوْنَ	تَنْسَيَانِ	تَنْسَى	نَسِيتُمْ	نَسِيتُمَا	نَسِيتَ
تَنْسَيْنَ	تَنْسَيَانِ	تَنْسَيْنَ	نَسِيتُنَّ	نَسِيتُمَا	نَسِيتِ
يَنْسَوْنَ	يَنْسَيَانِ	يَنْسَى	نَسُوا	نَسِيَا	نَسِيَ
يَنْسَيْنَ	تَنْسَيَانِ	تَنْسَى	نَسِينَ	نَسِيَتَا	نَسِيَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نَنْسَ		أَنْسَ	نَنْسَى		أَنْسَى
تَنْسَوْا	تَنْسَيَا	تَنْسَ	تَنْسَوْا	تَنْسَيَا	تَنْسَى
تَنْسَيْنَ	تَنْسَيَا	تَنْسَيْ	تَنْسَيْنَ	تَنْسَيَا	تَنْسَيْ
يَنْسَوْا	يَنْسَيَا	يَنْسَ	يَنْسَوْا	يَنْسَيَا	يَنْسَى
يَنْسَيْنَ	تَنْسَيَا	تَنْسَ	يَنْسَيْنَ	تَنْسَيَا	تَنْسَى

Verbal Noun nisyān **Participle** nāsin/an-nāsī **Imperative** insa

نِسْيَان	نَاسٍ\النَاسِي	انْسَوْا	انْسَيَا	انْسَ
		انْسَيْنَ	انْسَيَا	انْسَيْ

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yunsā يُنْسَى **Perfect** nusiya نُسِيَ

Participle mansīy مَنْسِيّ

IV أَنْسَى to make … forget ه 120

VI تَنَاسَى to pretend to forget هـ ، ه, to neglect هـ 122

نِسْيَان\نَسْي oblivion نَسِيّ forgetful, oblivious

مَنْسِيّ ج مَنْسِيَّات something forgotten غَيْرُ مَنْسِيٍّ not forgotten

نَسِيتُ أن … I forgot to …

لن أَنْسَى لُطْفَكَ أَبَداً. I shall never forget your kindness.

ما تَنْسَى لا تَنْسَ هذا. Whatever (else) you forget, do not forget this.

116 I رَمَى يَرْمِي ramā yarmī to throw ب\ه , to fire ب\ه رمي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَرْمِي		أَرْمِي	رَمَيْنَا	رَمَيْتُ
	تَرْمُونَ	تَرْمِيَانِ	تَرْمِي	رَمَيْتُمْ	رَمَيْتُمَا	رَمَيْتَ
	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِيَانِ	تَرْمِينَ	رَمَيْتُنَّ	رَمَيْتُمَا	رَمَيْتِ
	يَرْمُونَ	يَرْمِيَانِ	يَرْمِي	رَمَوْا	رَمَيَا	رَمَى
	يَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِيَانِ	تَرْمِي	رَمَيْنَ	رَمَتَا	رَمَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive		
	نَرْمِ		أَرْمِ	نَرْمِيَ		أَرْمِيَ
	تَرْمُوا	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِ	تَرْمُوا	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِيَ
	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِي
	يَرْمُوا	يَرْمِيَا	يَرْمِ	يَرْمُوا	يَرْمِيَا	يَرْمِيَ
	يَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِ	يَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِيَ

Verbal Noun ramy **Participle** rāmin/ar-rāmī **Imperative** irmi

رَمْي	راميالرامِي	ارْمُوا	ارْمِيَا	ارْمِ
		ارْمِينَ	ارْمِيَا	ارْمِي

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yurmā يُرْمَى **Perfect** rumiya رُمِيَ

Participle marmīy مَرْمِيّ

VI تَرَامَى to extend far 122, = VIII اِرْتَمَى to hurl oneself at/on على\في

124

رَمْي throwing, firing رَمْيَة throw, shot

رامي\الرامِي ج رُمَاة marksman مُتَرَامٍ\المُتَرَامِي extensive

مَرْمًى\المَرْمَى ج مَرَامٍ\المَرَامِي range, aim

117 I سَعَى يَسْعَى sa'ā yas'ā to rush, to strive for لِ\إلى, ب، إلى to slander ، to lead ... to **سعي**

ACTIVE		Imperfect		Perfect	
	نَسْعَى		أَسْعَى		سَعَيْتُ
	تَسْعَوْنَ	تَسْعَيَانِ	تَسْعَى	سَعَيْتُمْ	سَعَيْتُمَا	سَعَيْتَ
	تَسْعَيْنَ	تَسْعَيَانِ	تَسْعَيْنَ	سَعَيْتُنَّ	سَعَيْتُمَا	سَعَيْتِ
	يَسْعَوْنَ	يَسْعَيَانِ	يَسْعَى	سَعَوْا	سَعَا	سَعَى
	يَسْعَيْنَ	تَسْعَيَانِ	تَسْعَى	سَعَيْنَ	سَعَتَا	سَعَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
	نَسْعَ		أَسْعَ		نَسْعَى	أَسْعَى
	تَسْعَوْا	تَسْعَيَا	تَسْعَ	تَسْعَوْا	تَسْعَيَا	تَسْعَى
	تَسْعَيْنَ	تَسْعَيَا	تَسْعَيْ	تَسْعَيْنَ	تَسْعَيَا	تَسْعَيْ
	يَسْعَوْا	يَسْعَيَا	يَسْعَ	يَسْعَوْا	يَسْعَيَا	يَسْعَى
	يَسْعَيْنَ	تَسْعَيَا	تَسْعَ	يَسْعَيْنَ	تَسْعَيَا	تَسْعَى

Verbal Noun sa'y/si'āya **Participle** sā'in/as-sā'ī **Imperative** is'a

سَعْيٌ\سِعَايَة سَاعٍ\السَاعِي اسْعَوْا اسْعَيَا اسْعَ
اسْعَيْنَ اسْعَيَا اسْعَيْ

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yus'ā يُسعَى **Perfect** su'iya سُعِيَ
Participle mas'īy مَسْعِيٌّ

سَعْيٌ course, endeavour سِعَايَة slander

مَسْعًى\المَسْعَى ج مَسَاعٍ\المَسَاعِي endeavour

سَاعٍ\السَاعِي ج سُعَاة messenger, deliverer, slanderer

118 II رَبَّى يُرَبِّي rabbā yurabbī to educate ه, to rear ه, ه

ربو

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
			أُرَبِّي		رَبَّيْنَا	رَبَّيْتُ
			تُرَبِّي	تُرَبِّيَانِ	تُرَبِّيَانِ	تُرَبِّونَ
			تُرَبِّي	تُرَبِّيَانِ	تُرَبِّيَانِ	تُرَبِّينَ
			يُرَبِّي	يُرَبِّيَانِ	يُرَبِّيَانِ	يُرَبِّونَ
			تُرَبِّي	تُرَبِّيَانِ	تُرَبِّيَانِ	يُرَبِّينَ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
		أُرَبِّيَ		نُرَبِّيَ	
		تُرَبِّيَ	تُرَبِّيَا	تُرَبِّيَا	تُرَبِّيَ
		تُرَبِّيَ	تُرَبِّيَا	تُرَبِّيَا	تُرَبِّيَ
		يُرَبِّيَ	يُرَبِّيَا	يُرَبِّيَا	يُرَبِّيَ
		تُرَبِّيَ	تُرَبِّيَا	تُرَبِّيَا	تُرَبِّيَ

Verbal Noun		Imperative		
tarbiya	تَرْبِيَة	rabbi		
Participle murabbin/al-murabbī	مُرَبٍّ\المُرَبِّي		رَبِّيَا	رَبِّ
			رَبِّيَا	رَبِّي

PASSIVE Imperfect yurabbā يُرَبَّى Perfect rubbiya رُبِّيَ

Participle murabban/al-murabbā مُرَبًّى\المُرَبَّى

I (ربَاء) رَبَا يَرْبُو to increase intr., to exceed على\عن 114

III رَابَى to be a moneylender 119; IV أَرْبَى to increase ه 120

V تَرَبَّى to be educated, to be raised 121

تَرْبِيَة	education, upbringing	تَرْبَوِي	pedagogical
مُرَبٍّ\المُرَبِّي	educator, breeder	مُرَبِّيَة	governess
مُرَبًّى\المُرَبَّى	well-bred, jam	مُتَرَبٍّ\المُتَرَبِّي	well-bred
مُرَابٍ\المُرَابِي	moneylender	رِبَاء	excess
تَرْبِيَة الحَيَوَانَات	stockbreeding	تَرْبِيَة الدَّجَاج	poultry farming

119 III نَادَى يُنَادِي nādā yunādī to call ه, to call out to ه, to proclaim ه، هـ ندو

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نُنَادِي	أُنَادِي	نَادَيْنَا	نَادَيْتُ	
تُنَادُونَ	تُنَادِيَانِ	تُنَادِي	نَادَيْتُمْ	نَادَيْتُمَا	نَادَيْتَ
تُنَادِينَ	تُنَادِيَانِ	تُنَادِينَ	نَادَيْتُنَّ	نَادَيْتُمَا	نَادَيْتِ
يُنَادُونَ	يُنَادِيَانِ	يُنَادِي	نَادَوْا	نَادَيَا	نَادَى
يُنَادِينَ	تُنَادِيَانِ	تُنَادِي	نَادَيْنَ	نَادَتَا	نَادَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نُنَادِ	أُنَادِ	نُنَادِيَ	أُنَادِيَ		
تُنَادُوا	تُنَادِيَا	تُنَادُوا	تُنَادِيَا	تُنَادِيَ	
تُنَادِينَ	تُنَادِيَا	تُنَادِينَ	تُنَادِيَا	تُنَادِي	
يُنَادُوا	يُنَادِيَا	يُنَادُوا	يُنَادِيَا	يُنَادِيَ	
يُنَادِينَ	تُنَادِيَا	يُنَادِينَ	تُنَادِيَا	تُنَادِيَ	

Verbal Noun munādā/nidā' مُنَادَاة\نِدَاء **Imperative** nādi

Participle munādin/al-munādī مُنَادٍ\المُنَادَى

نَادِ نَادِيَا نَادُوا
نَادِي نَادِيَا نَادِينَ

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yunādā يُنَادَى **Perfect** nūdiya نُودِيَ

Participle munādan/al-munādā مُنَادًى\المُنَادَى

I (نَدْو) نَدَا يَنْدُو to call ه, to convene ه، هـ 114; I(نَدِيَ يَنْدَى (نَدًى\النَّدَى to be wet 115; II/IV نَدَّى\أَنْدَى to wet هـ 118/120

V تَنَدَّى to be wetted 121; VI/X تَنَادَى\اِسْتَنْدَى to convene intr 122/126

مُنَادَاة\نِدَاء shout, proclamation نَادٍ\النَّادِي ج أَنْدِيَة club

نَدْوَة council, club نَدًى\النَّدَى ج أَنْدَاء wetness, dew

مُنَادٍ\المُنَادِي caller, announcer نَدِي\نَدْيَان damp (noun)

مُنْتَدًى\المُنْتَدَى ج مُنْتَدَيَات assembly room دار النَّادِي clubhouse

نَادٍ رِيَاضِي sports club يُنَادِيكم ...\تُنَادِيكم ... This is ... calling.

120 IV أَعْطَى يُعْطِي 'a'ṭā yu'ṭī to give ... to ه، ه عطو

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نُعْطِي	أُعْطِي		أَعْطَيْنَا	أَعْطَيْتُ
تُعْطَوْنَ	تُعْطَيَانِ	تُعْطِي	أَعْطَيْتُمْ	أَعْطَيْتَ
تُعْطِينَ	تُعْطَيَانِ	تُعْطِينَ	أَعْطَيْتُنَّ	أَعْطَيْتِ
يُعْطَوْنَ	يُعْطَيَانِ	يُعْطِي	أَعْطَوْا	أَعْطَيَا
يُعْطِينَ	تُعْطَيَانِ	تُعْطِي	أَعْطَيْنَ	أَعْطَتَا

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نُعْطِ	أُعْطِ		نُعْطِيَ	أُعْطِيَ
تُعْطَوْا	تُعْطَيَا	تُعْطِ	تُعْطَوْا	تُعْطِيَا
تُعْطِينَ	تُعْطَيَا	تُعْطِي	تُعْطِينَ	تُعْطِيَا
يُعْطَوْا	يُعْطَيَا	يُعْطِ	يُعْطَوْا	يُعْطِيَا
يُعْطِينَ	تُعْطَيَا	تُعْطِ	يُعْطِينَ	تُعْطِيَا

Verbal Noun 'i'ṭā' إِعْطَاء Participle mu'ṭin/al-mu'ṭī مُعْطٍ\المُعْطِي Imperative 'a'ṭi

أَعْطِ أَعْطِيَا أَعْطُوا
أَعْطِي أَعْطِيَا أَعْطِينَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'ṭā يُعْطَى Perfect 'u'ṭiya أُعْطِيَ
Participle mu'ṭan/almu'ṭā مُعْطًى\المُعْطَى

V/X تَعَطَّى\اِسْتَعْطَى to beg ... for charity ◆ 121/126

---

donor مُعْطٍ\المُعْطِي donation إِعْطَاء
gift, tender عَطَاء ج أَعْطِيَة given (also in maths.) مُعْطًى\المُعْطَى
beggar مُسْتَعْطٍ\المُسْتَعْطِي begging اِسْتِعْطَاء
databank بَنْك مُعْطَيَات data مُعْطَيَات
data processing مُعَالَجَة مُعْطَيَات
tenderer مُقَدِّم عَطَاء to make an offer قَدَّم عَطَاءً
أَعْطَى الكَلِمَةَ إِلَى to give the floor to, to permit ... to speak

121 V تَلَقَّى يَتَلَقَّى talaqqā yatalaqqā to receive ه، هـ لقي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَتَلَقَّى		أَتَلَقَّى	تَلَقَّيْنَا	تَلَقَّيْتُ
	تَتَلَقَّوْنَ	تَتَلَقَّيَانِ	تَتَلَقَّى	تَلَقَّيْتُمْ	تَلَقَّيْتَ
	تَتَلَقَّيْنَ	تَتَلَقَّيَانِ	تَتَلَقَّيْنَ	تَلَقَّيْتُنَّ	تَلَقَّيْتِ
	يَتَلَقَّوْنَ	يَتَلَقَّيَانِ	يَتَلَقَّى	تَلَقَّوْا	تَلَقَّيَا	تَلَقَّى
	يَتَلَقَّيْنَ	تَتَلَقَّيَانِ	تَتَلَقَّى	تَلَقَّيْنَ	تَلَقَّتَا	تَلَقَّتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
	نَتَلَقَّ		أَتَلَقَّ	نَتَلَقَّى	أَتَلَقَّى
	تَتَلَقَّوْا	تَتَلَقَّيَا	تَتَلَقَّ	تَتَلَقَّوْا	تَتَلَقَّيَا	تَتَلَقَّى
	تَتَلَقَّيْنَ	تَتَلَقَّيَا	تَتَلَقَّيْ	تَتَلَقَّيْنَ	تَتَلَقَّيَا	تَتَلَقَّيْ
	يَتَلَقَّوْا	يَتَلَقَّيَا	يَتَلَقَّ	يَتَلَقَّوْا	يَتَلَقَّيَا	يَتَلَقَّى
	يَتَلَقَّيْنَ	تَتَلَقَّيَا	تَتَلَقَّ	يَتَلَقَّيْنَ	تَتَلَقَّيَا	تَتَلَقَّى

Verbal Noun talaqqin/at-talaqqī تَلَقٍّ\التَلَقِّي **Imperative** talaqqa

Participle mutalaqqin/al-mutalaqqī مُتَلَقٍّ\المُتَلَقِّي

تَلَقَّوْا	تَلَقَّيَا	تَلَقَّ	تَلَقَّيْ
تَلَقَّيْنَ	تَلَقَّيَا	تَلَقَّيْ	تَلَقَّيْ

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yutalaqqā يُتَلَقَّى **Perfect** tuluqqiya تُلُقِّيَ

Participle mutalaqqan/al-mutalaqqā مُتَلَقًّى\المُتَلَقَّى

I/III لَقِيَ يَلْقَى (لِقَاء)\لاَقَى to encounter ه،هـ 115/119; IV أَلْقَى to throw هـ, to recite هـ 120; VI تَلاَقَى to come together 122; VIII اِلْتَقَى to meet ب 124

لِقَاء\مُلاَقَاة\لِقَايَة encounter — إِلْقَاء throw, delivery, recital

تَلَقٍّ\التَلَقِّي receipt, reception — تَلاَقٍ\التَلاَقِي encounter

اِلْتِقَاء مع reunion with — مُلْقًى\المُلْقَى thrown, discarded

مُلْتَقًى\المُلْتَقَى ج مُلْتَقَيَات meeting-place — إلى اللِقَاء goodbye

أَلْقَى خطابًا\مُحَاضَرَةً\بَيَانًا to deliver a speech, to make a statement

أَلْقَى المسْؤُولِيَّة على to hold responsible — أَلْقَى السِّلاَح to surrender

122 VI تَعَافَى يَتَعَافَى ta'āfā yata'āfā to recover in health عفو

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
نَتَعَافَى	أَتَعَافَى			تَعَافَيْنَا	تَعَافَيْتُ
تَتَعَافَوْنَ	تَتَعَافَيَانِ	تَتَعَافَى		تَعَافَيْتُمْ	تَعَافَيْتُمَا	تَعَافَيْتَ
تَتَعَافَيْنَ	تَتَعَافَيَانِ	تَتَعَافَيْنَ		تَعَافَيْتُنَّ	تَعَافَيْتُمَا	تَعَافَيْتِ
يَتَعَافَوْنَ	يَتَعَافَيَانِ	يَتَعَافَى		تَعَافَوْا	تَعَافَيَا	تَعَافَى
يَتَعَافَيْنَ	تَتَعَافَيَانِ	تَتَعَافَى		تَعَافَيْنَ	تَعَافَتَا	تَعَافَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
نَتَعَافَ	أَتَعَافَ			نَتَعَافَى	أَتَعَافَى
تَتَعَافَوْا	تَتَعَافَيَا	تَتَعَافَ		تَتَعَافَوْا	تَتَعَافَيَا	تَتَعَافَى
تَتَعَافَيْنَ	تَتَعَافَيَا	تَتَعَافَيْ		تَتَعَافَيْنَ	تَتَعَافَيَا	تَتَعَافَيْ
يَتَعَافَوْا	يَتَعَافَيَا	يَتَعَافَ		يَتَعَافَوْا	يَتَعَافَيَا	يَتَعَافَى
يَتَعَافَيْنَ	تَتَعَافَيَا	تَتَعَافَ		يَتَعَافَيْنَ	تَتَعَافَيَا	تَتَعَافَى

Verbal Noun ta'āfin/at-ta'āfī تَعَافٍ\التَعَافِي **Imperative** ta'āfa

Participle muta'āfin/al-muta'āfī مُتَعَافٍ\المُتَعَافِي

تَعَافَوْا	تَعَافَيَا	تَعَافَ
تَعَافَيْنَ	تَعَافَيَا	تَعَافَيْ

PASSIVE° **Imperfect** yuta'āfā يُتَعَافَى **Perfect** tu'ūfiya تُعُوفِيَ

I عَفَا يَعْفُو (عَفْو) to forgive ـ عن، to excuse ... from عن، ل 114

II عَفَّى to eliminate هـ 118; III عَافَى to restore to health ه, to protect ... from ه، من, to exempt ... from ه، هـ، من\عن 119; IV أَعْفَى to dismiss ه 120; = III عَافَى 119; X اِسْتَعْفَى to ask pardon of ه 126

عَفْو pardon عَفْواً I beg your pardon, don't mention it

عَافِيَة good health عَفِي healthy

مُعَافَاة\إِعْفَاء exemption مُعَافًى\المُعَافَى من exempt from

عَافٍ\العَافِي eliminated اِسْتِعْفَاء apology

يُعْطِيكَ العَافِيَة! bravo! (reply: اللّه يَعَافِيك!) عَفْوِي spontaneous

123 VII انْقَضَى يَنْقَضِي to be concluded — قضي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَنْقَضِي	أَنْقَضِي		انْقَضَيْنَا	انْقَضَيْتُ
تَنْقَضُّونَ	تَنْقَضِيَانِ	تَنْقَضِي		انْقَضَيْتُمْ	انْقَضَيْتُمَا	انْقَضَيْتَ
تَنْقَضِينَ	تَنْقَضِيَانِ	تَنْقَضِينَ		انْقَضَيْتُنَّ	انْقَضَيْتُمَا	انْقَضَيْتِ
يَنْقَضُّونَ	يَنْقَضِيَانِ	يَنْقَضِي		انْقَضَوْا	انْقَضَيَا	انْقَضَى
يَنْقَضِيْنَ	تَنْقَضِيَانِ	تَنْقَضِي		انْقَضَيْنَ	انْقَضَتَا	انْقَضَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نَنْقَضِ		أَنْقَضِ	نَنْقَضِيَ		أَنْقَضِيَ
تَنْقَضُوا	تَنْقَضِيَا	تَنْقَضِ	تَنْقَضُوا	تَنْقَضِيَا	تَنْقَضِيَ
تَنْقَضِينَ	تَنْقَضِيَا	تَنْقَضِي	تَنْقَضِينَ	تَنْقَضِيَا	تَنْقَضِي
يَنْقَضُوا	يَنْقَضِيَا	يَنْقَضِ	يَنْقَضُوا	يَنْقَضِيَا	يَنْقَضِيَ
يَنْقَضِينَ	تَنْقَضِيَا	تَنْقَضِ	يَنْقَضِينَ	تَنْقَضِيَا	تَنْقَضِيَ

Vb. Noun inqiḍā' انْقِضَاء — **Imperative** inqaḍi

Participle munqaḍin/al-munqaḍī مُنْقَضٍ\المُنْقَضِي

انْقَضِ	انْقَضِيَا	انْقَضُوا
انْقَضِي	انْقَضِيَا	انْقَضِينَ

PASSIVE none

I قَضَى يَقْضِي (قَضَاء) to judge in favour of … against … على ... ل, to condemn على، ب, to accomplish هـ, to settle هـ 116; III قَاضَى to sue ه, to prosecute ه 119; V تَقَضَّى 121 = VII انْقَضَى 123; VI تَقَاضَى to claim from ه\من، هـ 122; VIII/X اقْتَضَى\اسْتَقْضَى to claim from هـ، ه 124/126

انْقِضَاء expiry — قَضِيَّة ج قَضَايَا case (legal), cause, issue

قَضًى\القَضَى judgment, sentence — مُقَاضَاة trial, court hearing

قَضَاء conclusion, accomplishment, court decision, jurisdiction, judiciary

قَضَائِي judicial — قَاضٍ\القَاضِي ج قُضَاة judge

مُتَقَاضٍ\المُتَقَاضِي litigant — قَاضِي الصُّلْح Justice of the Peace

124 VIII اِشْتَرَى يَشْتَرِي ishtarā yashtarī to buy ه شري

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نَشْتَرِي	أَشْتَرِي	اشْتَرَيْنَا	اشْتَرَيْتُ
تَشْتَرُونَ	تَشْتَرِيَانِ	تَشْتَرِي	اشْتَرَيْتُمْ	اشْتَرَيْتُمَا	اشْتَرَيْتَ
تَشْتَرِينَ	تَشْتَرِيَانِ	تَشْتَرِينَ	اشْتَرَيْتُنَّ	اشْتَرَيْتُمَا	اشْتَرَيْتِ
يَشْتَرُونَ	يَشْتَرِيَانِ	يَشْتَرِي	اشْتَرَوْا	اشْتَرَيَا	اشْتَرَى
يَشْتَرِينَ	تَشْتَرِيَانِ	تَشْتَرِي	اشْتَرَيْنَ	اشْتَرَتَا	اشْتَرَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
نَشْتَرِ	أَشْتَرِ		نَشْتَرِيَ	أَشْتَرِيَ
تَشْتَرُوا	تَشْتَرِيَا	تَشْتَرِ	تَشْتَرُوا	تَشْتَرِيَا	تَشْتَرِيَ
تَشْتَرِينَ	تَشْتَرِيَا	تَشْتَرِي	تَشْتَرِينَ	تَشْتَرِيَا	تَشْتَرِي
يَشْتَرُوا	يَشْتَرِيَا	يَشْتَرِ	يَشْتَرُوا	يَشْتَرِيَا	يَشْتَرِيَ
يَشْتَرِينَ	تَشْتَرِيَا	تَشْتَرِ	يَشْتَرِينَ	تَشْتَرِيَا	تَشْتَرِيَ

Verbal Noun ishtirā' اِشْتِرَاء

Imperative ishtari

اشْتَرِ	اشْتَرِيَا	اشْتَرُوا
اِشْتَرِي	اِشْتَرِيَا	اِشْتَرِينَ

Participle mushtarin/al-mushtarī مُشْتَرٍ\المُشْتَرِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yushtarā يُشْتَرَى **Perfect** ushturiya أُشْتُرِيَ

Participle mushtaran/al-mushtarā مُشْتَرًى\المُشْتَرَى

I (شِرَاء) شَرَى يَشْرِي to buy ه, to vend ه 116

اشْتِرَاء\شَرْوَة	purchase	مُشْتَرٍ\المُشْتَرِي	buyer
شَرْيٌ\الشرَى	purchase	شَارٍ\الشَارِي ج شُرَاة	buyer, vendor
شِرَاء بالتَّقْسِيط	hire purchase	قُوَّة شِرَائِيَّة	purchasing power
مُشْتَرًى\المُشْتَرَى ج مُشْتَرَيَات	purchase	شَرَى المَتَاعِب	to ask for trouble

125 VIII ادَّعَى يَدَّعِي idda'ā yadda'ī to allege ه, to accuse ... of على، ب — دعو

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	أَدَّعِي	ندَّعِي	ادَّعَيْنَا	ادَّعَيْتُ
تَدَّعُونَ	تَدَّعِيَانِ	تَدَّعِي	اَدَّعَيْتُمْ	اَدَّعَيْتُمَا	اَدَّعَيْتَ
تَدَّعِينَ	تَدَّعِيَانِ	تَدَّعِينَ	اَدَّعَيْتُنَّ	اَدَّعَيْتُمَا	اَدَّعَيْتِ
يَدَّعُونَ	يَدَّعِيَانِ	يَدَّعِي	اَدَّعَوْا	اَدَّعَيَا	اَدَّعَى
يَدَّعِينَ	تَدَّعِيَانِ	تَدَّعِي	اِدَّعَيْنَ	اِدَّعَتَا	اِدَّعَتْ
	Jussive		Subjunctive	
	أَدَّعِ	نَدَّعِ		نَدَّعِيَ	أَدَّعِيَ
تَدَّعُوا	تَدَّعِيَا	تَدَّعِ	تَدَّعُوا	تَدَّعِيَا	تَدَّعِيَ
تَدَّعِينَ	تَدَّعِيَا	تَدَّعِي	تَدَّعِينَ	تَدَّعِيَا	تَدَّعِي
يَدَّعُوا	يَدَّعِيَا	يَدَّعِ	يَدَّعُوا	يَدَّعِيَا	يَدَّعِيَ
يَدَّعِينَ	تَدَّعِيَا	تَدَّعِ	يَدَّعِينَ	تَدَّعِيَا	تَدَّعِيَ

Verbal Noun iddi'ā' اِدِّعَاء — **Imperative** idda'i

Participle mudda'in/al-mudda'ī

اِدَّعِ	اِدَّعِيَا	اِدَّعُوا
اِدَّعِي	اِدَّعِيَا	اِدَّعِينَ

مُدَّعٍ\المُدَّعِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yudda'ā يُدَّعَى — **Perfect** uddu'iya أُدُّعِيَ

Participle mudda'an/al-mudda'ā مُدَّعًى\المُدَّعَى

I/X دَعَا يَدْعُو (دُعَاء)\اِسْتَدْعَى to summon ه, to invite ه, to pray to ه, to call for إلى 114/126; III دَاعَى to challenge ه 119

اِدِّعَاء allegation, prosecution — مُدَّعٍ\المُدَّعِي plaintiff, prosecutor

مُدَّعًى عليه\المُدَّعَى عليه defendant — مُسْتَدْعٍ\المُسْتَدْعِي petitioner

دَعْوَة summons, invitation — دَعْوَى ج دَعَاوَى allegation, claim, lawsuit

دُعَاء prayer, invocation — دِعَاوَة publicity — دِعَايَة propaganda

دَاعٍ\الدَاعِي host — مَدْعُوّ guest

اِسْتِدْعَاء summons — لا دَاعِيَ لِ there is no cause for

126 X اِسْتَثْنَى يَسْتَثْنِي istathnā yastathnī to exclude from ه من، هـ من to except ه، هـ, ثَنَى

ACTIVE Imperfect				Perfect		
نَسْتَثْنِي	أَسْتَثْنِي			اِسْتَثْنَيْنَا		اِسْتَثْنَيْتُ
تَسْتَثْنُونَ	تَسْتَثْنِيَانِ	تَسْتَثْنِي		اِسْتَثْنَيْتُمْ	اِسْتَثْنَيْتُمَا	اِسْتَثْنَيْتَ
تَسْتَثْنِينَ	تَسْتَثْنِيَانِ	تَسْتَثْنِينَ		اِسْتَثْنَيْتُنَّ	اِسْتَثْنَيْتُمَا	اِسْتَثْنَيْتِ
يَسْتَثْنُونَ	يَسْتَثْنِيَانِ	يَسْتَثْنِي		اِسْتَثْنَوْا	اِسْتَثْنَيَا	اِسْتَثْنَى
يَسْتَثْنِينَ	تَسْتَثْنِيَانِ	تَسْتَثْنِي		اِسْتَثْنَيْنَ	اِسْتَثْنَتَا	اِسْتَثْنَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
نَسْتَثْنِ	أَسْتَثْنِ			نَسْتَثْنِيَ		أَسْتَثْنِيَ
تَسْتَثْنُوا	تَسْتَثْنِيَا	تَسْتَثْنِ		تَسْتَثْنُوا	تَسْتَثْنِيَا	تَسْتَثْنِيَ
تَسْتَثْنِينَ	تَسْتَثْنِيَا	تَسْتَثْنِي		تَسْتَثْنِينَ	تَسْتَثْنِيَا	تَسْتَثْنِي
يَسْتَثْنُوا	يَسْتَثْنِيَا	يَسْتَثْنِ		يَسْتَثْنُوا	يَسْتَثْنِيَا	يَسْتَثْنِيَ
يَسْتَثْنِينَ	تَسْتَثْنِيَا	تَسْتَثْنِ		يَسْتَثْنِينَ	تَسْتَثْنِيَا	تَسْتَثْنِيَ

Verbal Noun istithnā' اِسْتِثْنَاء **Imperative** istathni

Participle mustathnin/al-mustathnī مُسْتَثْنٍ\الْمُسْتَثْنِي

اِسْتَثْنِ اِسْتَثْنِيَا اِسْتَثْنُوا
اِسْتَثْنِي اِسْتَثْنِيَا اِسْتَثْنِينَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yustathnā يُسْتَثْنَى **Perfect** ustuthniya اُسْتُثْنِيَ

Participle mustathnan/al-mustathnā مُسْتَثْنًى\الْمُسْتَثْنَى

I ثَنَى يَثْنِي (ثَنْيٌ) to fold هـ 116; II ثَنَّى to double هـ, to repeat هـ 118
V تَثَنَّى to be double, to be folded 121; VII اِنْثَنَى to fold intr. 123

اِسْتِثْنَاء exception, exclusion اِسْتِثْنَائِي exceptional ثَنْي folding
مُسْتَثْنًى\الْمُسْتَثْنَى من excluded from (f) اِثْنَتَانِ، (m) اِثْنَانِ two
ثَانٍ\الثَّانِي second ثَانِيَة ج ثَوَانٍ\الثَّوَانِي a second ثَانِيًا secondly
ثَانَوِي secondary ثُنَائِي bilateral تَثْنِيَة doubling
اِنْثِنَاء bending, flexibility بِاسْتِثْنَاء with the exception of
مُثَنًّى\الْمُثَنَّى double اِسْتِثْنَائِيًّا\بِصُورَةٍ اِسْتِثْنَائِيَّة exceptionally
بدون اِسْتِثْنَاء without exception

DOUBLY WEAK VERBS

Doubly weak verbs are the fourth sub-class of the weak class. They have two weak letters as radicals. In theory this permits many variations, but in practice the patterns are limited. Most importantly, there are no common doubly weak verbs with initial-radical ي or with final-radical و .
In addition to verbs with و and ي , we also count as doubly weak those verbs which have ي as final radical and ء as one of the other radicals, or vice-versa.
In verbs which have middle-radical و or ي and final ي , the weak middle radical stabilises (i.e. keeps its consonantal form, *w* or *y*) and the conjugation is that of a defective verb.
In doubly weak verbs, each radical (sound, weak, ء) follows the rules of its own class, except that final ء sometimes behaves like a weak radical (see below).
Where the final radical is ي ,the personal endings of the tenses and the imperative, and the endings of the participles and verbal nouns, follow the appropriate defective-verb pattern, for which see pp. 161 and 162. As with the defective verbs, it is impractical to look for a perfect or imperfect stem, since the final radical often incorporates the personal ending as well.
Where the final radical is ء :

- the active participle of Form I follows the defective pattern, ending ...ئِي\...ءٍ (etc.) in the masculine singular,
- everywhere else (tenses, imperative, verbal noun, passive participles of Forms I to X, and active participles of Forms II to X), the ending is that of a final- ء verb (i.e. standard); see paras. 23, 25 and 29 to 33 of the introductory chapter.

Rare forms. In some of these verbs Form I is used only in certain forms, others being replaced by other verbs with similar meaning. A noteworthy casualty is the imperative, where we often find the root reduced to two or even one radical: examples are **127**, **129**, **130**, **131** and **132**. These imperatives are marked *, and in some cases the common modern alternative imperative is shown in the table.

127 I أَتَى يَأْتِي 'atā ya'tī to come, to bring ب

أتي

Active	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَأْتِي	آتِي	أَتَيْنَا		تَيْتُ
	تَأْتُونَ	تَأْتِيَانِ	تَأْتِي	أَتَيْتُمَا	أَتَيْتُمْ		تَيْتَ
	تَأْتِينَ	تَأْتِيَانِ	تَأْتِينَ	أَتَيْتُمَا	أَتَيْتُنَّ		تَيْتِ
	يَأْتُونَ	يَأْتِيَانِ	يَأْتِي	أَتَيَا	أَتَوْا		تَى
	يَأْتِينَ	تَأْتِيَانِ	تَأْتِي	أَتَتَا	أَتَيْنَ		تَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
	نَأْتِ	آتِ	نَأْتِيَ		آتِيَ
	تَأْتُوا	تَأْتِيَا	تَأْتِ	تَأْتُوا	تَأْتِيَا		تَأْتِيَ
	تَأْتِينَ	تَأْتِيَا	تَأْتِي	تَأْتِينَ	تَأْتِيَا		تَأْتِيَ
	يَأْتُوا	يَأْتِيَا	يَأْتِ	يَأْتُوا	يَأْتِيَا		يَأْتِيَ
	يَأْتِينَ	تَأْتِيَا	تَأْتِ	يَأْتِينَ	تَأْتِيَا		تَأْتِيَ

Verbal Noun 'ityān إِتْيَان **Participle** 'ātin/al-'ātī آتٍ\الآتِي **Imperative** (īti/ti)* ايتِ\تِ ايتِيَا\تِيَا ايتُوا\تُوا

* modern imperative: تَعَالْ (etc.) ايتِينَ\تِينَ) ايتِيَا\تِيَا ايتِي\تِي

Passive° **Imperfect** yu'tā يُؤْتَى **Perfect** 'utiya أُتِيَ

III آتَى يُؤَاتِي to favour ه, to supply with ب ،ه, 140

IV آتَى يُؤْتِي to bring to هـ ،ه 141

آتٍ\الآتِي next مُؤَاتٍ\المُؤَاتِي opportune

يُؤَاتِيهِ كُلُّ شَيْءٍ everything goes well for him

128 I أَبَى يَأْبَى 'abā ya'bā to decline ه, to deny ه أبي

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نَأْبَى	آبَى	أَبَيْنَا	أَبَيْتُ
	تَأْبَوْنَ	تَأْبَيَانِ	أَبَيْتُمْ	أَبَيْتَ
	تَأْبَيْنَ	تَأْبَيَانِ	أَبَيْتُنَّ	أَبَيْتِ
	يَأْبَوْنَ	يَأْبَيَانِ	أَبَوْا	أَبَى
	يَأْبَيْنَ	تَأْبَيَانِ	أَبَيْنَ	أَبَتْ
Jussive			**Subjunctive**	
	نَأْبَ	آبَ	نَأْبَى	آبَى
	تَأْبَوْا	تَأْبَيَا	تَأْبَوْا	تَأْبَيَا
	تَأْبَيْنَ	تَأْبَيَا	تَأْبَيْنَ	تَأْبَيَا
	يَأْبَوْا	يَأْبَيَا	يَأْبَوْا	يَأْبَيَا
	يَأْبَيْنَ	تَأْبَيَا	يَأْبَيْنَ	تَأْبَيَا

Verbal Noun 'ibā/'ibā'a إِبَاءٌ\إِبَاءَةٌ **Participle** 'ābin/al-'ābī آبٍ\الآبِي **Imperative** ība

ايبَ	ايبَيَا	ايبَوْا
اِيبَيْ	اِيبَيَا	اِيبَيْنَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'bā يُؤْبَى **Perfect** 'ubiya أُبِيَ

Participle ma'bīy مَأْبِيّ

V تَأَبَّى 145 = I أَبَى 128

إِبَاءٌ\إِبَاءَةٌ rejection, disdain آبٍ\الآبِي ج أُبَاة reluctant

أَبِيٌّ scornful

129 I وَقَى يَقِي waqā yaqī to guard ه، ه وقي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
نَقِي	أَقِي	وَقَيْنَا		وَقَيْتُ		
تَقُونَ	تَقِي	تَقِيَانِ	تَقِي	وَقَيْتُمْ	وَقَيْتُمَا	وَقَيْتَ
تَقِينَ	تَقِينَ	تَقِيَانِ	تَقِينَ	وَقَيْتُنَّ	وَقَيْتُمَا	وَقَيْتِ
يَقُونَ	يَقِي	يَقِيَانِ	يَقِي	وَقَوْا	وَقَيَا	وَقَى
يَقِينَ	تَقِي	تَقِيَانِ	تَقِي	وَقَيْنَ	وَقَتَا	وَقَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
نَقِ	أَقِ	نَقِيَ		أَقِيَ		
تَقُوا	تَقِ	تَقُوا	تَقِيَا	تَقِيَا	تَقِيَا	تَقِيَ
تَقِينَ	تَقِي	تَقِينَ	تَقِيَا	تَقِيَا	تَقِيَا	تَقِي
يَقُوا	يَقِ	يَقُوا	يَقِيَا	يَقِيَا	يَقِيَا	يَقِيَ
يَقِينَ	تَقِ	يَقِينَ	تَقِيَا	تَقِيَا	تَقِيَا	تَقِيَ

Verbal Noun waqy/wiqāya **Participle** wāqin/al-waqī **Imperative** (qi)*

وَقْي\وِقَايَة وَاقٍ\الوَقِي قُوا قِيَا (قِ

* imperative no longer used قِينَ) قِيَا قِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yūqā يُوقَى **Perfect** wuqiya وُقِيَ

Participle mawqīy مَوْقِيّ

V/VIII تَوَقَّى\اتَّقَى to be wary of ه 145/149

وَقْي\وِقَاء protection وِقَايَة precaution, prevention

وِقَائِي preventive وَقِي protective, protector

وَاقٍ\الوَاقِي protective, protector مُتَّقٍ\المُتَّقِي God-fearing

اتَّقَى اللّه to fear God الطبّ الوِقَائِي preventive medicine

الوِقَايَة المَدَنِيَّة civil defence

130 I وَلِيَ يَلِي waliya yalī to be near/next to ه، ه, to administer ه\على

ولي

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نَلِي	أَلِي	وَلِينَا	وَلِيتُ
تَلُونَ	تَلِيَانِ	تَلِي	وَلِيتُمْ	وَلِيتَ
تَلِينَ	تَلِيَانِ	تَلِينَ	وَلِيتُنَّ	وَلِيتِ
يَلُونَ	يَلِيَانِ	يَلِي	وَلُوا	وَلِيَ
يَلِينَ	تَلِيَانِ	تَلِي	وَلِينَ	وَلِيَتَا	وَلِيَتْ

	Jussive		Subjunctive	
	نَلِ	أَلِ	نَلِيَ	أَلِيَ
تَلُوا	تَلِيَا	تَلِ	تَلُوا	تَلِيَا	تَلِيَ
تَلِينَ	تَلِيَا	تَلِي	تَلِينَ	تَلِيَا	تَلِي
يَلُوا	يَلِيَا	يَلِ	يَلُوا	يَلِيَا	يَلِيَ
يَلِينَ	يَلِيَا	تَلِ	يَلِينَ	تَلِيَا	تَلِيَ

Verbal Noun wilāya **Participle** wālin/al-wālī **Imperative** (li)*

وِلَايَة وَالٍ\الوَالِي لُوا لِيَا (لِ

لِينَ) لِيَا لِي

* imperative no longer used

PASSIVE Imperfect yulā يُولَى **Perfect** wuliya وُلِيَ

Participle mawlīy مَوْلِيّ

III وَالَى to sponsor ه, to keep doing ه 139; IV أَوْلَى to entrust to ه، ه 144; V تَوَلَّى to assume office, to take charge of ه 145

VI تَوَالَى to advance intr. 146; X اِسْتَوْلَى to appropriate على 151

وِلَايَة rule, province تَوْلِيَة appointment to office اِسْتِيلَاء takeover

وَلِيّ ج أَوْلِيَاء guardian, trustee تَوَالٍ\التَوَالِي succession

كَمَا يَلِي as follows تَوَلٍّ\التَوَلِّي assumption of office

وَالٍ\الوَالِي ج وُلَاة governor مُوَالٍ\المُوَالِي supporter

الوِلَايَات المُتَّحِدَة (الأَمْرِيكِيَّة) the United States (of America)

131 I رَأَى يَرَى ra'ā yarā to see هـ, to consider ... as هـ هـ رأي

(Form I anomalous: middle ء dropped in imperfect tenses and imperative)

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَرَى	أَرَى	رَأَيْنَا		رَأَيْتُ
	تَرَوْنَ	تَرَيَانِ	تَرَى	رَأَيْتُمْ	رَأَيْتُمَا	رَأَيْتَ
	تَرَيْنَ	تَرَيَانِ	تَرَيْنَ	رَأَيْتُنَّ	رَأَيْتُمَا	رَأَيْتِ
	يَرَوْنَ	يَرَيَانِ	يَرَى	رَأَوْا	رَأَيَا	رَأَى
	يَرَيْنَ	تَرَيَانِ	تَرَى	رَأَيْنَ	رَأَتَا	رَأَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	نَرَ	أَرَ	نَرَى		أَرَى
	تَرَوْا	تَرَيَا	تَرَ	تَرَوْا	تَرَيَا	تَرَى
	تَرَيْنَ	تَرَيَا	تَرَيْ	تَرَيْنَ	تَرَيَا	تَرَيْ
	يَرَوْا	يَرَيَا	يَرَ	يَرَوْا	يَرَيَا	يَرَى
	يَرَيْنَ	تَرَيَا	تَرَ	يَرَيْنَ	تَرَيَا	تَرَى

Verbal Noun ra'y **Participle** rā'in/ar-rā'ī **Imperative** (ra)*

رَأْي رَاءٍ\الرَائِي رَوْا رَيَا (رَ

رَيْ رَيَا رَيْنَ)

* modern imperative: أُنْظُرْ (root نظر I, 1)

PASSIVE Imperfect yurā يُرَى **Perfect** ru'iya رُئِيَ

Participle mar'īy مَرْئِيّ

IV أَرَى to show to هـ، ه 142

رَأْي ج آرَاء	opinion	مَرْأًى\المَرْأَى	view	مِرَايَة	mirror
مَرْئِيّ	visible	رَاءٍ\الرَائِي	observer	رَائِيَة	viewfinder
الرَأْي العَامّ	public opinion			في رَأْيِي	in my opinion
... يا تُرَى؟	... I wonder			أَتُرَى...	I wonder ...

ما رَأْيُكَ؟ What do you think?

أَرَاهُ من وَاجِبِي أَنْ ... I think it my duty to ...

132 I جَاءَ يَجِيءُ jā'a yajī'u to come, to bring ب, to present ب — جيء

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَجِيءُ	أَجِيءُ		جِئْنَا	جِئْتُ
	تَجِيئُونَ\تَجِيئُونَ	تَجِيئَانِ	تَجِيءُ	جِئْتُمَا	جِئْتَ
	تَجِئْنَ	تَجِيئَانِ	تَجِيئِينَ	جِئْتُنَّ	جِئْتِ
	يَجِيئُونَ\يَجِيئُونَ	يَجِيئَانِ	يَجِيءُ	جَاؤُوا\جَاءُوا	جَاءَ
	يَجِئْنَ	تَجِيئَانِ	تَجِيءُ	جِئْنَ	جَاءَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
	نَجِئْ	أَجِئْ		نَجِيءَ	أَجِيءَ
	تَجِيئُوا\تَجِيئُوا	تَجِيئَا	تَجِئْ	تَجِيئُوا\تَجِيئُوا	تَجِيئَا
	تَجِئْنَ	تَجِيئِي	تَجِيئَا	تَجِئْنَ	تَجِيئِي
	يَجِيئُوا\يَجِيئُوا	يَجِيئَا	يَجِئْ	يَجِيئُوا\يَجِيئُوا	يَجِيئَا
	يَجِئْنَ	تَجِيئَا	تَجِئْ	يَجِئْنَ	تَجِيئَا

Verbal Noun majī' **Participle** jā'in/al-jā'ī **Imperative** (ji')*

(جِئْ جِيئَا جِيئُوا\جِيئُوا جَاءٍ\الجَائِي مَجِيء
جِيئِي جِيئَا جِئْنَ)

* modern imperative: تَعَالْ (etc.)

Passive° **Imperfect** yujā'u يُجَاءُ **Perfect** jī'a جِيءَ

Participle majī' مَجِيء

جَاءٍ\الجَائِي coming, next — جِئَة\مَجِيء coming, arrival

جَاءَ في الصَحِيفَة أَنَّ ... It says/said in the newspaper that ...

جِئَة وَذَهَاب coming and going — (في) الأُسْبُوع الجَائِي next week

جَاؤُوا بِاقْتِرَاح جَدِيد فِيه ... They presented a new proposal in which ...

133 I شَاءَ يَشَاءُ shā'ā yashā'u to wish هـ\أن شيأ

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect
	أَشَاءُ		شِئْتُ
	نَشَاءُ		شِئْنَا
	تَشَاءُ	تَشَاءَانِ تَشَاؤُونَ\تَشَائُونَ	شِئْتَ
	تَشَائِينَ	تَشَاءَانِ تَشَأْنَ	شِئْتِ
	يَشَاءُ	يَشَاءَانِ يَشَاؤُونَ\يَشَائُونَ	شَاءَ شَاءَا شَاؤُوا\شَاءُوا
	تَشَاءُ	تَشَاءَانِ يَشَأْنَ	شَاءَتْ شَاءَتَا شِئْنَ

Jussive			Subjunctive
	أَشَأْ		أَشَاءَ
	نَشَأْ		نَشَاءَ
	تَشَأْ	تَشَاءَا تَشَاؤُوا\تَشَائُوا	تَشَاءَ تَشَاءَا تَشَاؤُوا\تَشَائُوا
	تَشَائِي	تَشَاءَا تَشَأْنَ	تَشَائِي تَشَاءَا تَشَأْنَ
	يَشَأْ	يَشَاءَا يَشَاؤُوا\يَشَائُوا	يَشَاءَ يَشَاءَا يَشَاؤُوا\يَشَائُوا
	تَشَأْ	تَشَاءَا يَشَأْنَ	تَشَاءَ تَشَاءَا يَشَأْنَ

Verbal Noun mashī'a Participle shā'in/ash-shā'ī Imperative sha'

شَأْ	شَاءَا شَاؤُوا\شَائُوا	شَاءٍ\الشَائِي مَشِيئَة
شَائِي	شَاءَا شَأْنَ	

PASSIVE Imperfect yushā'u يُشَاءُ Perfect شِيءَ shī'a

Participle mashī' مَشِيء

شَيْء ج أَشْيَاء	thing, something	شَيْئِي	objective (adj.)
مَشِيئَة	wish	لاَشَيْئِيَّة	nothingness
أيّ شَيْء	anything	لاَ شَيْءَ	nothing
إنْ شَاء اللّه	('if God wills') I/we hope so		
ما شَاء اللّه	('whatever God wills') bravo!, God knows ...		
شَيْء من	a little (of), some (of)	لَيْس بشَيْء	it does not matter

134 I سَاءَ يَسُوءُ sā'ā yasū'u to hurt ه, to wrong ه **سوء**

ACTIVE	Imperfect				Perfect
	أَسُوءُ		سُؤْنَا		سُؤْتُ
	نَسُوءُ				
	تَسُوءُ	تَسُوءَانِ	سُؤْتُمْ		سُؤْتَ
	تَسُوءُونَ\تَسُوءَانِ	تَسُوءُونَ			
	تَسُوئِينَ	تَسُوءَانِ	سُؤْتُنَّ		سُؤْتِ
	تَسُؤْنَ				
	يَسُوءُ	يَسُوءَانِ	سَاؤُوا\سَاءُوا		سَاءَ
	يَسُوءُونَ\يَسُوءَانِ	يَسُوءُونَ			
	تَسُوءُ	تَسُوءَانِ	سُؤْنَ		سَاءَتْ
	يَسُؤْنَ				

Jussive			Subjunctive
أَسُؤْ		نَسُوءَ	أَسُوءَ
تَسُؤْ	تَسُوءَا	تَسُؤُوا\تَسُوءُوا	تَسُوءَ
تَسُوئِي	تَسُوءَا	تَسُؤْنَ	تَسُوئِي
يَسُؤْ	يَسُوءَا	يَسُؤُوا\يَسُوءُوا	يَسُوءَ
تَسُؤْ	تَسُوءَا	يَسُؤْنَ	تَسُوءَ
يَسُؤْنَ			

Verbal Noun sū' **Participle** sā'in/as-sā'ī **Imperative** su'

سُوء — سَاءٍ\السَائِي — سُوءُوا\سُوءَا — سُوءَ — سُؤْ

سُوءَ — سُوءَا — سُؤْنَ — سُوئِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yusā'u يُسَاءُ **Perfect** sī'a سِيءَ

Participle masū' مَسُوء

IV أَسَاءَ to harm هـ إلى، , to treat badly هـ ه، , to misjudge ه 143

VIII اِسْتَاءَ to be offended at من **150**

سُوء ج أَسْوَاء	injury, evil	سَوْءَة	disgrace
إِسَاءَة	offence	اسْتِيَاء	indignation
مُسِيء	offensive	مُسْتَاء من	offended at/by
سَيِّء	bad	سَيِّء الحَظّ	unlucky
سُوء الحَظّ	bad luck	لِسُوء الحَظّ	unfortunately
سُوء الإِدَارَة	mismanagement	سُوء المُعَامَلَة	ill-treatment

135 I نَوَى يَنْوِي nawā yanwī to intend هـ\أن نوي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نَنْوِي	أَنْوِي		نَوَيْنَا	نَوَيْتُ
	تَنْوُونَ	تَنْوِيَانِ	تَنْوِي	نَوَيْتُمْ	نَوَيْتَ نَوَيْتُمَا
	تَنْوِينَ	تَنْوِيَانِ	تَنْوِينَ	نَوَيْتُنَّ	نَوَيْتِ نَوَيْتُمَا
	يَنْوُونَ	يَنْوِيَانِ	يَنْوِي	نَوَوْا	نَوَى نَوَيَا
	يَنْوِينَ	تَنْوِيَانِ	تَنْوِي	نَوَيْنَ	نَوَتْ نَوَتَا
	Jussive			Subjunctive	
	نَنْوِ	أَنْوِ		نَنْوِيَ	أَنْوِيَ
	تَنْوُوا	تَنْوِيَا	تَنْوِ	تَنْوُوا	تَنْوِيَ تَنْوِيَا
	تَنْوِينَ	تَنْوِيَا	تَنْوِي	تَنْوِينَ	تَنْوِي تَنْوِيَا
	يَنْوُوا	يَنْوِيَا	يَنْوِ	يَنْوُوا	يَنْوِيَ يَنْوِيَا
	يَنْوِينَ	تَنْوِيَا	تَنْوِ	يَنْوِينَ	تَنْوِيَ تَنْوِيَا

Verbal Noun niya **Participle** nāwin/an-nāwī **Imperative** inwi

نِيَة	نَاوٍ\النَاوِي	انْوُوا	انْوِ
		اِنْوِينَ	اِنْوِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yunwā يُنْوَى **Perfect** nuwiya نُوِيَ

Participle manwīy مَنْوِيٌ

III نَاوَى to be hostile to ◂ 139; VIII اِنْتَوَى 148 = I نَوَى **135**

نِيَة	intention	نَوَاة ج نَوَيَات	core, nucleus
نَوَوِي	nuclear	مُنَاوٍ\المُنَاوِي	hostile
على نِيَة أنْ	with the intention to/of	عَقَد النِيَة أنْ	to resolve to
بَحْث نَوَوِي	nuclear research	طاقة نَوَوِيَة	nuclear energy
سلاح نَوَوِي	nuclear weapon	نَزْع الأَسْلِحَة النَوَوِيَّة	nuclear disarmament
حُسْن النِيَة	good will	سُوء النِيَة	ill will

136 I سَوِيَ يَسْوَى sawiya yaswā to equal هـ سوي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
نَسْوَى	أَسْوَى			سَوِينَا		سَوِيتُ
تَسْوَوْنَ	تَسْوَيَانِ	تَسْوَى		سَوِيتُمْ	سَوِيتُمَا	سَوِيتَ
تَسْوَيْنَ	تَسْوَيَانِ	تَسْوَيْنَ		سَوِيتُنَّ	سَوِيتُمَا	سَوِيتِ
يَسْوَوْنَ	يَسْوَيَانِ	يَسْوَى		سَوُوا	سَوِيَا	سَوِيَ
يَسْوَيْنَ	تَسْوَيَانِ	تَسْوَى		سَوِينَ	سَوِيَتَا	سَوِيَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
نَسْوَ	أَسْوَ			نَسْوَى		أَسْوَى
تَسْوَوْا	تَسْوَيَا	تَسْوَ		تَسْوَوْا	تَسْوَيَا	تَسْوَى
تَسْوَيْنَ	تَسْوَيَا	تَسْوَيْ		تَسْوَيْنَ	تَسْوَيَا	تَسْوَيْ
يَسْوَوْا	يَسْوَيَا	يَسْوَ		يَسْوَوْا	يَسْوَيَا	يَسْوَى
يَسْوَيْنَ	تَسْوَيَا	تَسْوَ		يَسْوَيْنَ	تَسْوَيَا	تَسْوَى

Verbal Noun sawan/as-sawā **Participle** sāwin/as-sāwī **Imperative** iswa

سَوًى\السَوَى	سَاوٍ\السَاوِي	اِسْوَوْا	اِسْوَيَا	اِسْوَ
		اِسْوَيْنَ	اِسْوَيَا	اِسْوَيْ

PASSIVE Imperfect yuswā يُسْوَى **Perfect** suwiya سُوِيَ

Participle maswīy مَسْوِيّ

II سَوَّى to level هـ **138**; III سَاوَى to equal هـ **139**, = I سَوِيَ **136**

VI تَسَاوَى to be balanced 146; VIII اِسْتَوَى to be(come) level/straight 148

سَوَاء equal, equality سوًى\السوَى equality تَسْوِيَة levelling, settlement

مُسَاوَاة equality مُسَاوٍ\المُسَاوِي equivalent اِسْتِوَاء straightness

اِسْتِوَائِي tropical تَسَاوٍ\التَسَاوِي equivalence لا سِيَّمَا especially

مُتَسَاوٍ\المُتَسَاوِي balanced مُسْتَوًى\المُسْتَوَى level (noun)

مُسْتَوٍ\المُسْتَوِي even سَوَى ... أم either ... or خَطّ الاِسْتِوَاء equator

مُسْتَوَى الحَيَاة standard of living رَوَاتِب مُسَاوِيَة equal pay

سِوَاهُ\سِوَاهَا except for him/her المَنَاطِق الاِسْتِوَائِيَّة the tropics

137 I حَيَّ\حَيِيَ يَحْيَا ḥayya/ḥayiya yaḥyā to live حيَّ\حيي

(after ي ,*ā* must be written ا ; it cannot be written with ى)

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect		
نَحْيَا		أَحْيَا	حَيِينَا		حَيِيتُ
تَحْيَوْنَ	تَحْيَيَانِ	تَحْيَا	حَيِيتُمْ	حَيِيتُمَا	حَيِيتَ
تَحْيَيْنَ	تَحْيَيَانِ	تَحْيَيْنَ	حَيِيتُنَّ	حَيِيتُمَا	حَيِيتِ
يَحْيَوْنَ	يَحْيَيَانِ	يَحْيَا	حَيُّوا	حَيَيَا\حَيِيَا	حَيَّ\حَيِيَ
يَحْيَيْنَ	تَحْيَيَانِ	تَحْيَا	حَيِينَ	حَيِيَتَا\حَيَيَتَا	حَيَيْتُ\حَيِيتُ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نَحْيَ		أَحْيَ	نَحْيَا		أَحْيَا
تَحْيَوْا	تَحْيَيَا	تَحْيَ	تَحْيَوْا	تَحْيَيَا	تَحْيَا
تَحْيَيْنَ	تَحْيَيَا	تَحْيَيْ	تَحْيَيْنَ	تَحْيَيَا	تَحْيَيْ
يَحْيَوْا	يَحْيَيَا	يَحْيَ	يَحْيَوْا	يَحْيَيَا	يَحْيَا
يَحْيَيْنَ	تَحْيَيَا	تَحْيَ	يَحْيَيْنَ	تَحْيَيَا	تَحْيَا

Verbal Noun ḥayā حَيَاة **Participle** not used **Imperative** iḥya

احْيَ	احْيَا	احْيَوْا
اِحْيَيْ	اِحْيَا	اِحْيَيْنَ

PASSIVE none

II حَيَّا to keep alive ه, to greet ه 138; IV أَحْيَا to (re)animate ه, to perform intr. 120; X اِسْتَحَى (for اِسْتَحْيَا) to be ashamed of من, to be embarrassed by من 126

حَيّ	live, alive	حَيَاة ج حَيَوَات	life
حَيَوِي	vital, lively	حَيَوَان	animal
تَحِيَّة	greeting	إِحْيَاء	animation, revival
حَيَاء\اسْتِحْيَاء	shame, embarrassment	حَيَّة	snake

حَدِيقَة حَيَوَانَات zoo عِلْم الحَيَوَان zoology عِلْم الحَيَاة biology

حَيَّاك اللّه God be with ('preserve') you تَحِيَّة طَيِّبَة وبَعْد Dear Sir (etc.)

138 II سَوَّى يُسَوِّي sawwā yusawwī to level هـ سوي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نُسَوِّي		أُسَوِّي		سَوَّيْنَا	سَوَّيْتُ
	تُسَوُّونَ	تُسَوِّيَانِ	تُسَوِّي	سَوَّيْتُمْ	سَوَّيْتُمَا	سَوَّيْتَ
	تُسَوِّينَ	تُسَوِّيَانِ	تُسَوِّينَ	سَوَّيْتُنَّ	سَوَّيْتُمَا	سَوَّيْتِ
	يُسَوُّونَ	يُسَوِّيَانِ	يُسَوِّي	سَوَّوْا	سَوَّيَا	سَوَّى
	يُسَوِّينَ	تُسَوِّيَانِ	تُسَوِّي	سَوَّيْنَ	سَوَّتَا	سَوَّتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
نُسَوِّ		أُسَوِّ	نُسَوِّيَ		أُسَوِّيَ
تُسَوُّوا	تُسَوِّيَا	تُسَوِّ	تُسَوُّوا	تُسَوِّيَا	تُسَوِّيَ
تُسَوِّينَ	تُسَوِّيَا	تُسَوِّي	تُسَوِّينَ	تُسَوِّيَا	تُسَوِّيَ
يُسَوُّوا	يُسَوِّيَا	يُسَوِّ	يُسَوُّوا	يُسَوِّيَا	يُسَوِّيَ
يُسَوِّينَ	يُسَوِّيَا	تُسَوِّ	يُسَوِّينَ	تُسَوِّيَا	تُسَوِّيَ

Verbal Noun taswiya تَسْوِيَة

Imperative sawwi

سَوِّ	سَوِّيَا	سَوُّوا
سَوِّي	سَوِّيَا	سَوِّينَ

Participle musawwin/al-musawwī مُسَوٍّ\المُسَوِّي

PASSIVE Imperfect yusawwā يُسَوَّى **Perfect** suwwiya سُوِّيَ

Participle musawwan/al-musawwā مُسَوًّى\المُسَوَّى

See 136

139 III سَاوَى يُسَاوِي sāwā yusāwī to equal هـ سوي

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نُسَاوِي	أُسَاوِي	سَاوَيْنَا	سَاوَيْتُ
	تُسَاوُونَ	تُسَاوِيَانِ	سَاوَيْتُمْ	سَاوَيْتَمَا	سَاوَيْتَ
	تُسَاوِينَ	تُسَاوِيَانِ	سَاوَيْتُنَّ	سَاوَيْتُمَا	سَاوَيْتِ
	يُسَاوُونَ	يُسَاوِيَانِ	يُسَاوِي	سَاوَوْا	سَاوَيَا	سَاوَى
	يُسَاوِينَ	تُسَاوِيَانِ	تُسَاوِي	سَاوَيْنَ	سَاوَتَا	سَاوَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
	نُسَاوِ	أُسَاوِ	نُسَاوِيَ	أُسَاوِيَ
	تُسَاوُوا	تُسَاوِيَا	تُسَاوُوا	تُسَاوِيَا	تُسَاوِيَ
	تُسَاوِينَ	تُسَاوِيَا	تُسَاوِينَ	تُسَاوِيَا	تُسَاوِي
	يُسَاوُوا	يُسَاوِيَا	يُسَاوُوا	يُسَاوِيَا	يُسَاوِيَ
	يُسَاوِينَ	تُسَاوِيَا	يُسَاوِينَ	تُسَاوِيَا	تُسَاوِيَ

Verbal Noun musāwā **Participle** musāwin/al-musāwī **Imperative** sāwi

	مُسَاوَاة	مُسَاوٍ\المُسَاوِي	سَاوُوا	سَاوِيَا	سَاوِ
			سَاوِينَ	سَاوِيَا	سَاوِي

PASSIVE **Imperfect** yusāwā يُسَاوَى **Perfect** sūwiya سُوِيَ

Participle musāwan/al-musāwā مُسَاوًى\المُسَاوَى

See 136

140 III آتَى يُؤَاتِي 'ātā yu'ātī to favour ه, to supply ... with ه، ب أتي

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	نُؤَاتِي	أُؤَاتِي	آتَيْنَا	آتَيْتُ
	تُؤَاتُونَ	تُؤَاتِيَانِ	آتَيْتُمَا	آتَيْتَ
	تُؤَاتِينَ	تُؤَاتِيَانِ	آتَيْتُنَّ	آتَيْتِ
	يُؤَاتُونَ	يُؤَاتِيَانِ	آتَوْا	آتَى
	يُؤَاتِينَ	تُؤَاتِيَانِ	آتَيْنَ	آتَتْ
	Jussive		Subjunctive	
	نُؤَاتِ	أُؤَاتِ	نُؤَاتِيَ	أُؤَاتِيَ
	تُؤَاتُوا	تُؤَاتِيَا	تُؤَاتُوا	تُؤَاتِيَا
	تُؤَاتِينَ	تُؤَاتِيَا	تُؤَاتِينَ	تُؤَاتِيَا
	يُؤَاتُوا	يُؤَاتِيَا	يُؤَاتُوا	يُؤَاتِيَا
	يُؤَاتِينَ	تُؤَاتِيَا	يُؤَاتِينَ	تُؤَاتِيَا

Verbal Noun mu'ātā مُؤَاتَاة Participle mu'ātin/al-mu'ātī مُؤَاتٍ\المُؤَاتِي Imperative 'āti

آتِ	آتِيَا	آتُوا
آتِي	آتِيَا	آتِينَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'ātā يُؤَاتَى Perfect 'ūtiya أُوتِيَ

Participle mu'ātan/almu'ātā مُؤَاتًى\المُؤَاتَى

See 127

141 IV آتَى يُؤْتِي 'ātā yu'tī to bring to ه، ه أتي

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
نُؤْتِي	أُوتِي		آتَيْنَا	آتَيْتُ
تُؤْتُونَ	تُؤْتِيَانِ	تُؤْتِي	آتَيْتُمْ	آتَيْتَ
تُؤْتِينَ	تُؤْتِيَانِ	تُؤْتِينَ	آتَيْتُنَّ	آتَيْتِ
يُؤْتُونَ	يُؤْتِيَانِ	يُؤْتِي	آتَوْا	آتَى
يُؤْتِينَ	تُؤْتِيَانِ	تُؤْتِي	آتَيْنَ	آتَتْ
	Jussive		Subjunctive	
نُؤْتْ	أُوتْ		نُؤْتِيَ	أُوتِيَ
تُؤْتُوا	تُؤْتَيَا	تُؤْتَ	تُؤْتُوا	تُؤْتِيَ
تُؤْتِينَ	تُؤْتَيَا	تُؤْتِي	تُؤْتِينَ	تُؤْتِيَا
يُؤْتُوا	يُؤْتَيَا	يُؤْتَ	يُؤْتُوا	يُؤْتِيَ
يُؤْتِينَ	تُؤْتَيَا	تُؤْتَ	يُؤْتِينَ	تُؤْتِيَا

Verbal Noun 'ītā' إِيتَاء Participle mu'tin/al-mu'tī مُؤْتٍ\المُؤْتِي Imperative 'āti

آتِ آتِيَا آتُوا
آتِي آتِيَا آتِينَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yu'tā يُؤْتَى Perfect 'ūtiya أُوتِيَ

Participle mu'tan/almu'tā مُؤْتًى\المُؤْتَى

See 127

142 IV أَرَى يُرِي 'arā yurī to show to ه، هـ رأي

(anomalous in Form IV: middle ء is dropped throughout)

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نُرِي	أُرِي	أَرَيْنَا		أَرَيْتُ
	تُرُونَ	تُرِيَانِ	تُرِي	أَرَيْتُمْ	أَرَيْتُمَا	أَرَيْتَ
	تُرِينَ	تُرِيَانِ	تُرِينَ	أَرَيْتُنَّ	أَرَيْتُمَا	أَرَيْتِ
	يُرُونَ	يُرِيَانِ	يُرِي	أَرَوْا	أَرَيَا	أَرَى
	يُرِينَ	تُرِيَانِ	تُرِي	أَرَيْنَ	أَرَتَا	أَرَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive		
	نُرِ	أُرِ		نُرِيَ		أُرِيَ
	تُرُوا	تُرِيَا	تُرِ	تُرُوا	تُرِيَا	تُرِيَ
	تُرِينَ	تُرِيَا	تُرِي	تُرِينَ	تُرِيَا	تُرِي
	يُرُوا	يُرِيَا	يُرِ	يُرُوا	يُرِيَا	يُرِيَ
	يُرِينَ	تُرِيَا	تُرِ	يُرِينَ	تُرِيَا	تُرِيَ

Verbal Noun 'irā'a إِرَاءَة Participle murin/al-murī مُرٍ\المُرِي Imperative 'ari

أَرِ أَرِيَا أَرُوا

أَرِي أَرِيَا أَرِينَا

PASSIVE Imperfect yurā يُرَى Perfect 'uriya أُرِيَ

Participle muran/almurā مُرًى\المُرَى

See 131

143 IV أَضَاءَ يُضِيءُ 'aḍā'a yuḍī'u to illuminate هـ, to cast light upon على ضوء

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نُضِيءُ	أُضِيءُ		أَضَأْنَا	أَضَأْتُ
	تُضِيئُونَ\تُضِيؤُونَ	تُضِيئَانِ	تُضِيءُ	أَضَأْتُمَا	أَضَأْتَ
	تُضْئْنَ	تُضِيئَانِ	تُضِيئِينَ	أَضَأْتُنَّ	أَضَأْتُمَا
	يُضِيئُونَ\يُضِيؤُونَ	يُضِيئَانِ	يُضِيءُ	أَضَاؤُوا\أَضَاءُوا	أَضَاءَ
	يُضْئْنَ	تُضِيئَانِ	تُضِيءُ	أَضَأْنَ	أَضَاءَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive	
	نُضِئْ	أُضِئْ		نُضِيءَ	أُضِيءَ
	تُضِيئُوا\تُضِيؤُوا	تُضِئْ	تُضِيئَا	تُضِيئُوا\تُضِيؤُوا	تُضِيءَ
	تُضْئْنَ	تُضِيئِي	تُضِيئَا	تُضْئْنَ	تُضِيئِي
	يُضِيئُوا\يُضِيؤُوا	يُضِئْ	يُضِيئَا	يُضِيئُوا\يُضِيؤُوا	يُضِيءَ
	يُضْئْنَ	تُضِئْ	تُضِيئَا	يُضْئْنَ	تُضِيءَ

Verbal Noun 'iḍā'a Participle muḍī' Imperative 'aḍi'

إِضَاءَة	مُضِيء	أَضِيئُوا\أَضِيؤُوا	أَضِئْ
		أَضِيئَا	أَضِيئِي
		أَضْئْنَ	

PASSIVE Imperfect yuḍā'u يُضَاءُ Perfect 'uḍī'a أُضِيءَ

Participle muḍā' مُضَاء

I (ضَوْء) ضَاءَ يَضُوءُ to shine 134, = IV أَضَاءَ 143

II ضَوَّأَ to light هـ, to illuminate 50; V تَضَوَّأَ to shine 53

X اسْتَضَاءَ to be lit, to seek enlightenment in ب 152

ضَوْء ج أَضْوَاء	light	ضَوْئِي	light- (in compounds)
إِضَاءَة	lighting	مُضِيء	bright
ضِيَاء	brightness	على ضَوْء	in the light of, in view of
ضَوْء النَّهَار	daylight	ضَوْء الشَّمْس\القَمَر	sun-, moonlight
سَنَة ضَوْئِيَّة	light-year	إِضَاءَة صِنَاعِيَّة	artificial lighting

144 IV أَوْلَى يُولِي 'awlā yūlī to entrust to ه، ه ولي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
	نُولِي	أُولِي	أَوْلَيْنَا		أَوْلَيْتُ
	تُولَوْنَ	تُولِيَانِ	تُولِي	أَوْلَيْتُمْ	أَوْلَيْتَ أَوْلَيْتِمَا
	تُولِينَ	تُولِيَانِ	تُولِينَ	أَوْلَيْتُنَّ	أَوْلَيْتِ أَوْلَيْتُمَا
	يُولَوْنَ	يُولِيَانِ	يُولِي	أَوْلَوْا	أَوْلَى أَوْلَيَا
	يُولِينَ	تُولِيَانِ	تُولِي	أَوْلَيْنَ	أَوْلَتْ أَوْلَتَا

	Jussive			Subjunctive	
	نُول	أُول		نُولِيَ	أُولِيَ
	تُولَوْا	تُولَيَا	تُولَ	تُولَوْا	تُولِيَ تُولِيَا
	تُولِينَ	تُولَيَا	تُولِي	تُولِينَ	تُولِيَ تُولِيَا
	يُولَوْا	يُولَيَا	يُولَ	يُولَوْا	يُولِيَ يُولِيَا
	يُولِينَ	تُولَيَا	تُولَ	يُولِينَ	تُولِيَ تُولِيَا

Verbal Noun 'īlā'a إِيلاءَة Participle mūlin/al-mūlī مُولٍ\المُولِي Imperative 'awli

أَوْلِ أَوْلِيَا أَوْلَوْا
أَوْلِي أَوْلِيَا أَوْلِينَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yūlā يُولَى Perfect 'ūliya أُولِيَ

Participle mūlan/al-mūlā مُولًى\ المُولَى

See 130

145 V تَوَلَّى يَتَوَلَّى tawallā yatawallā to assume/hold office, to take charge of هـ ولي

ACTIVE	Imperfect		Perfect	
	أَتَوَلَّى	نَتَوَلَّى	تَوَلَّيْتُ	تَوَلَّيْنَا
تَتَوَلَّى	تَتَوَلَّيَانِ	تَتَوَلَّوْنَ	تَوَلَّيْتَ	تَوَلَّيْتُمَا	تَوَلَّيْتُمْ
تَتَوَلَّيْنَ	تَتَوَلَّيَانِ	تَتَوَلَّيْنَ	تَوَلَّيْتِ	تَوَلَّيْتُمَا	تَوَلَّيْتُنَّ
يَتَوَلَّى	يَتَوَلَّيَانِ	يَتَوَلَّوْنَ	تَوَلَّى	تَوَلَّيَا	تَوَلَّوْا
تَتَوَلَّى	تَتَوَلَّيَانِ	يَتَوَلَّيْنَ	تَوَلَّتْ	تَوَلَّتَا	تَوَلَّيْنَ

Jussive			Subjunctive	
	أَتَوَلَّ	نَتَوَلَّ	أَتَوَلَّى	نَتَوَلَّى
تَتَوَلَّ	تَتَوَلَّيَا	تَتَوَلَّوْا	تَتَوَلَّى	تَتَوَلَّيَا	تَتَوَلَّوْا
تَتَوَلَّيْ	تَتَوَلَّيَا	تَتَوَلَّيْنَ	تَتَوَلَّيْ	تَتَوَلَّيَا	تَتَوَلَّيْنَ
يَتَوَلَّ	يَتَوَلَّيَا	يَتَوَلَّوْا	يَتَوَلَّى	يَتَوَلَّيَا	يَتَوَلَّوْا
تَتَوَلَّ	تَتَوَلَّيَا	يَتَوَلَّيْنَ	تَتَوَلَّى	تَتَوَلَّيَا	يَتَوَلَّيْنَ

Verbal Noun tawallin/at-tawallī تَوَلٍّ\التَوَلِّي **Imperative** tawalla

تَوَلَّ	تَوَلَّيَا	تَوَلَّوْا	
تَوَلَّيْ	تَوَلَّيَا	تَوَلَّيْنَ	

Participle mutawallin/al-mutawallī مُتَوَلٍّ\المُتَوَلِّي

PASSIVE Imperfect yutawallā يُتَوَلَّى **Perfect** tuwulliya تُوُلِّيَ

Participle mutawallan/al-mutawallā مُتَوَلًّى\المُتَوَلَّى

See 130

146 VI تَوَالَى يَتَوَالَى tawālā yatawālā to advance intr. ولي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نَتَوَالَى		أَتَوَالَى	تَوَالَيْنَا		تَوَالَيْتُ
	تَتَوَالَوْنَ	تَتَوَالَيَانِ	تَتَوَالَى	تَوَالَيْتُمْ	تَوَالَيْتُمَا	تَوَالَيْتَ
	تَتَوَالَيْنَ	تَتَوَالَيَانِ	تَتَوَالَيْنَ	تَوَالَيْتُنَّ	تَوَالَيْتُمَا	تَوَالَيْتِ
	يَتَوَالَوْنَ	يَتَوَالَيَانِ	يَتَوَالَى	تَوَالَوْا	تَوَالَيَا	تَوَالَى
	يَتَوَالَيْنَ	تَتَوَالَيَانِ	تَتَوَالَى	تَوَالَيْنَ	تَوَالَتَا	تَوَالَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
	نَتَوَالَ		أَتَوَالَ	نَتَوَالَى		أَتَوَالَى
	تَتَوَالَوْا	تَتَوَالَيَا	تَتَوَالَ	تَتَوَالَوْا	تَتَوَالَيَا	تَتَوَالَى
	تَتَوَالَيْنَ	تَتَوَالَيَا	تَتَوَالَيْ	تَتَوَالَيْنَ	تَتَوَالَيَا	تَتَوَالَيْ
	يَتَوَالَوْا	يَتَوَالَيَا	يَتَوَالَ	يَتَوَالَوْا	يَتَوَالَيَا	يَتَوَالَى
	يَتَوَالَيْنَ	تَتَوَالَيَا	تَتَوَالَ	يَتَوَالَيْنَ	تَتَوَالَيَا	تَتَوَالَى

Verbal Noun tawālin/at-tawālī تَوَالٍ\التَوَالِي **Imperative** tawāla

Participle mutawālin/al-mutawālī مُتَوَالٍ\المُتَوَالِي

تَوَالَوْا	تَوَالَيَا	تَوَالَ	تَوَالَيْنَ	تَوَالَيْ

Passive° **Imperfect** yutawālā يُتَوَالَى **Perfect** tuwūliya تُوُولِيَ

See 130

147 VII انْزَوَى يَنْزَوِي inzawā yanzawī to be isolated زوي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	أَنْزَوِي	انْزَوَيْنَا	نَنْزَوِي		انْزَوَيْنَا	انْزَوَيْتُ
	تَنْزَوِي	تَنْزَوِيَانِ	تَنْزَوُونَ		انْزَوَيْتُمْ	انْزَوَيْتَ
	تَنْزَوِينَ	تَنْزَوِيَانِ	تَنْزَوِينَ		انْزَوَيْتُنَّ	انْزَوَيْتِ
	يَنْزَوِي	يَنْزَوِيَانِ	يَنْزَوُونَ		انْزَوَوْا	انْزَوَيَا
	تَنْزَوِي	تَنْزَوِيَانِ	يَنْزَوِينَ		انْزَوَيْنَ	انْزَوَتَا
	Jussive			Subjunctive		
	أَنْزَوِ		نَنْزَوِ		نَنْزَوِيَ	أَنْزَوِيَ
	تَنْزَوِ	تَنْزَوِيَا	تَنْزَوُوا		تَنْزَوُوا	تَنْزَوِيَ
	تَنْزَوِي	تَنْزَوِيَا	تَنْزَوِينَ		تَنْزَوِينَ	تَنْزَوِي
	يَنْزَوِ	يَنْزَوِيَا	يَنْزَوُوا		يَنْزَوُوا	يَنْزَوِيَ
	تَنْزَوِ	تَنْزَوِيَا	يَنْزَوِينَ		يَنْزَوِينَ	تَنْزَوِيَ

Verbal Noun inziwā' انْزِوَاء **Imperative** inzawi

Participle munzawin/al-munzawī مُنْزَوٍ\المُنْزَوِي

انْزَوِ انْزَوِيَا انْزَوُوا
انْزَوِي انْزَوِيَا انْزَوِينَ

PASSIVE none

I (–) زَوَى يَزْوِي to to hide ه, to wrinkle ه 135

II/V زَوَّى\تَزَوَّى to go into seclusion 138/145

انْزِوَاء seclusion — مُنْزَوٍ\المُنْزَوِي secluded

زَاوِيَة ج زَوَايَا corner, angle — زَاوِيَة ج زَوَايَا حادّة acute angle

زَاوِيَة ج زَوَايَا مُنْفَرِجة obtuse angle — زَاوِيَة ج زَوَايَا قائمة right angle

زَوَى ما بَيْنَ عَيْنَيْهِ to frown

148 VIII اِحْتَوَى يَحْتَوِي iḥtawā yaḥtawī to contain هـ حوي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	نَحْتَوِي		أَحْتَوِي		احْتَوَيْنَا	احْتَوَيْتُ
	تَحْتَوُونَ	تَحْتَوِيَانِ	تَحْتَوِي	احْتَوَيْتُمْ	احْتَوَيْتُمَا	اِحْتَوَيْتَ
	تَحْتَوِينَ	تَحْتَوِيَانِ	تَحْتَوِينَ	اِحْتَوَيْتُنَّ	اِحْتَوَيْتُمَا	اِحْتَوَيْتِ
	يَحْتَوُونَ	يَحْتَوِيَانِ	يَحْتَوِي	اِحْتَوَوْا	اِحْتَوَيَا	اِحْتَوَى
	يَحْتَوِينَ	تَحْتَوِيَانِ	تَحْتَوِي	اِحْتَوَيْنَ	اِحْتَوَتَا	اِحْتَوَتْ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
	نَحْتَوِ		أَحْتَوِ		نَحْتَوِيَ	
	تَحْتَوُوا	تَحْتَوِيَا	تَحْتَوِ	تَحْتَوُوا	تَحْتَوِيَا	تَحْتَوِيَ
	تَحْتَوِينَ	تَحْتَوِيَا	تَحْتَوِي	تَحْتَوِينَ	تَحْتَوِيَا	تَحْتَوِي
	يَحْتَوُوا	يَحْتَوِيَا	يَحْتَوِ	يَحْتَوُوا	يَحْتَوِيَا	يَحْتَوِيَ
	يَحْتَوِينَ	تَحْتَوِيَا	تَحْتَوِ	يَحْتَوِينَ	تَحْتَوِيَا	تَحْتَوِيَ

Verbal Noun iḥtiwā' اِحْتِوَاء — Imperative iḥtawi

Participle muḥtawin/al-muḥtawī مُحْتَوٍ\المُحْتَوِي

احْتَوِ	احْتَوِيَا	احْتَوُوا
اِحْتَوِي	اِحْتَوِيَا	اِحْتَوِينَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yuḥtawā يُحْتَوَى Perfect uḥtuwiya أُحْتُوِيَ

Participle muḥtawan/al-muḥtawā مُحْتَوًى\المُحْتَوَى

I (–) حَوَى يَحْوِي to collect هـ 135, = VIII اِحْتَوَى 148; V تَحَوَّى to coil intr. 145

مُحْتَوَيَات contents حَوِيَّة ج حَوَايَا roll, (inan. pl.) intestines

149 VIII اِتَّقَى يَتَّقِي ittaqā yattaqī to be wary of هـ وقي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect	
نَتَّقِي	أَتَّقِي		اتَّقَيْنَا		قَيْتُ
تَتَّقُونَ	تَتَّقِيَانِ	تَتَّقِي	اتَّقَيْتُمْ	اتَّقَيْتُمَا	قَيْتَ
تَتَّقِينَ	تَتَّقِيَانِ	تَتَّقِينَ	اتَّقَيْتُنَّ	اتَّقَيْتُمَا	قَيْتِ
يَتَّقُونَ	يَتَّقِيَانِ	يَتَّقِي	اتَّقَوْا	اتَّقَيَا	قَى
يَتَّقِينَ	تَتَّقِيَانِ	تَتَّقِي	اتَّقَيْنَ	اتَّقَتَا	قَتْ
	Jussive			Subjunctive	
نَتَّقِ	أَتَّقِ		نَتَّقِيَ		تَّقِيَ
تَتَّقُوا	تَتَّقِيَا	تَتَّقِ	تَتَّقُوا	تَتَّقِيَا	تَّقِيَ
تَتَّقِينَ	تَتَّقِيَا	تَتَّقِي	تَتَّقِينَ	تَتَّقِيَا	تَّقِي
يَتَّقُوا	يَتَّقِيَا	يَتَّقِ	يَتَّقُوا	يَتَّقِيَا	تَّقِيَ
يَتَّقِينَ	تَتَّقِيَا	تَتَّقِ	يَتَّقِينَ	تَتَّقِيَا	تَّقِيَ

Verbal Noun ittiqā' اِتِّقَاء Participle muttaqin/al-muttaqī مُتَّقٍ\المُتَّقِي Imperative ittaq

اتَّقِيَا اتَّقُوا تَّقِ

اتَّقِيَا اتَّقِينَ تَّقِي

PASSIVE Imperfect yuttaqā يُتَّقَى Perfect uttuqiya أُتُّقِيَ

Participle muttaqan/al-muttaqā مُتَّقًى\المُتَّقَى

See 129

150 VIII **اسْتَاءَ يَسْتَاءُ** istā'ā yastā'u — **سوء**

to be offended at/by من

ACTIVE	Imperfect					Perfect
	نَسْتَاءُ		أَسْتَاءُ			اسْتَأْتُ
	تَسْتَاءُونَ\تَسْتَاؤُونَ	تَسْتَاءَانِ	تَسْتَاءُ			اسْتَأْتَا
	تَسْتَاءُونَ\يَسْتَاؤُونَ	يَسْتَاءَانِ	يَسْتَاءُ	تَسْتَائِينَ	تَسْتَائِنَّ	اسْتَأْتَمَا
	يَسْتَاءُونَ	يَسْتَاءَانِ	يَسْتَاءُ			اسْتَأْتَمْ
	يَسْتَاءُونَ\يَسْتَاؤُونَ	يَسْتَاءَانِ	يَسْتَاءُ			اسْتَأْتَمَا
	يَسْتَأْنَ	يَسْتَاءَانِ	يَسْتَاءُ			اسْتَأْتَنَّ
	نَسْتَاءُ		أَسْتَاءُ			اسْتَأْنَا
	تَسْتَاءُونَ\تَسْتَاؤُونَ	تَسْتَاءَانِ	تَسْتَاءُ			اسْتَأْتُمْ
	تَسْتَاءُونَ\يَسْتَاؤُونَ	يَسْتَاءَانِ	يَسْتَاءُ	تَسْتَائِينَ	تَسْتَائِنَّ	اسْتَأْتَمَا
	يَسْتَأْنَ	يَسْتَاءَانِ	يَسْتَاءُ			اسْتَأْتَنَّ

Jussive						Subjunctive
	نَسْتَأْ		أَسْتَأْ			نَسْتَاءَ
	تَسْتَاءُونَ\تَسْتَاؤُونَ	تَسْتَاءَا	تَسْتَأْ			تَسْتَاءُونَ\تَسْتَاؤُونَ
	تَسْتَأْنَ	تَسْتَاءَا	تَسْتَائِي			تَسْتَاءُونَ
	يَسْتَاءُونَ\يَسْتَاؤُونَ	يَسْتَاءَا	يَسْتَأْ			يَسْتَاءُونَ
	يَسْتَأْنَ	يَسْتَاءَا	يَسْتَأْ			يَسْتَاءُونَ

Verbal Noun isti'ā' **اسْتِيَاء** Participle mustā' **مُسْتَاء** Imperative ista' **اسْتَاءُونَ\اسْتَاؤُونَ** **اسْتَاءَا** **اسْتَأْنَ** **اسْتَأْ**

Passive° Imperfect yustā'u **يُسْتَاءُ** Perfect ustī'a **أُسْتِيءَ**

Participle mustā' **مُسْتَاء**

See 134

151 X اِسْتَوْفَى يَسْتَوْفِي istawfā yastawfī to exhaust ـه, to fulfil ـه وفي

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	أَسْتَوْفِي		نَسْتَوْفِي		اِسْتَوْفَيْنَا	اِسْتَوْفَيْتُ
	تَسْتَوْفِي	تَسْتَوْفِيَانِ	تَسْتَوْفُونَ	اِسْتَوْفَيْتُمْ	اِسْتَوْفَيْتُمَا	اِسْتَوْفَيْتَ
	تَسْتَوْفِينَ	تَسْتَوْفِيَانِ	تَسْتَوْفِينَ	اِسْتَوْفَيْتُنَّ	اِسْتَوْفَيْتُمَا	اِسْتَوْفَيْتِ
	يَسْتَوْفِي	يَسْتَوْفِيَانِ	يَسْتَوْفُونَ	اِسْتَوْفَوْا	اِسْتَوْفَيَا	اِسْتَوْفَى
	تَسْتَوْفِي	تَسْتَوْفِيَانِ	يَسْتَوْفِينَ	اِسْتَوْفَيْنَ	اِسْتَوْفَتَا	اِسْتَوْفَتْ

Jussive			Subjunctive		
	أَسْتَوْفِ		نَسْتَوْفِيَ		أَسْتَوْفِيَ
	تَسْتَوْفِ	تَسْتَوْفِيَا	تَسْتَوْفُوا	تَسْتَوْفِيَا	تَسْتَوْفِيَ
	تَسْتَوْفِي	تَسْتَوْفِيَا	تَسْتَوْفِينَ	تَسْتَوْفِيَا	تَسْتَوْفِي
	يَسْتَوْفِ	يَسْتَوْفِيَا	يَسْتَوْفُوا	يَسْتَوْفِيَا	يَسْتَوْفِيَ
	تَسْتَوْفِ	تَسْتَوْفِيَا	يَسْتَوْفِينَ	تَسْتَوْفِيَا	تَسْتَوْفِيَ

Verbal Noun istīfā' اِسْتِيفَاء

Participle mustawfin/al-mustawfī مُسْتَوْفٍ\الْمُسْتَوْفِي

Imperative istawfi

اِسْتَوْفِ	اِسْتَوْفِيَا	اِسْتَوْفُوا
اِسْتَوْفِي	اِسْتَوْفِيَا	اِسْتَوْفِينَ

PASSIVE Imperfect yustawfā يُسْتَوْفَى **Perfect** ustūfiya أُسْتُوفِيَ

Participle mustawfan/al-mustawfā مُسْتَوْفًى\الْمُسْتَوْفَى

I وَفَى يَفِي (وَفَاء) to fulfil ب, to compensate fully for ب 129

II وَفَّى to complete ـه, to treat exhaustively ـه 138

III وَافَى to provide for in full ب، ه 139; IV أَوْفَى to fulfil ب\ـه, to exceed على 144; V تَوَفَّى to receive in full ـه 145

---

decease	وَفَاة ج وَفَيَات	fulfilment	اِسْتِيفَاء\وَفَاء\إِيفَاء\تَوْفِيَة
faithful, abundant	وَافٍ\الْوَافِي	faithful	وَفِيّ ج أَوْفِيَة
deceased	مُتَوَفًّى\الْمُتَوَفَّى	to die	تُوُفِّيَ
		in fulfilment of, in compensation for	وَفَاءً لِ

152 X اِسْتَضَاءَ يَسْتَضِيءُ istaḍā'ā yastaḍī'u to be lit, to seek enlightenment in ب ضوء

ACTIVE	Imperfect			Perfect		
	أَسْتَضِيءُ		نَسْتَضِيءُ	اِسْتَضَأْتُ		اِسْتَضَأْنَا
تَسْتَضِيءُونَ \تَسْتَضِيئُونَ	تَسْتَضِيءُ	تَسْتَضِيئَانِ	تَسْتَضِيءُ	اِسْتَضَأْتَ	اِسْتَضَأْتُمَا	اِسْتَضَأْتُمْ
تَسْتَضِئْنَ	تَسْتَضِيئِينَ	تَسْتَضِيئَانِ	تَسْتَضِيئِينَ	اِسْتَضَأْتِ	اِسْتَضَأْتُمَا	اِسْتَضَأْتُنَّ
يَسْتَضِيءُونَ \يَسْتَضِيئُونَ	يَسْتَضِيءُ	يَسْتَضِيئَانِ	يَسْتَضِيءُ	اِسْتَضَاءَ	اِسْتَضَاءَا	اِسْتَضَاءُوا \اِسْتَضَائُوا
يَسْتَضِئْنَ	تَسْتَضِيءُ	تَسْتَضِيئَانِ	تَسْتَضِيءُ	اِسْتَضَاءَتْ	اِسْتَضَاءَتَا	اِسْتَضَأْنَ

Jussive				Subjunctive		
	أَسْتَضِئْ		نَسْتَضِئْ		أَسْتَضِيءَ	نَسْتَضِيءَ
تَسْتَضِيئُوا \تَسْتَضِيئُوا	تَسْتَضِئْ	تَسْتَضِيئَا	تَسْتَضِيئُوا \تَسْتَضِيئُوا		تَسْتَضِيءَ	تَسْتَضِيئَا
تَسْتَضِئْنَ	تَسْتَضِيئِي	تَسْتَضِيئَا	تَسْتَضِئْنَ		تَسْتَضِيئِي	تَسْتَضِيئَا
يَسْتَضِيئُوا \يَسْتَضِيئُوا	يَسْتَضِئْ	يَسْتَضِيئَا	يَسْتَضِيئُوا \يَسْتَضِيئُوا		يَسْتَضِيءَ	يَسْتَضِيئَا
يَسْتَضِئْنَ	تَسْتَضِئْ	تَسْتَضِيئَا	يَسْتَضِئْنَ		تَسْتَضِيءَ	تَسْتَضِيئَا

Verbal Noun istiḍā'a اِسْتِضَاءَةٌ

Imperative istaḍi'

اِسْتَضِئْ اِسْتَضِيئَا اِسْتَضِيئُوا \اِسْتَضِيئُوا

اِسْتَضِيئِي اِسْتَضِيئَا اِسْتَضِئْنَ

Participle mustaḍī' مُسْتَضِيءٌ

Passive° Imperfect yustaḍā'u يُسْتَضَاءُ Perfect ustuḍī'a أُسْتُضِيءَ

Participle mustaḍā' مُسْتَضَاءٌ

See 143

VERB LIST

In this list the particle 'to' is omitted from the English infinitive, for brevity.

References. A bold (**1**) reference number in the list indicates the table showing the full conjugation. A non-bold (1) reference number indicates a verb in the table with identical conjugation. An italic (*1*) reference number indicates the table giving further information about a verb.
For a few less common doubly weak verbs, two tables are quoted instead of the first one, i.e. one for each weak radical, in the order of their position in the root.

For those verbs not in any way found in the tables, the following is also shown when it is not obvious from the English (see the introductory chapter, under the paragraph number shown here):

- intr: intransitive (para. 7)
- ه : transitive for the person (para. 7)
- هـ : transitive for the thing (para. 7)
- أ : complemented verb (paras. 7 and 8)
- من (etc.): prepositional verb, with the preposition shown (para. 7)
- أن : followed by أَنْ + subjunctive verb, or verbal noun (para. 29)
- α : verb used as auxiliary (para. 34).

Verbal Nouns. The verbal noun (para. 33) is shown in parentheses for Forms I and IQ of all verbs listed. Where the verbal noun is not used, or none exists, the list shows (-).

Many of the verbs have other meanings, some less common, not shown here.

ا\أ\آ

ائتلف VIII form a coalition 34, *33*
ائتمر VIII deliberate **34**
ائتمن VIII trust 34, *27*
آب I (إِيَاب) return **89**
أباع IV offer for sale 98, *96*
ابتاع VIII buy 107, *96*
ابتدأ VIII begin **56**
أبّد II perpetuate 28
أبرأ IV absolve 52, *49*
أبطأ IV retard 52, *48*
أبطل IV foil 10
أبعد IV remove 10
أبلغ IV notify ه،عن\ب 10
أبى I (إِبَاء) refuse **128**
ابيضّ IX be/turn white **110**
أتبع IV subordinate someone to someone 10, *15*
اتّبع VIII follow, comply with **15**
اتّجه VIII be directed 80, *74*
اتّحد VIII be united 80
اتّخذ VIII take **35**
اتّسع VIII be expanded, be wide 80, *78*
اتّسم VIII be distinguished/characterised by ب 80
اتّصل VIII contact 80, *75*
اتّفق VIII agree **80**
اتّقى VIII beware **149**
أتمّ IV complete 64, *60*
أتى I (إِتْيَان) come **127**
آتى III favour, supply with **140**, IV bring **141**
أثار IV excite ه،هـ 97
أثّر II influence في\على 28
أثبت IV prove 10
أجاب IV answer 97, *112*
أجاز IV permit ه\ل، هـ 97
أجبر IV compel ه،على 10
اجتمع VIII have a meeting 14, *3*
اجتهد VIII exert oneself 14
أجر I (أَجْر) remunerate 25, *31*
أجّر II hire out 28, *31*
آجر IV hire out **31**
أجرى IV put into effect 120
أجّل II postpone 28
أجلس IV seat 10
اجمع IV agree 10, *3*
أجمل IV sum up هـ 10
أحال IV transform 97, *95*
أحبّ IV love **64**
احتاج VIII need **105**
احتاز VIII possess 105, *103*
احتال VIII deceive 105, *95*
احتجّ VIII plead, justify, object 68, *63*
احترم VIII respect 14
احتفظ VIII preserve 14
احتلّ VIII occupy 68, *67*
احتمل VIII be probable, tolerate 14
احتوى VIII contain **148**
أحدث IV bring about 10
أحضر IV bring 10
أحقّ IV be right 64, *70*

أحلّ IV release, permit, relocate 64, *67*
احمرّ IX be/turn red **22**
أحوج IV need 10, *105*
احول IX squint 109, *95*
أحيا IV (re)animate, perform 120, *137*
أخاف IV frighten 97, *90*
أخبر IV inform **10**
اختار VIII (s)elect 107
اختبر VIII do research into 14, *10*
اختصّ VIII be especially qualified/authorised 68 ب
اختلّ VIII be(come) defective/deficient 68
اختلط VIII be mixed 14
اختلف VIII differ 14
أخجل IV embarrass 10
أخذ I (أَخْذ) take 24, *30*
آخذ III blame **30**
أخّر II delay 28, *32*
أخرب IV destroy 10
أخرج IV expel, publish 10
اخضرّ IX be/turn green 22
أخطأ IV be mistaken in في 52
أخلّ IV violate 64 ب
أخلص IV be loyal/sincere to 10 ل
أخلى IV empty , vacate 120
أدار IV administer, turn هـ 97
أدام IV perpetuate 97
أدّب II educate 28

ادّحر VIII be repelled **16**
أدخل IV admit 10, *11*
أدرك IV reach هـ 10
ادّعم VIII be based on على 16
ادّعى VIII summon **125**
أدّى II lead هـ،ه, tend towards إلى, fulfil هـ 28/138
أذاع IV broadcast **98**
أذن I (إِذْن) permit ل،في 27
آذن IV urge ب،ه, foreshadow ب 31
أراح IV comfort 97, *111*
أراد IV want هـ\أن 97
ارتاح VIII rest, be content 105, *111*
ارتفع VIII rise 14
ارتقى VIII ascend هـ, climb هـ 124
ارتمى VIII hurl oneself 124, *116*
أرجع IV turn back ه،إلى 10
أرّخ II date 28
أرخص IV reduce in price هـ 10
أرسل IV send 10
أرسى IV anchor هـ, moor هـ 120
أرشد IV guide 10
أرى IV show **142**
ازداد VIII increase **108**
ازدحم VIII throng **17**
ازدوج VIII be in pairs **106**
ازرق IX be/turn blue 22

أزعج IV trouble ه 10
أساء IV harm, treat badly, misjudge 143, *134*
استاء VIII be offended **150**
استأجر X rent 36, *31*
استأجل X seek to postpone 36 هـ
استأذن X ask permission من،في, take leave of من 36
استاق VIII herd 105, *88*
استأمن X trust 36, *27*
استأنف X resume **36**
استبدّ X act arbitrarily in 70 ب
استبدل X substitute for هـ 23 ب
استبطأ X find slow 57, *48*
استبعد X single out هـ, consider unlikely هـ 23
استبقى X retain 126
استتبع X entail 23, *15*
استثبت X verify 23
استثمر X invest 23
استثنى X except **126**
استجاب X grant 111, *112*
استجمع X summarise 23, *3*
استجهل X consider stupid ه 23
استجوب X interrogate **112**
استحال X be transformed 111, *95*
استحسن X consider good 23
استحضر X send for 23
استحقّ X deserve **70**
استخبر X ask...about 23, *10*
استخدم X employ 23
استخرج X extract 23
استدعى X summon, invite, call 126, *125*
استراح X rest **111**
استرأف X beg mercy **46**
استرجى X anticipate 126, *114*
استردّ X reclaim, retrieve 70, *65*
استزاد X aim for more, demand more 113, *91*
استشار X consult ه 111
استصغر X consider small 23
استصنع X cause to be made 23, *18*
استصْوَب X approve of هـ 112
استضاء X be lit, seek enlightenment **152**
استضاف X offer hospitality to ه 113
استطاع X be able هـ\أن 111
استطلع X consult 23, *20*
استظلّ X seek the protection of 70, *59*
استظهر X show 23, *12*
استعان X ask for help 111, *101*
استعجل X hurry 23
استعدّ X be prepared ل\أن 70
استعرف X perceive 23, *2*
استعطى X beg...for charity 126, *120*
استعظم X be arrogant, consider great 23
استعفى X ask pardon of 126, *122*
استعلم X inquire about 23, *7*

استعمر X colonise 23
استعمل X use 23, *4*
استغرب X find strange 23
استغرق X last ـه 23
استغفر X beg pardon of…for ه،هـ\ل\من 23
استغلّ exploit (wrongly) 70
استغنى X do without عن 126
استفاد X benefit, inform **113**
استفسر X ask for an explanation ه،عن 23
استفهم X inquire of…about ه،هـ\عن 23
استقال X resign from من\عن 113
استقام X stand up 111, *97*
استقبل X receive **23**
استقرّ X be(come) stable 70, *62*
استقرأ X investigate **57**
استقصر X consider inadequate 23
استقضى X claim from 126, *123*
استقلّ X consider small, be independent 70
استكبر X consider big, be arrogant 23
استكتب X dictate to 23, *1*
استكثر X find excessive 23, *5*
استكشف X explore 23
استمال X become rich 111, *93*, attract 113, *94*
استمرّ X continue 70, *58*
استملك X appropriate ـه 23
استنبأ X inquire after 57, *53*
استنسب X approve of 23, *9*

استنكر X reject 23
استهلك X consume 23
استودع X store 81
استورد X import **81**
استوصف X consult (medically) 81
استوطن X settle (in a place) 81
استوفى X exhaust, fulfil **151**
استولى X appropriate 151, *130*
استوى VIII be(come) level/ straight 148, *136*
استيقظ X awake **87**
استيقن X ascertain 87, *85*
أسر I (أسْر) capture **26**
أسّس II establish 28
اسمرّ IX be/turn brown 22
اسودّ IX be/turn black **109**
أشار IV refer to إلى 97
اشتدّ VIII be(come) severe 68
اشترع VIII legislate 14
اشترك VIII participate in في 14
اشترى VIII buy **124**
اشتعل VIII catch fire 14
اشتغل VIII work 14
اشتفى VIII be cured 124
أشّر II place on record, grant a visa to على 28
أشعّ IV radiate intr./ـه 64
أشعر IV inform ه،هـ\ب 10
أشغل IV keep … busy ه 10
أصاب IV attain ـه, do well ـه 97
أصبح IV become اً 10

أصدر IV issue هـ 10
أصرّ IV insist on على 64
أصرح IV explain 10
اصطنع VIII manufacture **18**
اصفرّ IX be/turn yellow 22
أصلح IV repair هـ\من , reform هـ\من 10
أضاء IV illuminate **143**
أضاف IV add هـ 98
أضرّ IV oblige 64, *69*
أضرب IV go on strike 10, *19*
اضطرّ VIII compel **69**
اضطرب VIII clash **19**
أضعف IV weaken هـ،ه 10
اطّبع VIII be printed 20
اطّلع VIII become aware **20**
أطلع IV notify 10, *20*
أطلق IV throw 10
أظلّ IV overshadow 64, *59*
اظّلم VIII suffer wrong **21**
أظلم IV be(come) dark 10, *21*
أظهر IV show 10, *12*
أعاد IV do again هـ 97
أعان IV help 97, *101*
اعتدى VIII act aggressively 124
اعتبر VIII consider, esteem **14**
اعترف VIII acknowledge 14, *2*
اعتقد VIII believe هـ\أن , believe in ب 14
اعتمد VIII rely on على 14
أعجب IV please ه 10
أعجز IV disable ه, make impossible for ه، من 10 (NB: verbal noun إعجاز not used in this meaning; see عجّز II)
أعدّ IV prepare هـ 64
أعطى IV give to **120**
أعفى IV dismiss 120, *122*
أعلم IV notify 10, *7*
أعلن IV announce 10
أعملِ IV put to work 10, *4*
اعوجّ IX be(come) bent 109
أغار IV make jealous 98, *100*
أفاد IV benefit, inform 98, *113*
أفاض IV pour, fill, be verbose 98
افترق VIII be(come) separated 14
افتكر VIII think of في 14
أفرد IV isolate 10
أفرز IV isolate, secrete 10
أفطر IV breakfast 10
أفقر IV impoverish 10
أفلس IV be(come) bankrupt 10
أقال IV dismiss 98
أقام IV organise, rectify, raise, reside **97**
أقبل IV approach 10, *23*
اقتبل VIII receive 14, *23*
اقترح VIII propose 14
اقتضى VIII claim from 124, *123*
اقتلع VIII uproot هـ,

exterminate 14 هـ
أقرّ IV install 64, *62*
أقرض IV lend 10 ه،هـ
أكأب IV distress **42**
اكتأب VIII be sad about 45, *42*
أكتب IV dictate 10, *1*
اكتتب VIII copy 14, *1*
اكتشف VIII discover 14
اكتفى VIII be content with 124 ب
أكثر IV increase 10, *5*
أكّد II confirm **28**
أكرم IV treat with deference 10
أكفأ IV invert 52, *51*
أكل I (أكْل) eat **24**
آكل III dine with 30, *24*
أكّل II feed 28, *24*
أكمل IV complete 10
التأم VIII be mended **45**
التجأ VIII flee 56
التفّ VIII coil intr. 68
التقى VIII meet 124, *121*
التمس VIII request 14 من،هـ
التهب VIII catch fire, inflame intr. (also medical) 14
التوى VIII be bent 148
ألحق IV annex 10
ألزم IV compel 10 ه،هـ
ألغى IV cancel 120
ألف I (ألْف) be familiar with 27, *33*
ألّف II compose 28, *33*
ألقى IV throw 120, *121*

أماز IV differentiate 98, *107*
أمال IV incline 98, *94*
امتاز VIII be distinguished **107**
امتحن VIII examine 14 ه
امتدّ VIII be extended **68**
أمدّ IV provide 64, *68*
أمر I (أمْر) order 24, *34*
أمرّ IV let pass 64, *58*
أمكن IV enable 10 ه،من
أمل I (أمَل) hope **25**
أمّل II expect of 28, *25*
أملك IV assign 10 ه،هـ
أمّم II nationalise 28
أمن I (أمْن) be safe, be reliable **27**
آمن IV believe in 30, *27*
أمّن II insure 28, *27*
انباع VII be sold **104**
انبثق VII gush 13
انبجس VII gush 13
انبسط VII be(come) happy, enjoy 13 من
انتبه VIII pay attention to 14 ل\إلى
أنتج IV produce 10
انتخب VIII (s)elect 14
انتدب VIII assign 14 ه،ل
انتسب VIII belong 14, *9*
انتظر VIII wait for 14
انتقد VIII criticise 14
انتقل VIII be transferred 14
انتهز VIII seize (الـ)فرصة (the/an opportunity) 14
انتهك VIII violate 14

انتهى VIII come to an end 124
انتوى VIII intend 148, *135*
انثنى VII fold intr. 123, *126*
انجاب VII be dispelled 103, *112*
أنجز IV accomplish, implement 10
انحاز VII withdraw, join **103**
انحرف VII deviate from عن 13
انحلّ VII be solved **67**
انخفض VII be reduced 13
أنذر IV warn of ه،ب 10
أندى IV wet 120, *119*
انزوى VII be isolated **147**
انساق VII be driven 103, *88*
انسحب VII withdraw intr. 13
أنسى IV make…forget 120, *115*
أنشأ IV create, construct **52**
انضمّ VII join مع\إلى 67
انطوى VII be folded, be concealed 147
انظلم VII suffer wrong 13, *21*
انعقد VII be tied, be held (meeting etc.) 13
أنف I (أَنَف) scorn 27, *36*
انفتح VII open intr., be opened 13
انفجر VII explode 13
انفرد VII be isolated/unique 13
انفصل VII be separated from عن 13
أنفق IV spend…on هـ على 10
انقسم VII be divided 13
انقضى VII be ended **123**
انقطع VII be cut off 13
انقلب VII be overturned **13**
انكتب VII subscribe 13, *1*
أنكر IV disown 10
انكسر VII be broken 13
انكشف VII be revealed 13
انكفأ VII be repelled **55**
انهار VII collapse intr., crash intr. 103
انهزم VII be defeated 13
أنهى IV inform هـ،إلى, conclude هـ 120
أهاج IV excite هـ 98
اهتمّ VIII care for ب 68
أهّل II enable هـ،ل 28
أهمل IV neglect هـ 10
أوجب IV oblige **77**
أوجد IV bring about, accomplish 77, *71*
أوجز IV summarise 77
أوسع IV broaden 77, *78*
أوشك IV be about to على\أن 77
أوصل IV convey, connect with 77, *75*
أوصى IV entrust to ه،ب, (re-)commend to ه،ب, bequeath to ل،ب 144
أوفى IV fulfil, exceed 144, *151*
أوقع IV drop ه،هـ 77
أوقف IV bring to a stop 77

تأهّل II be(come) qualified 32
تأمّل V ponder 32, *25*
تآلف VI harmonise with **33**
تآمر VI conspire against 33, *34*
تآكل VI be eaten away, be eroded 33, *24*
تآكل V be eaten away, be eroded 32, *24*
تأكّد V be certain of 32, *28*
تأخّر V be late **32**
تأسّس V be established 32
تأسّف على V regret 32
تأصّل V be deeprooted 32
تأجّل V be postponed 32
تأثّر V be influenced 32
تابع III follow up 9, *15*

ت

بيّن II announce 94
بيّض II whiten, make a fair copy 94, *110*
بنى I (بِنَاء) build 116
بلّغ II inform of هـ، ه 7
بلغ I (بُلُوغ) reach 1
بكى I (بُكَاء) cry 116
بعد I (بُعْد) be far 5
بعث I (بَعْث) send ب\هـ، ه 3
بطّل II foil 7
بطل I (بُطْل) be(come) useless/obsolete 1
بطؤ I (بُطْء) be slow **48**
بطّأ II retard 50, *48*
بقي I (بَقَاء) remain 115 اً
بلّغ II inform of هـ، ه 7
بنى I (بِنَاء) build 116
بيّض II whiten, make a fair copy 94, *110*
بيّن II announce 94

ت

تابع III follow up 9, *15*
تأثّر V be influenced 32
تأجّل V be postponed 32
تأخّر V be late **32**
تأسّس V be established 32
تأسّف على V regret 32
تأصّل V be deeprooted 32
تأكّد V be certain of 32, *28*
تآكل V be eaten away, be eroded 32, *24*
تآكل VI be eaten away, be eroded 33, *24*
تألّف V consist of 32, *33*
تآلف VI harmonise with **33**
تآمر VI conspire against 33, *34*
تأمّل V ponder 32, *25*
تأهّل V be(come) qualified 32

أولى IV entrust to **144**
أيبس IV dry 85, *82*
ايتلف VIII form a coalition 34, *33*
ايتمر VIII deliberate **34**
ايتمن VIII trust 34, *27*
أيّد II support **29**
أيقظ IV waken 85, *86*
أيقن IV be sure **85**

ب

باحث III discuss...with في،ه 9
بادل III exchange...with هـ، ه 9
بارك III bless في\ه 9
بؤس I (بَأْس) be brave **38**
بئس I (بُؤْس) be wretched **39**
باض I (-) lay (eggs) 91, *110*
باع I (بَيْع) sell 91, *96*
بايع III make a contract with **96**
بحث I (بَحْث) look for هـ\ عن, discuss هـ 3
بخّر II evaporate هـ 7
بدأ I (بَدْء) begin 47, *56*
بدّأ II give priority 50, *56*
برّأ II absolve 50, *49*
برئ I (بَرَاءَة) be free **49**
برد I (-) file (metal) 1
برّد II chill 7
برمج IQ (بَرْمَجَة) programme 6
برهن IQ (بَرْهَنَة) prove على 6
بسّط II simplify 7

تأيّد V be supported 32, *29*
تباحث VI confer with...about 12 مع،في
تبادل VI exchange 12
تباطأ VI be slow **54**
تبايع VI conclude a deal 102, *96*
تبخّر V evaporate intr. 11
تبرّأ V clear oneself 53, *49*
تبسّم V smile 11
تبع I (يَبَع) follow, comply with 4, *15*
تبيّض V be whitened, 100, *110*
تبيّن V be(come) clear 100
تتابع VI occur successively 12, *15*
تثنّى V be double/folded 121, *126*
تجاوب VI harmonise 101, *112*
تجاور VI be adjacent to each other 101
تجدّد V be renewed 65
تجزّأ V be(come) separated 53
تجسّس V spy on على 65
تجمّد V freeze intr. 11
تجمّع V congregate 11, *3*
تجمهر IIQ crowd together 8
تجنّس V be naturalised 11
تحاجّ VI dispute with each other 66, *63*
تحادث VI converse together 12
تحارب VI wage war against each other ♦ 12
تحاول VI strive for 101, *95*
تحدّث V talk to... about ب\ إلى\مع،في 11
تحرّك V move intr. 11
تحسّس V touch 65
تحسّن V improve intr. 11
تحقّق V materialise, be convinced 65, *70*
تحوّل V be transferred/ transformed 99, *95*
تحوّى V coil 145, *148*
تحيّز V withdraw from, join 100, *103*
تخابر VI write to each other 12, *10*
تخرّج V graduate from في 11
تخصّص V specialise in في 65
تخلّى V withdraw from من\عن 121
تخوّف V fear 99, *90*
تداخل VI intervene, interfere 12, *11*
تدخّل V intervene, interfere **11**
تدرّج V proceed step by step 11
تذكّر V remember 11
ترأّس V be appointed head **43**
تراسل VI exchange letters 12
ترامى VI extend far 122, *116*
تراوح VI fluctuate 101, *111*
تربّى V be educated/reared 121, *118*
ترجم IQ (تَرْجَمَة) translate

6

ترجّى V anticipate 121, *114*
تردّد V hesitate **65**
ترشّح V catch cold, be a candidate for ل 11
ترك I (تَرْك) leave ه،هـ 1
تركّز V concentrate on في 11
تزاحم VI crowd together 12, *17*
تزاوج VI intermarry, be in pairs 101, *106*
تزايد VI intensify **102**
تزلزل IIQ quake **8**
تزوّج V get married 99, *106*
تزوّى V withdraw 145, *147*
تزيّد V increase, exaggerate 100, *91*
تساءل VI inquire about 44, *37*
تساند VI support each other 12
تساوق VI form a series 101, *88*
تساوى VI be balanced 146, *136*
تسلسل IIQ be linked together 8
تسلّم V receive 11
تسوّق V deal in the market 99, *88*
تشبّك V be entangled 11
تشرّف V be honoured 11
تصعّب V be(come) difficult 11
تصنّع V feign 11, *18*
تصوّر V imagine, be portrayed **99**
تضادّ VI oppose each other

66

تضارب VI fight one another 12, *19*
تضامن VI support each other 12
تضخّم V be(come) inflated 11
تضمّن V include 11
تضوّأ V shine 99/53, *143*
تطرّف V be(come) extreme 11
تطلّع V watch 11, *20*
تطوّر V evolve intr. 99
تظاهر VI demonstrate **12**
تظلّل V be overshadowed 65, *59*
تظلّم V complain 11, *21*
تعارف VI get to know one another 12, *2*
تعافى VI recover (health) **122**
تعامل VI do business with one another 12, *4*
تعاون VI cooperate **101**
تعجّب V be astonished at من 11
تعدّى V act aggressively toward على 121
تعرّف V become acquainted 11, *2*
تعرقل IIQ be hindered 8
تعطّل V be(come) unemployed 11
تعطّى V beg...for charity 121, *120*
تعلّق V pertain to ب 11
تعلّم V learn 11, *7*

تعهّد V advocate هـ, undertake ب 11
تعوّد V be(come) accustomed to هـ\على 99
تغاير VI be varied 102, *100*
تغيّر V change **100**
تفاءل VI be optimistic **44**
تفاوض VI negotiate with each other 101
تفرّد V be unique 11
تفرّق V become separated 11
تفسّر V be explained 11
تفضّل V deign to ب, be kind enough to ب 11
تفكّك V disintegrate 65
تفلسف IIQ philosophise, claim to be a philosopher 8
تقابل VI face each other 12, *23*
تقاتل VI fight each other 12
تقارب VI approach each other 12
تقاضى VI claim from 122, *123*
تقاطع VI part company 12
تقبّل V accept 11, *23*
تقدّم V progress 11
تقرّر V be decided 65, *62*
تقضّى V be concluded 121, *123*
تقلّب V be inverted/reversed 11, *13*
تقوّى V be strengthened 145
تكاتب VI correspond with each other 12, *1*
تكاثر VI band together 12, *5*
تكافأ VI equal each other 54, *51*
تكمّل V be completed 11
تكهرب IIQ be electrified, be electrocuted, be (electrically) charged 8
تكوّن V be composed of من 99
تلاقى VI come together 122, *121*
تلفز IQ (-) televise 6
تلفّظ V pronounce ب 11
تلفن IQ (-) telephone 6
تلقّى V receive **121**
تلوّث V be(come) polluted 99
تمّ I (تَمَام) end **60**
تمايل VI sway 102, *94*
تمدّن V be(come) civilised 11
تمركز IIQ concentrate on/in في, establish oneself in في 8
تمسّك V hold on to ب 11
تمكّن V possess من, be capable of من 11
تمّم II finish 62, *60*
تمهّد V be clear(ed), be ready 11
تمهّل V go slowly 11
تموّل V be financed, become rich 99, *93*
تميّز V be distinguished 100, *107*

توظّف V be recruited 78
توفّر V abound 78
توفّى V receive in full, (passive) die 145, *151*
توقّع V expect 78
توقّف V come to a stop 78
توقّى V be wary of 145, *129*
تولّى V be appointed **145**
تيسر V flourish 86, *83*
تيقّظ V be alert **86**
تيقّن V ascertain 86, *85*

ث

ثبّت II consolidate 7
ثقب I (ثَقْب) drill, bore 1
ثلّث II triple 7
ثلج I (-) snow 1
ثمّن II assess 7
ثنى I (ثَنْي) fold 116, *126*
ثنّى II double 118, *126*
ثور II agitate 93

ج

جاء I (مَجِيئ) come **132**
جاب I (جَوْب) wander 88, *112*
جاوب III answer 95, *112*
جاور III be adjacent to هـ،هـ 95
جدّد II renew 62
جرّ I (جَرّ) pull 58
جرّب II attempt هـ\أن , test هـ 7
جرف I (جَرْف) dredge هـ 1
جرى I (جَرْي) flow 116
جزّأ II separate هـ 50
جزى I (جَزَاء) compensate

تميّل V sway 100, *94*
تنادى VI convene 122, *119*
تنازع VI quarrel with each other 12
تنازل VI waive عن , cede ل،عن 12
تناسب VI (be) relate(d) to each other 12, *9*
تناسى VI neglect, pretend to forget 122, *115*
تناوب VI alternate في\على 101
تناول VI reach هـ , take (food/drink) هـ 101
تنبّأ V forecast **53**
تندّى V be wetted 121, *119*
تنسّق V be well-ordered 11
تنفّس V breathe 11
تنوّع V be diversified 99
تهنّأ V enjoy 53, *50*
تهوّر V collapse intr. 99
تواجه VI face each other **79**
توارث VI hold as a bequest 79, *73*
توازن VI counterbalance each other 79
تواصل VI be interconnected 79, *75*
تواضع VI humble oneself 79, *72*
توالى VI follow in succession **146**
توتّر V be(come) tense 78
توجّه V go towards 78, *74*
توسّع V expand **78**
توصّل V gain access 78, *75*

for 116 ه،ب\على
جسّ I (جَسّ) probe ـهـ, spy out ـهـ 58
جسر I (جُسُور) span 1
جفّ I (جَفَاف) be(come) dry 60
جفّف II dry ـهـ 62
جلس I (جُلُوس) sit 2
جمد I (جَمْد) freeze intr., congeal intr. 1,5
جمّد II freeze ـهـ, congeal ـهـ 7
جمع I (جَمْع) collect 3
جمّع II assemble 7,*3*
جنّس II classify 7

ح

حاجّ III dispute with 6 3
حارب III wage war with ه 9
حاز I gain 88,*103*
حافظ III preserve, maintain 9
حاكم III prosecute 9
حال I be changed, prevent 88,*95*
حامى III defend in law 119
حاور III converse with ه 95
حاول III try 9 5
حبّ I (حُبّ) love, like 60, *64*
حبس I (حَبْس) arrest ه, impede ـهـ 2
حجّ I (حَجّ) make the pilgrimage 58,*63*
حجز I (حَجْز) reserve 1,2
حدّ I (حَدّ) limit 58
حدث I (حُدُوث) happen 1
حدّد II demarcate, determine 62
حرّر II liberate, edit 62
حرس I (حَرْس) guard 1
حرّض II incite to 7 ه، على
حرق I (حَرْق) burn 2
حرّك II move ـهـ 7
حرم I (حِرْم) withhold 4 ه\من،هـ\مِن
حزم I (حَزْم) pack ـهـ, wrap ـهـ 2
حسّ I (حَسّ) feel 58
حسب I (حِسَاب) calculate 1
حسّن II improve ـهـ 7
حصل I (حُصُول) attain على 1
حضر I (حُضُور) attend 1
حضّر II prepare ـهـ 7
حطّ I (حَطّ) put 58
حظر I (حَظْر) forbid على،هـ 1
حفر I (حَفْر) drill 2
حفز I (حَفْز) incite ه،على\إلى 2
حفظ I (حِفْظ) preserve 4
حقّ I (حَقّ) be true 60,*70*
حقّق II realise, implement, confirm 62,*70*
حكم I (حُكْم) pass judgment في\على 1
حكى I (حِكَايَة) narrate 116
حلّ I solve 58,*67*
حلّل II analyse, absolve, permit 62,*67*
حمّر II make red, roast, fry 7,*22*
حمل I (حَمْل) carry 2

حمّل II charge with (a task) ه،هـ, charge (a battery) هـ 7
حمى I (حِمَايَة) defend 116
حنى I (-) bend intr. 116
حوّل II transfer, transform 93, *95*
حوى I (-) collect 135, *148*
حيّ\حيي I (حَيَاة) live **137**
حيّا II keep alive, greet 138, *137*

خ

خابر III write to 9, *10*
خاط I (خَيْط) sew 91
خاف I (خَوْف) fear **90**
خالف III conflict with هـ،ه 9
خبر I (خِبْرَة) test, experience 1, *10*
خبّر II notify 7, *10*
خبط I (خَبْط) strike هـ, knock against هـ 2
خجّل II embarrass 7
خرب I (خَرَاب) fall into ruin 4
خرّب II destroy 7
خرج I (خُرُوج) go out 1
خرق I (خَرْق) pierce, infringe 1, 2
خزن I (خَزْن) store هـ 1
خزّن II store 7
خسر I (خَسَارَة) lose 4
خصّص II specify 7
خصم I (خَصْم) deduct هـ, discount هـ 2
خطّ I (خَطّ) draw (a line) 58
خطّط II delineate, plan 62
خفّض II reduce هـ 7
خفّف II lighten 62
خلّص II rectify, free from ه عن 7
خلط I (خَلْط) mix هـ 2
خلّى II release 118
خوّف II frighten 93, *90*

د

دار I (دَوْر) turn intr. 88
دافع III resist هـ،ه, defend عن 9
داعى III challenge 119, *125*
دان I (دَيْن) owe ل،ب 91
دبّر II arrange 7
دحر I (دَحْر) repel 3, *16*
دخل I (دُخُول) enter 1, *11*
دخّل II insert 7, *11*
دخّن II smoke 7
درّب II train 7
درج I (دُرُوج) proceed, be obsolete/extinct 1
درّج II grade هـ, circulate هـ, insert هـ 7
درس I (دَرْس) study 1
درّس II teach 7
دعا I (دُعَاء) call, pray to 114, *125*
دعم I (دَعْم) support هـ 3
دفع I (دَفْع) push 3
دقّ I (دَقّ) hammer هـ, pound هـ 60
دقّق II check هـ 7
دلّ I (دَلَالَة) indicate 58
دوّر II turn هـ 93

ذ

ذاع I (ذُيُوع) spread 91, *98*
ذكر I (ذِكْر) mention 1

ذكّر II remind of ه،ب 7
ذهب I (ذَهَاب) go 3

ر

رابى III be a moneylender 119, *118*
راجع III review هـ, revise هـ 9
راح I (رَوَاح) depart 88, *111*
رأس I (رِئَاسَة) head 37, *40*
رأّس II appoint as head **40**
راسل III correspond with ه 9
رؤف I (رَأْفَة) show mercy to 38, *46*
رافق III accompany 9
راقب III oversee هـ،ه 9
راهن III bet with هـ\عند،ه 9
رأى I (رَأْي) see, consider as **131**
ربا I (رَبَاء) increase, exceed 114, *118*
ربح I (رِبْح) gain 4
ربط I (رَبْط) tie up 1
ربّى II educate **118**
رتّب II arrange in order 7
رتج I (رَتْج) bolt هـ 1
رج I (رَج) shake هـ 58
رجا I expect, hope for, request **114**
رجع I (رُجُوع) come/go back 2
رحّب II welcome ب 7
رخّص II allow ل،ب\في 7
ردّ I (رَدّ) give back to 58, *65*
ردّد II repel 62, *65*
رسا I (رَسْو) be firm, anchor intr., moor intr. 114
رسب I (رُسُوب) sink, fail intr. (examination) 1
رسم I (رَسْم) draw 1
رشح I (رَشْح) sweat, leak 3
رصّد II earmark (funds etc.) هـ, balance (account etc.) هـ 7
رضي I (رِضًى\الرِضَى) approve of ب 115
رغب I (رَغْبَة) want في 4
رفض I (رَفْض) refuse, withhold 2, 1
رفع I (رَفْع) raise 3
رقب I (رَقَابَة) supervise هـ 1
رقص I (رَقْص) dance 1
رقي I (رَقْي) climb هـ 115
رقّى II promote ه 118
ركب I (رُكُوب) mount 4
ركّب II assemble هـ 7
ركم I (رَكْم) amass هـ 1
ركن I (رُكُون) lean on هـ, rely on هـ،ه 1
رمّ I (رَمّ) overhaul 58, 60
رمز I (رَمْز) symbolise إلى 1, 2
رمى I (رَمْي) throw **116**
رهن I (رَهْن) pledge (as security) هـ, mortgage هـ 3
روّح II revive 93, *111*
روّض II tame 93

ساق I (سِيَاقَة) drive **88**
ساءل III question **41**
سأل I (سُؤَال\مَسْأَلَة) ask (enquire) **37**
سال I (سَيْل) flow, melt intr. 91
ساوق III accompany 95, *88*
ساوى III equal **139**
سبق I (سَبْق) precede ه،هـ 1,2
سجّل II record 7
سحب I (سَحْب) drag 3
سخّن II heat هـ 7
سدّ I (سَدّ) plug 58
سدّد II guide ه 62
سرّ I (سُرُور) please 58
سرّح II dismiss ه 7
سرّع II accelerate هـ 7
سرق I (سَرِقَة) steal 2
سعى I (سَعْي) strive **117**
سقط I (سُقُوط) fall 1
سقى I (سَقْي) water, irrigate 116
سكت I (سُكُوت) be silent 1
سكن I (سُكُون) live 1
سلب I (سَلْب) steal from ه،هـ\من , rob of ه،هـ\من 1
سلّح II arm...with ه،هـ 7
سلسل IQ (-) link together with هـ ب 6
سلّم II greet على 7
سمح I (سَمَاح) permit ل، ب\ل\أن 3, be generous 5
سمسر IQ (سَمْسَرَة) act as

سوى I (رِوَايَة) tell ل،هـ 135
سوّى II irrigate 138
ريح II rest 94, *111*

ز

زاحم III jostle 9, *17*
زاد I (زِيَادَة) increase **91**
زار I (زِيَارَة) visit 88
زال I (زَيْل) stop doing, stop being α\أ 90
زاوج III pair, join in marriage 95, *106*
زايد III outbid 96, *91*
زحم I (زَحْم) jostle 3, *17*
زرع I (زَرْع) cultivate 3
زلزل IQ (زِلْزَال) shake 6, *8*
زلق I (زَلَق\زَلَق) slip 1,4
زلّق II lubricate 7
زوّج II pair 93, *106*
زوّد II supply 93
زوّر II counterfeit هـ 93
زوى I (-) hide, wrinkle 135, *147*
زوّى II go into seclusion 138, *147*
زيّت II lubricate, oil 94
زيّد II increase 94, *91*
زيّن II embellish 94

س

ساء I (سُوء) hurt, wrong **134**
سار I (سَيْر) run intr. (of a machine), move intr. 91
سارع III hurry intr. 9
ساعد III help 9
سافر III travel 9

broker 6
سمع I (سَمْع) hear 4
سمّى II name 118
سنّ I (سَنّ) sharpen ـه 58
سنّن II sharpen ـه 62
سهّل II facilitate 7
سوّد II blacken, draft 93, *109*
سوّق II market 93, *88*
سوي I (سَوَى\السَّوَى) equal **136**
سوّى II equalise **138**
سير II steer, propel 94
سيطر IQ (سَيْطَرَة) dominate على 6
سيّل II make flow, liquefy ـه, melt ـه 94

ش

شاء I (مَشِيئَة) wish **133**
شارك III share with ـه،ـه 9 في
شاهد III witness 9
شاور III consult ه 95
شبك I (شَبْك) entangle 2
شبّك II entangle 7
شجّع II encourage ه 7
شحّم II grease, lubricate 7
شحن I (شَحْن) load with 3 ـه ـب
شدّ I (شِدّة) be firm 60, (شَدّ) strengthen ـه،ـه, make firm ـه،ـه 58
شدّد II strengthen 62
شرب I (شُرْب) drink 4
شرح I (شَرْح) explain 3
شرط I (شَرْط) stipulate 1,2
شرع I (شُرُوع) begin to α 3
شرّف II honour ه 7
شرى I (شِرَاء) buy, vend 116, *124*
شعّل II set on fire 7
شغب I (شَغْب) cause a riot/ dissension 3,4
شغر I (شُغُور) be vacant 1
شغل I (شُغْل) busy ه 3
شغّل II keep ... busy ه, operate ـه (a machine) 7
شفي I (شِفَاء) heal ه 116
شكّ I (شَكّ) doubt في 58
شكا I (شِكَايَة) complain about to ه\من،ـه\من 114
شكر I (شُكْر) thank for 1 ه،ـه\ل\على
شكّل II constitute 7
شمل I (شَمْل) comprise 4
شهد I (شُهُود) witness 4

ص

صاد I (صَيْد) hunt 91
صادق III authenticate على 9
صادر III confiscate ـه 9
صار I (مَصِير) become α\أ 91
صام I (صَوْم) fast 88
صان I (صِيَانَة) maintain 88
صبّ I (صَبّ) pour 58
صحّ I (صِحّة) be healthy 60

ضخّ I (ضَخّ) pump ـهـ 58
ضخّم II inflate ـهـ 7
ضرّ I (ضَرّ) damage 58, *69*
ضرب I (ضَرْب) strike, multiply 2, *19*
ضغط I (ضَغْط) (com)press 3
ضمّ I (ضَمّ) assemble ـهـ،ه 58
ضمن I (ضَمَان) guarantee ـهـ،ل 4
ضوّأ II light, illuminate 93/50, *143*
ضيّع II waste ـهـ 94

ط

طار I (طَيَرَان) fly 91
طال I (طُول) be(come) long 88
طالع III examine 9, *20*
طبخ I (طَبْخ) cook 1, 3
طبع I (طَبْع) print 3
طبّق II apply to إلى ـهـ 7
طرق I (طَرْق) reach ـهـ, hammer ـهـ, pound ـهـ 1
طفح I (طَفْح) overflow 3
طلب I (طَلَب) request from من،ـهـ 1
طلع I (طُلُوع) rise, climb, mount 1, *20*
طوّر II develop ـهـ،ه 93
طوّق II encircle, embrace 93
طوّل II lengthen 93
طوى I (طَيّ) fold ـهـ, conceal ـهـ, contain ـهـ 135

صحّح II attest ـهـ, correct ه 62
صدر I (صُدُور) emanate عن\من from 1, 2
صدّر II export ـهـ 7
صدّق II believe ـهـ،ه 7
صرّح II explain ـهـ, announce ب, authorise ل،ب 7
صرّف II exchange (money) ـهـ, market ـهـ, drain (land) ـهـ 7
صعّب II make difficult 7
صفّى II clarify ـهـ, filter ـهـ 118
صلّى II pray 118
صمّم II resolve (to do) على 62
صنع I (صَنْع\صُنْع) contrive 3, *18*
صنّع II industrialise 7, *18*
صنّف II sort ـهـ 7
صوّت II vote 93
صوّر II depict, photograph 93, *99*

ض

ضاء I (ضَوْء) shine 134, *143*
ضادّ III oppose 63, *66*
ضارب III fight with 9, *19*
ضاع I (ضَيْع) get lost 91
ضبر I (-) file (papers) 1
ضبط I (ضَبْط) control ـهـ،ه, arrest ه, adjust ـهـ 1, 2
ضحك I (ضَحْك) laugh at من\ب 4

ظ

ظلّ I (ظَلَّ) remain **59**

ظلّل II overshadow 62, *59*

ظلم I (ظَلَمَ\ظُلْم) oppress 2, *21*

ظنّ I (ظَنَّ) think 58

ظهر I (ظُهُور) appear 3, *12*

ع

عاد I (عَوْد) come back, do again α, (neg.) do no longer α, (neg.) be no longer أ 88

عادل III equal ـهـ،ه, (counter)balance 9

عارض III resist ه،ـهـ 9

عاز I (عَوْز) need ـهـ, lack ـهـ 88

عاش I (مَعِيشَة) live 91

عافى III restore to health, protect 119, *122*

عالج III treat (medically) ه،ـهـ 9

عام I (عَوْم) float intr. 88

عامل III treat 9, *4*

عاون III help 95, *101*

عبر I (عَبْر\عُبُور) cross 1, *14*

عبّر II express 7, *14*

عجّز II disable ه 7

عجل I (عَجَلَة) be in a hurry 4

عدّ I (عَدّ) count 58

عدا I (عُدْوَان) act aggressively toward على 114

عدّل II adjust ـهـ 7

عرض I (عَرْض) be(come) broad 5, appear, demonstrate ـهـ, offer ـهـ 2

عرف II know **2**

عرّف II acquaint with 7, *2*

عرقل IQ (عَرْقَلَة) hinder 6

عزل I (عَزْل) dismiss 2

عصر I (عَصْر) squeeze, wring 2

عطّل II put out of action 7

عفا I (عَفْو) forgive 114, *122*

عقد I (عَقْد) tie, hold (meeting etc.) 2

عقّد II complicate 7

عكس I (عَكْس) reverse ـهـ, reflect ـهـ 2

علق I (عَلَق) hang intr., be caught on في\ب 4

علّق II hang on على\ب\ـهـ 7

علم I (عِلْم) know 4, *7*

علّم II teach **7**

عمّر II overhaul 7

عمل I (عَمَل) do **4**

عمّم II generalise ـهـ 7

عنى I (عَنْي) mean ـهـ،ه 116

عهد I (عَهْد) know well ـهـ،ه, entrust to إلى،ب 4

عهّد II promise ه،على\ب 7

عوّض II compensate for ه عن\من،ـهـ عن\من 93

عوّق II hinder 93

عوّم II launch, float ـهـ ,

فرّج II show ه،على 7
فرد I (فُرُود) be alone/ unique 1,5
فرغ I (فُرُوغ) be empty 1,4
فرّغ II empty هـ 7
فرق I (فَرْق) separate هـ 1
فسّر II explain 7
فشل I (فَشَل) fail 4
فصل I (فَصْل) separate ه،هـ 2
فصّل II set out in detail 7
فضا I (فَضَاء) be empty 114
فضّل II favour 7
فعل I (فِعْل) do 3
فكّ I (فَكّ) dismantle 58
فكّر II think of في 7
فهرس IQ (فَهْرَسَة) index هـ 6
فهم I (فَهْم) understand 4
فهّم II make ... understand ه،هـ 7
فوّض II empower ل\الى 93

ق

قابل III face 9,*23*
قاتل III fight with ه 9
قاد I (قِيَادَة) lead 88
قارن III compare ه،هـ ب؛ بين ...وبين 9
قاس I (قِيس) measure 91
قاضى III prosecute, sue 119, *123*
قال I (قَوْل) say 88
قام I (قِيَامَة\قَوْمَة) rise, take charge of, undertake 88, *97*

buoy up 93
عيّن II determine هـ, appoint هـ 94

غ

غاب I (غِيَاب) be absent 91
غادر III leave ه،هـ 9
غار I (غَيْرَة) be jealous 91, *100*
غامر III risk 9
غاير III differ from, compete with 96,*100*
غذّى II feed ه،هـ 118
غسل I (غَسْل) wash هـ 2
غضب I (غَضَب) be(come) angry with ن\على 4
غلق I (غَلْق) lock, bolt 2
غمر I (غَمَارَة) overflow 5, (غَمْر) flood هـ 1
غنّى II sing to ه،هـ 118
غيّر II change 94,*100*

ف

فات I (فَوْت) elude ه،أن 88
فاض I (فَيْض) (over)flow 91
فاق I (فَوْق) surpass 88
فاوض III negotiate with ... ه\مع،هـ\في about 95
فتح I (فَتْح) open 3
فتّش II inspect 7
فحص I (فَحْص) examine 3
فخر I (فَخْر) be proud of ب 3, (فَخَر) despise 4

قاوم III resist 95, *97*
قبل I (قَبُول\قُبُول) accept 4, *23*
قتل I (قَتْل) kill 1
قدر I (قَدْر) be able 2 على\أن
قدّر II estimate, esteem 7
قدم I (قُدُوم) precede ه 1, arrive at هـ 4
قدّم II advance هـ, offer هـ, serve هـ 7
قرّ I (قَرَار) settle down 60, *62*
قرأ I (قِرَاءَة) read 47
قرّر II decide, report 62
قرع I (قَرْع) strike هـ, knock against هـ 3
قرّع II rebuke ه 7
قرن I (قَرْن) connect هـ 2
قسم I (قَسْم) divide هـ 2
قصّ I (قَصّ) cut off 58
قصد I (قَصْد) intend هـ\أن 2
قصر I (قَصْر) be(come) small, be inadequate 5
قصّر II fall short of من 7
قضى I (قَضَاء) judge, condemn, accomplish, settle 116, *123*
قطّر II filter, distil 7
قطع I (قَطْع) cut 3
قعد I (قُعُود) sit 1
قلّ I (قِلَّة) be little, be less than عن 60
قلب I (قَلْب) invert, reverse 2, *13*
قلّب II invert, reverse 7, *13*
قلع I (قَلْع) uproot هـ, exterminate هـ 3
قلّل II diminish هـ 62
قنبل IQ (-) bomb 6
قنطر IQ (-) span هـ 6
قوّس II bend intr./هـ 93
قوم II raise, evaluate, adjust 93, *97*
قوي I (قُوَّة) be strong 136
قوّى II strengthen 138
قيس II measure هـ, calibrate هـ 94

ك

كئب I (كَآب) be sad about 39, *42*
كاتب III correspond with 9, *1*
كاثر III outnumber 9, *5*
كاد I (-) be about to أن, almost to α 90
كافأ III reward 51
كافح III fight for هـ، عن ه 9
كال I (كَيْل) measure هـ, weigh هـ 91
كالم III talk to ه 9
كان I (كَوْن) be ا 88
كبح I (كَبْح) rein in هـ, brake هـ, restrain from ه، عن 3
كبس I (كَبْس) (com)press, pickle 2
كتب I (كِتَابَة) write 1
كتّب II make (someone) write 7, *1*

كثر I (كَثْرَة) be numerous 5, outnumber 1,*5*
كثّر II increase 7,*5*
كثف I (كَثَافَة) condense intr. 5
كثّف II condense هـ 7
كذب I (كِذْب) tell a lie 2
كرّر II repeat 62
كسر I (كَسْر) break 2
كسّر II shatter هـ 7
كشف I (كَشْف) disclose 2
كفأ I (كَفْء) invert, turn away 47,*51*
كفى I (كِفَايَة) suffice ه 116
كلّف II cost هـ،ه 7
كمل I (كَمَال) be complete/ perfect 1,4,5
كمّل II complete هـ 7
كنس I (كَنْس) sweep 1
كنّس II sweep 7
كهرب IQ (-) electrify هـ, electrocute ه 6
كوّن II constitute 93
كيّف II shape 94
كيّل II measure هـ 94

ل

لاحظ III observe أن\هـ 9
لاحق III follow ه 9
لاقى III meet 119,*121*
لاءم III suit 41,*45*
لأم I (لَأْم) mend 37,*45*
لبس I (لُبْس) wear 4
لحم I (لَحْم) patch, solder, weld 1
لحّم II solder, weld 7
لعب I (لُعْب) play with ب, play on على 4
لفّ I (لَفّ) wrap 58
لقي I (لِقَاء) meet 115,*121*
لمس I (لَمْس) touch 1
لمع I (لَمْع) shine 3
لوّث II pollute 93
لوّن II colour 93
لوى I (لَيّ) bend intr. 135
ليس I (-) not to be **92**

مات I (مَوْت) die 88
مارس III carry out 9
ماز I (مَيْز) differentiate 91,*107*
مال I (مَيْل) incline 91,*94*
مثل I (مَثُول) resemble 1
مثّل II represent 7
مدّ I (مَدّ) stretch 58,*68*
مدّد II extend 62,*68*
مرّ I (مُرُور) pass **58**
مرّر II let pass 62,*58*
مرض I (مَرَض) be ill 4
مرّن II drill ه, exercise ه 7
مسك I (مَسْك) grasp 1,2
مشى I (مَشْي) walk 116
مصّ I (مَصّ) absorb 58
مضى I (مُضِيّ) pass 116
مطر I (-) rain 1
ملأ I (مَلْء) fill هـ 47
ملّح II salt 7
ملك I (مُلْك) acquire, own 2
منح I (مَنْح) grant هـ،ه 3
منع I (مَنْع) forbid ه،هـ\عن\من, prevent

3 ه،هـ\عن\من
مهّد II level ـهـ, pave ـهـ, clear ـهـ, prepare ـهـ 7
موّل II finance, enrich **93**
ميّز II distinguish 94, *107*
ميّل II incline **94**

ن

ناب I (نيابَة) deputise for 88 عن
نادى III call **119**
ناسب III suit **9**
نافس III compete with ... in/for 9 ه،عن\على
نام I (نَوْم) sleep 90
ناوى III be hostile to 139, *135*
نبّأ II inform 50, *53*
نبّه II call attention to 7 ه،إلى
نجح I (نَجاح) be successful, pass في (examination) 3
نخز I (نَخْز) puncture 3
ندا I (نَدْو) call, convene 114, *119*
ندي I (نَدًى\النَّدَى) be wet 115, *119*
ندّى II wet 118, *119*
نزل I (نُزُول) go/get down 2
نزّل II lower 7
نسب I (نِسْبَة) correlate, relate 1, 2, *9*
نسخ I (نَسْخ) copy, delete 3

نسّق II coordinate ـهـ 7
نسي I (نِسْيَان) forget **115**
نشأ I (نَشْء) arise 47, *52*
نشّأ II bring up 50, *52*
نشر I (نَشْر) publish, saw 1
نشّف II dry ـهـ 7
نصب I (نَصْب) erect 1
نضح I (نَضْح) splash ـهـ, spill ـهـ, leak intr. ـهـ/ 2
نظر I (نَظَر) see ـهـ،ه, look at إلى 1
نظّف II clean ـهـ 7
نظّم II organise 7
نفخ I (نَفْخ) breathe intr., inflate ـهـ, inspire with ـهـ،ه 1
نفّذ II implement 7
نفى I (نَفْي) deny 116
نقّش II paint, engrave 7
نقص I (نَقْص) become less 1
نقّص II diminish ـهـ 7
نقل I (نَقْل) transport 1
نمى I (نَمْي) grow intr. 116
نوّب II appoint as deputy for 93 ه من
نوّع II diversify ـهـ 93
نوى I (نِيَة) intend **135**

هـ

هاجر III emigrate 9
هاجم III attack ـهـ،ه 9
هار I (هَوْر) collapse intr., demolish ـهـ 88
هبّ I (هَبّ) blow (of the

wind) 58

هدر I (هَدْر) waste هـ, be wasted 2

هرأ I (-) wear out هـ 47

هرب I (هُرُوب) flee to الى, escape from من, evade من 1

هرّب II liberate هـ،ه, traffic 7

هزّ I (هَزّ) shake هـ\ب 58

همّ I (مَهَمَّة) concern 58

هنأ II congratulate **50**

هنئ I (هَنَأ) do good to/for 49, *50*

هوّى II ventilate هـ 138

و

واجه III face 76, *74*

وازن III (counter)balance 76

واصل III be connected with 76, *75*

وافق III suit, agree **76**

وافى III provide for in full 139, *151*

والى III sponsor هـ،ه 139, *130*

وجب I (وُجُوب) be necessary 71, *77*

وجد I (وُجُود) find **71**

وجه I (وَجَاهَة) be distinguished **74**

وجّه II turn towards 75, *74*

ود I (وَدّ) like, wish **61**

ورث I (وِرْث\وِرَاثَة) inherit **73**

ورد I (وُرُود) arrive at, appear 71, *81*

وردّ II supply 75, *81*

وزّع II distribute 75

وزن I (وَزْن) weigh هـ 71

وسع I (سَعَة) be wide/roomy 73/72, *78*

وسّع II broaden 75, *78*

وسم I (وَسْم) mark هـ 71

وسّم II decorate (with an honour) ه 75

وصل I (وُصُول) arrive 71, *75*

وصّل II convey **75**

وضع I (وَضْع) put **72**

وظّف II recruit, employ 75

وعد I (وَعْد) promise ه،هـ\ب 71

وفر I (وَفْر) abound 71

وفّر II provide هـ 75

وفق I (وَفْق) be suitable 73, *76*

وفّق II adjust 75, *76*

وفى I (وَفَاء) fulfil, compensate fully 129, *151*

وقع I (وُقُوع) fall 72

وقف I (وُقُوف) come to a stop 71

وقّف II bring to a stop 75

وقى I (وِقَايَة) protect **129**

ولّى II appoint ه 138, *130*

ولي I (وِلَايَة) be next, administer هـ **130**

ي

يئس I (يَأْس) despair 82

ياسر III indulge **84**

يبس I (يَبْس) be dry **82**

يبّس II dry 83, *82*
يسر I (يَسَر) be(come) easy 82, *83*
يسّر II facilitate **83**

يقظ I (يَقَاظَة) (be) awake 82, *86*
يقّظ II waken 83, *86*
يقن I (يَقْن) be sure 82, *85*

Appendix A
NOUNS, ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

1. Nouns and adjectives - general

Arabic does not distinguish as we do between nouns (i.e. words denoting a person, place, thing or idea) and adjectives (i.e. words identifying or qualifying a noun or pronoun). In Arabic, the two types of word are treated alike, and are often interchangeable:

شَخْص غَنِي A *rich person* (noun + qualifying adjective)

غَنِي A *rich person* (adjective used as noun)

هُوَ غَنِي. He is *rich*. (adjective qualifying a pronoun)

You will note, from the first example given above, that when we have both noun and qualifying adjective, the adjective always follows the noun.

2. Gender

Arabic nouns are either masculine (m.) or feminine (f.); there is no neuter gender.

Masculine nouns are:

- all nouns, without exception, denoting male persons: رَجُل man, وَلَد boy, خَلِيفَة successor, أَسَاتِذَة professors
- almost all nouns (there are very few exceptions) ending in a consonant (including *hamza*): كِتَاب book, اِبْتِدَاء beginning, لُبْنَان Lebanon

Feminine nouns are:

- all nouns denoting female persons: بِنْت girl, مُعَلِّمَة teacher
- all nouns ending in a ة... and not denoting male persons: رِسَالَة letter, مَدِينَة city

A few nouns ending in a consonant (including *hamza*) are feminine despite appearances: حَرْب war, بِئْر a well, صَحْرَاء desert. Most geographical names are feminine: مِصْر Egypt.

Adjectives normally agree in gender with the noun or pronoun which they qualify. The form found in the dictionary is masculine; the feminine

is formed by adding ـةٌ... (the m. ending ـيٌ... , mostly pronounced *-ī*, becomes ـيَّةٌ , which we can represent as *-īya*, in the feminine*):

رَجُلٌ فَقِيرٌ\غَنِيٌّ a poor / rich man امْرَأَةٌ فَقِيرَةٌ\غَنِيَّةٌ a poor / rich woman

هُوَ جَاهِلٌ. He is ignorant. هِيَ مُثَقَّفَةٌ. She is cultured.

* Strictly speaking, the masculine ending is *-iyy*, the feminine therefore *-iyya*. The endings are, however, almost always pronounced *-ī*, *-īya*, which is the transliteration given in this book.

3. Number

Like verbs, nouns and adjectives can be singular (s., denoting one), dual (denoting two), or plural (pl.) denoting more than two:

رِسَالَةٌ طَوِيلَةٌ a long letter رِسَالَتَانِ طَوِيلَتَانِ two long letters

نَاسٌ طَيِّبُونَ good people

However, note (and this is most important):

- an adjective qualifying a plural noun or pronoun which is *animate* (i.e. denotes people) stands in the plural form: masculine plural for a male group or one of mixed gender, feminine plural for an all-female group. This is the *animate plural* form:

  نَاسٌ طَيِّبُونَ good people (all male, or mixed)

  طَالِبَاتٌ طَيِّبَاتٌ good students (all female)

  هُمْ طَيِّبُونَ. They (all male, or mixed) are good.

  Paras. 8 and 9 below explain how to derive animate plural forms.

- an adjective qualifying a plural noun or pronoun which is *inanimate* (inan., i.e. denoting anything other than people) always has the same form as the feminine singular. This is the *inanimate plural* (inan. pl.) form:

  رِسَالَاتٌ طَوِيلَةٌ long letters

  هِيَ طَوِيلَةٌ. They (e.g. the letters) are long.

You will note that the concept of animate or inanimate matters only in the plural, not the singular or dual; also that the dual makes it unnecessary to use the number 'two' with a noun. In English, we have only one dual adjective: 'both'.

4. Relative adjectives and abstract nouns

Very many adjectives can be formed from nouns by adding to the noun the ending ...ي: مصْر Egypt, مصْري Egyptian; رئيس\رئيسي chief (noun / adj.). Such adjectives are called relative adjectives.

Any ending ...ا , ...يا or ...ة on the noun is dropped before the ...ي is added:

أمْريكا	America	أمْريكي	American
ليبيا	Libya	ليبي	Libyan
إدارة	administration	إداري	administrative

In a few relative adjectives, a final ...ة on the noun is replaced, and a final ...ا on the noun is sometimes followed and sometimes replaced, by ...و... in the adjective:

فرنْسا	France	فرنْساوي\فرنْسي	French
سنة	year	سنوي	annual

Like all adjectives, relative adjectives may be used as nouns:

فرنْساوي\فرنْسي	a Frenchman	مصْري	an Egyptian

We can further derive many abstract nouns from relative adjectives, with a form identical to the feminine of the adjective (making ...ي into ...يّة):

اشْتراك	participation	اشْتراكي	socialist	اشْتراكيّة	socialism

5. Indefinite nouns and adjectives; Direct object; Cases

Arabic has no indefinite article ('a', 'an'): طالب '(a) student'. Here are examples of indefinite nouns and adjectives:

تقْرير طويل	a long report	رسالة قصيرة	a short letter
في ملفّ هامّ	in an important file	لوزارة كبيرة	for a big ministry

Consider now the simple sentence 'I wrote a report'. Here, the noun 'report' is indefinite; it is also the direct object of the verb 'wrote'. In Arabic, an indefinite direct object, for a word ending in a consonant (e.g. تقْرير 'report') has the ending ...ا *-an* added to it: كتبْت تقْريراً. Any adjective describing the report suffers the same fate, since it must agree with the noun: كتبْت تقْريراً طويلاً. 'I wrote a long report'. We refer to this ending as the *indefinite masculine accusative* ending, since it is

mainly masculine nouns which carry it.

The ending ـيٍ... becomes ـيًا... *-īyan*:

قَابَلْتُ صُحُفِيًّا مصريًّا. I met an Egyptian journalist.

You will note that the vowel is always pronounced short, *-an*, despite the presence of *'alif*.

After the word-ending ـاءٌ... we do not write a further *'alif* in the indefinite direct object ending:

سَمِعْتُ أَنْبَاءً عَنْهُ الْيَوْمَ. I heard news of it today.

A direct object is said to be in the 'accusative case', a term which may be familiar to you from other languages such as German, Russian or Latin.

For the record, there are three cases in Arabic, each with its own typical ending. The cases are:

- **Nominative** (nom.): for the subject of a sentence. The indefinite nom. ending is ـٌ... *-un* (ـيٌ... becomes ـيٌ... *-īyun*, ـةٌ... becomes ـةٌ... *-atun*). Examples of the nominative appear at the beginning of this paragraph.
- **Accusative** (acc.): for the direct object of a verb. We already know the indefinite m. acc. ending ـاً... (ـيًا...); the indefinite f. acc. ending is ـةً... *-atan*.
- **Genitive** (gen.): after a preposition. The indefinite gen. ending is ... *-in* (ـيٍ... becomes ـيٍ... *-īyin*, ـةٍ... becomes ـةٍ... *-atin*).. Examples of the genitive appear at the beginning of this paragraph.

Each of the cases has other uses, covered elsewhere in this book.

However, these case-endings are visible only when the text is pointed - i.e., extremely rarely - and they are heard only in full pronunciation or in a few set expressions. For practical purposes the only indefinite case-ending which we have to write and pronounce is the m. acc. ـاً... (unpointed, ـا...) and its variants.

The system of case-endings for nouns and adjectives is known as *declension*. The declension shown here is the regular and most common one for indefinite words.

6. Definite Article

The Arabic definite article is used more than is its English counterpart 'the'. It is a prefix attached to the noun or adjective to be made definite.

Its standard form is ...اَلْ pronounced *al-*:

الْمُعَلِّم *al-mu'allim* the teacher الأُسْتَاذ *al-'ustāḏh* the professor

However, before any consonant pronounced with the tip (or near-tip) of the tongue, the ...لـ of the article is silent (although still written) and instead we pronounce the other (initial) consonant double:

الطَّالِب *aṭ-ṭālib* the student الصَّيْف *aṣ-ṣayf* ('the') summer

The initial consonants which produce this effect (called 'assimilation') are: ت ث د ذ ر ز س ش ص ض ط ظ ل ن.

Since a qualifying adjective agrees with its noun, it also takes the article, in the same way as the noun:

البَنْك المصْرِي the Egyptian bank الرِّسَالَة الطَّوِيلَة the long letter

Definite nouns and adjectives also have case-endings, but they are visible only when the text is pointed, and audible in short pronunciation only when the noun has a possessive suffix (see para. 12 below), and this is almost the only occasion when the definite case-endings need concern us.

7. Dual

The dual number denotes two. All commonly used nouns and adjectives form their dual regularly; also, the dual endings are the same for indefinite and definite words, and there are two endings covering the three cases:

nom.: ...انِ\...يَّانِ\...تَانِ *-ān(i), -īyān(i), -atān(i)*:

(الـ)كتَابَانِ (الـ)طَوِيلَانِ two / both long books

acc./gen.: ...يْنِ\...يَّيْنِ\...تَيْنِ *-ayn(i), -īyayn(i), -atayn(i)*:

(الـ)صَحَفِيَّيْنِ (الـ)مصْرِيَّيْنِ (the) two Egyptian journalists

(الـ)نَشْرَتَيْنِ (الـ)هَامَّتَيْنِ two / both important bulletins

You will note that the ending ...ة changes to ...ت before the ending is added, since ة can stand only as last letter of a word.

The final *-i* of the dual is dropped in short pronunciation.

8. Sound Plural

Some nouns and adjectives have a regular plural, called a 'sound' plural. There are two patterns, masculine and feminine:

Masculine Sound Plural. The masc. sound plural ending is the same for indefinite and definite nouns and adjectives; further, it has two endings covering the three cases:

nom.: ...ُونَ\...يُونَ) *-ūn(a), -īyūn(a)*:

(الـ)مُوَظَّفُونَ (الـ)طَيِّبُونَ (the) good employees

acc./gen: ...ِينَ\...يِّينَ *-īn(a), -īyīn(a)*:

(الـ)مَأْمُورِينَ (الـ)لُبْنَانِيِّينَ (the) Lebanese officials

The masc. sound plural is used only:

- with certain animate masculine nouns,
- with certain adjectives qualifying a plural noun or pronoun denoting an all-male group or a group of mixed gender.

It is not used with feminine nouns, or with inanimate nouns of either gender.

The final *-a* of the m. sound plural is dropped in short pronunciation.

Feminine Sound Plural. The so-called fem. sound plural has the ending ...ـَات . It is added to a noun or adjective as follows:

- noun ending in a consonant: add ...ـَات ,
- noun ending in ...ـَة : substitute ...ـَات for ...ـَة .

The fem. sound plural is used only

- with certain feminine nouns,
- certain inanimate nouns of either gender,
- certain adjectives qualifying an animate plural noun or pronoun denoting an all-female group.

It is not used with any animate masculine nouns.

Remember that an adjective qualifying an inanimate plural noun of either gender goes into the inanimate plural form, which is identical to the feminine singular:

animate f.: (الـ)سكرتيرات (الـ)لُبْنَانِيَّات (the) Lebanese secretaries

inan. m.: (الـ)مِلَفَّات (الـ)سِرِّيَّة (the) secret files (not سِرِّيُّونَ)

inan. f.: (الـ)رسَالاَت (الـ)مَكْتُومَة (the) confidential letters (not مَكْتُومَات)

(The f. sound plural has the further indefinite case-endings ...ٌ [nom.], ...ٍ [acc. and gen.], and the further definite case-endings ...ُ [nom.] and ...ِ [acc. and gen.], all added after the plural sign ...ـَات , but these case-

endings are visible only in pointing, and audible in short pronunciation only when a possessive suffix is added, or in certain set phrases.)

9. Broken Plural

The Arabic regular or sound plural can be likened to the English regular plural which adds *-s*: 'book, books'. But English also has irregular plurals, in which we change the internal form of the word instead of adding an ending: 'man, men'.

Arabic has such irregular plurals; they are called 'broken plurals'. In a broken plural the measure of the word changes. Most masculine nouns and most adjectives in the masculine form, as well as some feminine nouns and some adjectives yn the feminine form, have broken plurals. There are many patterns, which means that we have to learn the plural of every such noun or adjective as we encounter it. Common patterns are:

أَفْعَال:

رَقْم ج أَرْقَام	figure(s)	حَال ج أَحْوَال	state(s), condition(s)
فِلْم ج أَفْلَام	film(s)	مَال ج أَمْوَال	wealth / funds
مِتْر ج أَمْتَار	metre(s)	فِكْر ج أَفْكَار	idea(s)

فُعُول:

فَصْل ج فُصُول	season(s), chapter(s)	صَفّ ج صُفُوف	class(es)
أَمْر ج أُمُور	matter(s)	كَسْر ج كُسُور	fraction(s)
حَرْف ج حُرُوف	(alphabetical) letter(s)	مَلِك ج مُلُوك	king(s)

فُعُل:

مَدِينَة ج مُدُن	city / cities	طَرِيق ج طُرُق	road(s)
جدِيد ج جُدُد	new	سَفِينَة ج سُفُن	ship(s)

فُعَّال:

طَالِب ج طُلَّاب	student(s)	كَاتِب ج كُتَّاب	clerk(s), writer(s)
نَائِب ج نُوَّاب	deputy / deputies	شَاطِر ج شُطَّار	cunning

فِعَال:

كَبِير ج كِبَار	big	طَوِيل ج طِوَال	long

فُعَل:

مُدَّة ج مُدَد	period(s)	أُمَّة ج أُمَم	nation(s)

فَعْلَان:

نَارٌ ج نِيرَانٌ fire(s) جَارٌ ج جِيرَان neighbour(s)

There are other patterns, shown in every good dictionary where appropriate.

These broken plurals all decline regularly; both singular and plural follow the singular declensions shown in para. 5 above and 12 below. The comments made in paras. 5 and 6 above about the case-endings apply here also.

Two other important broken-plural patterns are shown in para. 10 below. They decline irregularly.

10. Diptotes

Some nouns and adjectives do not have the indefinite m. acc. ending ً...ا\ً... described in para. 5 above. Such words are said to be 'diptote'. Examples:

سُفَرَاءُ أَجَانِب foreign ambassadors أَسَالِيب أَسْهَل easier systems

which spellings are valid for all cases, including the indefinite m. acc. The following groups of nouns and adjectives are diptote:

- **definite** broken plurals with the vowel pattern *-a-ā-i* or *-a-ā-ī*:

  مَكَاتِب offices مَفَاتِيح keys

  أَجَانِب foreign (m. pl.) أَسَابِيع weeks

  These are either masc. nouns (animate or inanimate) or adjectives in the animate masc. pl. form.

- **indefinite** nouns and adjectives with the ending* ـاءً... :

  مُدَرَاءً directors وُزَرَاءً ministers

  كُرَمَاءً generous (m. pl.) حَمْرَاءً red (f. s. / inan. pl.)

  Most of these are broken plurals, either of masc. nouns (animate or inanimate) or of adjectives in the animate masc. form; a few are fem. pl./ inanimate pl. adjectives or (even fewer) fem. sing. nouns.

  * NB: ending, not part of the root. Where either the *'alif* or the *hamza* is a *radical*, the word is not diptote but regular, e.g. ابْتِدَاءً 'a beginning' (from the root بدء), indef. m. acc. ابْتِدَاءً.

- **indefinite** adjectives such as comparative adjectives (para. 17 below) and those denoting colour or physical defect (para. 18

below):

أَخْضَر ج خَضْرَاء green (m. s., f. s.) أَطْرَش\طَرْشَاء deaf (m. s., f. s.)

أَحْسَن better (m. sing.)

- Most proper names (although these are *definite* in meaning):

لُبْنَان Lebanon لُطفِيَّة Lutfiya

- A few other groups of indefinite words, less important.

Many dictionaries and grammar books show diptotes thus: [2], after the word or after its transliteration.

(For reference, diptotes have case-endings: ...ُ (nom.), ...َ (acc. and gen.). You will hardly ever hear them, and you can ignore them. The only important thing to remember is that there is no ...اً or ...ً acc. ending.)

We have noted that many of the diptote words are broken plurals. It is useful to remember also that in these words, where the singular has a long vowel in the last syllable of the root, so, mostly, will the plural; where the singular has a short vowel in the last syllable of the root, so, mostly, will the plural:

تِلْمِيذ ج تَلاَمِيذ pupil(s) (last root syllable *ī / ī*)

مِفْتَاح ج مَفَاتِيح key(s) (last root syllable *ā / ī*)

بَسِيط ج بُسَطَاء simple (last root syllable *ī / ā*)

مَكْتُوب ج مَكَاتِيب letter(s) (last root syllable *ū / ī*)

but: مَكْتَب ج مَكَاتِب office(s) (last root syllable *a / i*)

أَجْنَبِي ج أَجَانِب foreign (last root syllable *a / i*; the ...ي of the singular is a relative ending, not part of the root)

11. Demonstrative adjectives

The demonstrative adjectives ('this/that, these/those') are:

	Singular and Plural		
	m. s.	f. s./inan. pl.	m./f. an. pl.
this / these, all cases	هٰذَا	هٰذِهِ	هٰؤُلاَءِ
that / those, all cases	ذٰلِكَ	تِلْكَ	أُولٰئِكَ (أُولاَئِكَ)

	Dual	
	masc.	fem.
both these / these two: nom.	هٰذَانِ	هَاتَانِ
acc./gen.	هٰذَيْنِ	هَاتَيْنِ
both those / those two: nom.	ذَانِكَ	تَانِكَ
acc./gen.	ذَيْنِكَ	تَيْنِكَ

The whole word is pronounced, pointed endings and all; there is no short pronunciation for the demonstratives. The pointing '... is pronounced *ā*. The spelling أُولٰئِكَ is commoner than أُولَائِكَ.

The noun after the demonstrative is always definite, with the article:

هٰذَا الشَّخْص this person فِي هٰذِهِ الرِّسَالَة in this letter

تِلْكَ المَفَاتِيح those keys مَعَ أُولَئِكَ الطُّلَّابِ with those students

The demonstrative can also be used as a pronoun, i.e. without the noun. It agrees with the implied noun:

هٰذَا\هٰذِهِ this (one) هٰذِهِ these (ones) أُولٰئِكَ those (people)

12. Possessive adjectives

The possessive adjectives, also called possessive pronouns, 'my', 'your', 'his', 'our' (etc.) are expressed in Arabic with a suffix added to the noun possessed:

Person	Singular	Dual	Animate Plural
1st pers. m./f.	...ِي my	*(no form)*	...نَا our
2nd pers. m.	...كَ your	(...كُمَا your)*	...كُمْ your
2nd pers. f.	...كِ your		(...كُنَّ your)
3rd pers. m.	...هُ his/its	(...هُمَا their)*	...هُمْ their
3rd pers. f.	...هَا her/its/their		(...هُنَّ their)

The whole suffix is always pronounced, pointed endings and all; there is no short pronunciation for possessive suffixes.

* The forms shown in parentheses are, by their nature, rarely found; they are mentioned to keep the table complete. The fem. pl. forms are used

only for an exclusively female group; the m. pl. is used for an all-male group, or for mixed company. The f. s. form هَا... is also inanimate plural: 'their' (of things).

The suffixes are added to a noun, as follows:

- يِ... is added directly to the noun (final ـَة... becomes ـَت... first):

  مَكْتَبِي my office رِسَالَتِي my letter

  فِي مَدْرَسَتِي in my school مَعَ زُمَلَائِي with my colleagues

- Before any of the other suffixes can be added, we must add the definite case-ending of the noun. For singular and broken pl. nouns this is: nom. ُ..., acc. َ... , gen. ِ... . This case-ending is pronounced, since it is no longer at the end of the word once the suffix is added:

  nom.: مَكْتَبُهُ his office رِسَالَتُهَا her letter

  acc.: مَدْرَسَتَكَ your school زُمَلَاءَهُم their colleagues

  gen.: فِي مَدْرَسَتِكَ in your school *مَعَ زُمَلَائِكُم with your colleagues

  (* You will notice that, since possession makes the noun definite, a word like زملاء 'colleagues' ceases to be diptote once the suffix is added, and takes the regular threefold definite case-endings.)

- A dual noun drops its final نِ... , and a masculine sound plural noun drops its final نَ... , before the suffix is added:

  nom.: مُعَلِّمُونَا our teachers مَنْدُوبَانَا both our delegates

  acc. / gen.: مُعَلِّمِيكُم your teachers مَنْدُوبَيْكُم both your delegates

- After the genitive case-ending ... , and after the truncated case-endings يْ... (m. sound pl.) and يِ... (dual), all the 3rd person possessive suffixes except هَا... change their vowel ُ... to ِ...:

  فِي سَيَّارَتِه in his car مَعَ مُعَلِّمِيهِم with their teachers

  فِي مَكْتَبِهِمَا in their office مَعَ مَنْدُوبَيْهِم with both their delegates

- When a m. sound pl. or a dual noun has the suffix for 'my' (1st person sing.) attached, the whole combination becomes يَّ... (sound pl.) or يَّ... (dual) for all cases: مُعَلِّمِيَّ/مُعَلِّمَيَّ *mu'allimiyya / mu'allimayya* my (two) teachers

Since possession makes the noun definite, any qualifying adjective must also be definite, with the article: مَعَ زَمِيلِي السَّابِق 'with my former colleague'.

13. Construct

Think of an English expression consisting of two or more nouns related in some way to each other. Examples could be: 'a village road', 'Ahmad's books', 'language-teaching', 'the subject of the report', 'my doctor's telephone number'.

English uses three ways to make such expressions: (a) with a preposition ('the subject of the report'); (b) with a possessive '*s* ('Ahmad's books'); or (c) by juxtaposition, i.e. simply stringing the nouns together ('a village road', 'language-teaching'). We can even combine two of the formulæ ('my doctor's telephone number', [b]+[c]). For someone learning English, the choice of correct formula can sometimes be difficult.

Arabic uses the simplest formula, (c) juxtaposition, in an expression called the 'construct' (in Arabic, إِضَافَة, 'addition').

Let us examine the two-noun construct first. In a two-noun construct:

- the first noun, which is the main theme of the expression, is always in the definite form, but without the article. (It is also, though this will not show, in the case demanded by its function in the sentence). The first noun is deemed to be defined by the last noun.
- the last noun, which in a sense qualifies the theme, is always in the *genitive* case, though this fact will not always be visible or audible. It is indefinite if the whole expression has indefinite meaning, or definite (i.e. it has the article or a possessive suffix) if the whole expression has definite meaning.

Examples (remember that the second noun is always genitive):

طَرِيق قَرْيَة a village road ('the road of a village')

كُتُب أَحْمَد Ahmad's books تَعْلِيم اللُّغَات language-teaching

مَوْضُوع تَقْرِيره the subject of his report

اقْتِصَاد مِصْر Egypt's economy لُبْنَان اليَوْم the Lebanon of today

مُدِير بَنْك a bank manager ('the manager of a bank')

A final ة... on the first word is pronounced *at* in short pronunciation. A following article is then pronounced with initial *a*-:

مَهَمَّة المُدِير the director's task *mahammatu l-mudīr(i)* (full pronunciation), *mahammat al-mudīr* (short pronunciation)

مَهَمَّةُ مُدِيرِي my director's task *mahammatu mudīrī / mahammat mudīrī*
You are recommended to keep to the short pronunciation.

When the first noun is a dual or a sound plural, the final ...نِ or ...نَ is dropped. A resulting final long ...ا , ...و or ...ي is pronounced short before a definite article, following the rule. A resulting dual final ...يْ becomes ...ي *-ayi*:

مُهَنْدِسَا الشَّرِكَة both the company's engineers

مَعَ مُهَنْدِسَي الشَّرِكَة with both the company's engineers

مُمَثِّلُو الوِزَارَة the ministry representatives

مَعَ مُمَثِّلِي الوِزَارَة with the ministry representatives

An expression of more than two nouns can give us a 'string' construct. In the string:

- the first and last nouns follow the patterns described above.
- a middle noun is like the first noun in that it cannot have the article, but like the last noun in that it is always genitive.
- each of the nouns except the last is deemed to be defined by its successor.

Examples (remember that every noun except the first is always genitive):

رَقْم تلفُون طَبِيبِي my doctor's telephone number

مَسْؤُولِيَّات مُدِير بَنْك a bank manager's responsibilities
('the responsibilities of the manager of a bank')

We can also have compound constructs, with two first nouns or two last nouns, each couple being connected with وَ 'and' or أَوْ 'or':

مَوْضُوع أَوْ أَهَمِّيَة تَقْرِيرِهِ the subject or importance of his report
(two first nouns)

مَهَامّ المُدَرَاء والوُكَلاء the tasks of ('the') directors and agents
(two last nouns)

The only adjective permitted to interrupt a construct is the demonstrative (para. 11 above), and then only when it qualifies the last noun:

مَوْضُوع هَذَا التَّقْرِير the subject of this report

When the demonstrative qualifies the first noun, it must follow the whole construct, since the first noun cannot carry the article:

مَهَمَّةُ المُدِير هَذِهِ this task of the director

Any qualifying adjective must follow the whole construct:

مَهَمَّة المُدَير السَابِقَة the director's former task

even if this results in ambiguity:

مَهَمَّة المُعَلِّمَة السَابِقَة the teacher's former task / the former teacher's task

Different books use different English names for the إضافة : 'possessive construction', 'genitive construction', 'possessive phrase' etc. None is necessarily the best; we have used 'construct' for its brevity.

An alternative structure to the construct uses the preposition لِ 'to / of / for'. This avoids the rules of the construct, avoids possible ambiguity with an adjective, and allows us to avoid a very long string construct:

المَوْضُوع لِهٰذَا التَّقْرِير the subject of this report

فَعَالِيَّة بَرْنَامَج التَبَادُلَات الدرَاسِيَّة للجَامِعَة

the effectiveness of the university academic exchange programme

which is simpler and clearer than

(فَعَالِيَّة بَرْنَامَج تَبَادُلَات الجَامِعَة الدَرَاسِيَّة)

14. Collective nouns

Many nouns denoting species of animals or plants, or types of basic substances or products, are denoted by a singular collective noun in Arabic. We have a few such collective nouns in English: 'cattle', 'poultry', livestock', 'woodwork'. Arabic has more; they are all masculine, with no plural. Common examples are:

بَقَر	cattle	إِبِل	camels
خَيْل	horses	مَعْز	goats
دَجَاج	chickens	تُفَّاح	apples
تِين	figs	تَمْر	dates
عِنَب	grapes	شَجَر	trees
وَرَق	leaves; foliage	لُؤْلُؤ	pearls
صَخْر	stones	طُوب	bricks

To denote a single one from the species or group we add ـَة... (pl. sometimes sound, sometimes broken) to most of them: بَقَرَة a cow, دَجَاجَة a chicken, etc.

Two important animals have different words for the single one:

جَمَل ج جِمَال camel حِصَان ج حُصْن horse

15. Nouns of activity, person, place and instrument

Certain verbs in Form I make nouns denoting an activity, a person pursuing an activity, a place of activity and an instrument for the activity.

For the person, the measure is فَعَّال (sound plural); for the activity, the measure is فِعَالَة :

Root	Person		Activity	
طبخ	طَبَّاخ	cook	طِبَاخَة	cookery
خيط	خَيَّاط(ة)	tailor(ess)	خِيَاطَة	tailoring
نجر	نَجَّار	carpenter	نِجَارَة	carpentry
خبز	خَبَّاز	baker	خِبَازَة	baking

For the place, the measure is مَفْعَل\مَفْعَلَة , pl. مَفَاعِل (doubled and hollow roots have variants of this measure); for the instrument, the measure is مِفْعَل\مِفْعَالَة , (pl. مَفَاعِيل) or مِفْعَال , (pl. مَفَافِل):

Root	Place		Root	Instrument	
شغل	مَشْغَل	workshop	نشف	مِنْشَفَة	towel
درس	مَدْرَسَة	school	سمر	مِسْمَار	nail
حكم	مَحْكَمَة	law-court	نشر	مِنْشَار	saw
حطّ	مَحَطَّة	station	فتح	مِفْتَاح	key
طير	مَطَار	airport	قيس	مِقْيَاس	gauge

16. All, every, some, other, any

These are important general adjectives, needing care in Arabic.

'All' is expressed as follows:

- with the noun كُلّ 'whole', followed by the noun (s. or pl.) in definite construct, or with a pronoun suffix, or simply as a noun by itself where that suffices:

كُلّ الصَفّ all the class; the whole class

كُلّ الطُلاّب all the students

لِكُلِّهِم for all of them

مَعَ الكُلِّ with all; with everybody

- in a repetitive structure such as:

الصَفُّ كُلُّهُ the whole class ('the class, all of it')

- with the noun جَمِيع 'whole', used exactly like كُلّ , but only in plural expressions:

جَمِيع الطُلاَّب all the students

لِجَمِيعِهِم for all of them

مَعَ الجَمِيع with all; with everybody

لأَصْدِقَائِنَا جَمِيعِهِم for all our friends

'Every' is expressed with كُلّ in indefinite construct with the s. noun:

كُلّ صَفّ every class

لِكُلّ طَالِب for every student

'Some' is expressed with the noun بَعْض 'part', used like كُلّ in its meaning 'all' in the plural:

بَعْض الطُلاَّب some of the students

لِبَعْضِهِم for some of them

رَفَض البَعْض. Some refused.

'Other' is expressed with the noun غَيْر 'other' in definite form (i.e either with an article or a possessive suffix):

إِنَّهُ يَخَاف مِن الغَيْر\غَيْرِه. He is afraid of others ('of the / his other').

'Any' is expressed with the pronoun أَيّ (m.), أَيَّة (f.) 'any (one)' in indefinite construct with a noun:

يَعْرِف هذَا أَيّ طَالِب. Any student knows that.

دُون أَيَّة صُعُوبَة without any difficulty

17. Comparison of adjectives

The comparative form ('bigger', 'better') of an adjective is made by putting it into the measure أَفْعَل . This is the measure for 'sound' adjectives, i.e. ones built on three stable consonants. Other types of root have variants of the measure:

كَبِير	big	أَكْبَر	bigger	صَغِير	small	أَصْغَر	smaller
طَوِيل	long	أَطْوَل	longer	جَدِيد	new	أَجَدّ	newer
قَوِي	strong	أَقْوَى	stronger	هَامّ	important	أَهَمّ	more important

The comparative is always indefinite, and it is invariable for gender and number. Further, all indefinite adjectives with this measure are diptote, which means they have no ...ً\ا... in the accusative:

بَنْك أَكْبَر a bigger bank فِي بِنَايَة أَصْغَر in a smaller building

آلاَت أَقْوَى stronger machines

Only simple adjectives, that is, those which are not relative or otherwise derived, can be made comparative in this way. For relative and other derived adjectives we use the comparative أَكْثَر 'more' or أَشَدّ 'more severe' followed by the abstract or verbal noun related to the adjective which we wish to compare. The noun stands in the indefinite accusative case, and its ending is (NB) always pronounced:

ضَرُورِي necessary أَكْثَر ضَرُورَةً *'akthar ḍarūratan* more necessary

وَثِيقَة مُعَقَّدَة a complicated document

وَثِيقَة أَشَدّ تَعقِيداً *wathīqa 'ashadd ta'qīdan* a more complicated document ('more severe in complication')

'than' is مِن: هُو أَقْوَى مِنِّي. He is stronger than I/me.

The superlative ('the biggest/best') is expressed by making the comparative definite. One way to do this is by adding the article. This is possible with all adjectives; it is the only way possible with 'compound' comparatives (i.e. ones compiled with the abstract or verbal noun):

البَنْك الأَكْبَر the biggest bank

الإِجْرَاء الأَشَدّ تَفْصِيلاً the most detailed measure

A second way is by putting the comparative in construct with the noun. This is possible only with 'simple' (i.e. one-word) comparatives:

أَكْبَر بَنْك the biggest bank

The third way is by adding a possessive suffix to the (simple) comparative adjective. We have to add the definite case-ending before the suffix; further, since a diptote becomes regular once it is defined, it has the usual three case-endings, which in this structure are pronounced:

فِي أَكْبَرِهَا in the biggest of them (gen.)

Certain superlative adjectives have a feminine form (also used for the inanimate plural, like all f. s. forms), on the measure الفُعْلَى . Some of the most important ones are, (shown in the order masc. / fem.):

الأَكْبَر\الكُبْرَى	the biggest	الأَصْغَر\الصُغْرَي	the smallest
الأَعْظَم\العُظْمَى	the greatest	الأَوْسَط\الوُسْطَى	the centremost
الأَوَّل\الأُولَى	the first	الأَعْلَى\العُلْيَا*	the highest

* We cannot write ى after يـ ; the combination must be written يا .

This feminine is used whenever the noun has the article, but not otherwise:

أَكْبَر بِنَايَة\ البِنَايَة الكُبْرَى the biggest building

Like all words ending in ىَ, this feminine form has no case-endings.

The superlative can be used with its noun not expressed but implied:

الأَكْبَر the biggest (one)

The words أَوَّل 'first' (f. أُولَى) and آخِر 'last' are used as superlatives:

أَوَّل مَرَّة\المَرَّة الأُولَى the first time

آخِر فُرْصَة\الفُرْصَة الآخِرَة the last opportunity

and the word آخَر 'other' (f. أُخْرَى) is used like a comparative for indefinite meaning, and like a superlative for definite meaning:

مَرَّة أُخْرَى another time; once more

هٰذَا هُوَ الآخَر.\هٰذِهِ هِيَ الأُخْرَى. This is the last one.

18. Colours and physical defects

Adjectives denoting the commoner colours and the commoner physical defects have a special form, with an animate plural which is the same for both genders:

Masc. singular	Fem. singular	Masc. / Fem. animate plural	
أَحْمَر	حَمْرَاء	حُمْر	red
أَبْيَض	بَيْضَاء	بِيض	white
أَسْوَد	سَوْدَاء	سُود	black
أَصْفَر	صَفْرَاء	صُفْر	yellow

أَخْضَر	خَضْرَاء	خُضْر	green
أَزْرَق	زَرْقَاء	زُرْق	blue
أَعْمَى	عَمْيَاء	عُمْيَان	blind
أَطْرَش	طَرْشَاء	طُرْش	deaf
أَعْرَج	عَرْجَاء	عُرْج	lame
أَجَشّ	جَشَّاء	جُشّ	hoarse

You will notice that the m. s. has the same measure as the comparative adjectives (para. 17 above). In fact, both singular forms are diptote when indefinite, which means that no form اً... or ً... occurs in the accusative.

بَيْت أَبْيَض a white house السَّيَّارَة الْخَضْرَاء the green car

رَجُل أَعْمَى a blind man مَشَاكِل الطُّرْش the problems of the deaf

The dual forms, very rarely encountered, are formed on the model أَحْمَرَان\أَحْمَرَيْن (m.) and حَمْرَوَان\حَمْرَوَيْن (f.) for all the adjectives.

19. Un-, in-, im-, non-

Adjectives can be made negative ('unacceptable', 'impossible') with the word غَيْر 'other' in a compound similar to the construct:

غَيْر مَعْقُول unreasonable غَيْر مُمْكِن impossible

غَيْر قَابِل للتَّجْدِيد non-renewable

Note how the expression is made definite:

رَدًّا عَلَى اقْتِرَاحِهِم غَيْر الْمَقْبُول\الغَيْر مَقْبُول in response to their unacceptable proposal

A verbal noun can be made negative by putting it in definite construct after the noun عَدَم 'lack (of)':

عَدَم التَّعَاوُن non-cooperation لِعَدَم الصَّبْر through impatience

20. There is no ...

Arabic expresses the concept 'There is no ...' with لاَ plus the definite accusative singular of the noun. The case-ending is always pronounced:

لاَ شَكَّ فِي أَنَّهُ كَسْلاَن. There is no doubt that he is lazy.

لاَ بُدَّ مَن طَلَب مُسَاعَدَتِهِم. There is no getting out of asking their help.

(The accusative ending is in fact a modified indefinite accusative,

indistinguishable in form from the definite. It is indefinite in meaning.) This expression is called 'categorical negation', in Arabic نَفْي الجِنْس.

21. Compound adjectives

Many compound adjectives can be formed with the help of the noun ذُو which means 'having ...':

شَخْص ذُو مَال a person of wealth; a wealthy person

This special noun has masculine and feminine forms:

	Singular		Dual		Animate plural	
	masc.	fem.	masc.	fem.	masc.	fem.
Nom.	ذُو	ذَات*	ذَوَا	ذَوَاتَا	ذَوُو	ذَوَات*
Acc.	ذَا		ذَوَيْ	ذَوَاتَيْ	ذَوِي	
Gen.	ذِي					

This noun is used exclusively in construct (indefinite or definite) with the noun denoting the quality or thing possessed, ذُو (etc.) agreeing with the possessor. Note how the definite form is made:

(فِي) قَضِيَّة ذَات أَهَمِّيَّة كَبِيرَة (in) a matter of great importance

مَع الأَشْخَاص ذَوِي النَّفُوذ اللاَّزِم with the people having the necessary influence

(* For the record, the f. s. has the usual three cases: nom. ذَاتُ, acc. ذَاتَ, gen. ذَات ; the f. pl. has the usual two forms for three cases: nom. ذَوَاتُ, acc. + gen. ذَوَات . The case-endings of all these words are dropped in short pronunciation.)

22. *'ab* etc.

The important nouns أَب 'father' and أَخ 'brother' are slightly irregular in the singular.

When followed by another noun in construct, or when carying any possessive suffix other than ي... 'my', these words have written singular case-endings which are always pronounced:

Nom. أَبُو\أَخُو , Acc. أَبَا\أَخَا , Gen. أَبِي\أَخِي

أَبُو فُؤَاد قَاضٍ. Fuad's father is a judge.

مَع أَخِيه with his brother

In all other situations these nouns decline regularly:

مَع أَخِي with my brother لأَبٍ لَطِيف for a kind father

In names of places the ...و ending is 'petrified' and does not decline:

فِي أَبُو ظَبِي in Abu Dhabi جَزِيرَة أَبُو مُوسَى the island of Abu Musa

The less common noun حَم 'father-in-law' also behaves exactly like أَب and أَخ.

23. Defective nouns

Look at the preamble to Table 6, Defective verbs, especially the paragraphs dealing with participles and verbal nouns. Some important nouns are derived from these parts of defective verbs; a few have lost their verbal connotation:

قَاضٍ\القَاضِي judge مُحَامٍ\المُحَامِي lawyer

مُسْتَشْفًى\المُسْتَشْفَى hospital تَوَلٍّ\التَّوَلِّي assumption of office

The *tanwīn* endings ...ٍ and ...ًى are often pronounced even in short form; alternatively, many people follow the colloquial practice and use the definite endings ...ِي and ...ًى throughout for such nouns, even when reading from a prepared text.

Note that final ...ِي plus the possessive suffix ...ِي 'my' produces the combination ...ِيَّ *-iyya*: مُحَامِيَّ *muḥāmiyya* 'my lawyer' (all cases, nom. / acc. / gen.).

24. Improper agreement

Examine this compound expression, typical of many:

إِجْرَاءَات صَعْبَة الإِنْجَاز measures difficult to implement ('difficult the implementation')

In this expression the adjective صَعْبَة 'difficult' properly describes the noun الإِنْجَاز 'implementation', yet it looks as if it agrees with إِجْرَاءَات 'measures'. What has gone wrong?

Nothing. This kind of expression, in which the adjectival part of a compound adjective agrees with the 'wrong' noun, is in fact good Arabic style. It is called 'improper agreement' or 'improper annexation', in Arabic الإِضَافَة غَيْر الحَقِيقِيَّة. Other examples (note how the definite is

formed, in the second example below):

نَاس هُنُود الجِنْسِيَّة people of Indian nationality

فِي احْتِجَاجِهِم الشَّدِيد اللَّهْجَة in their strongly-worded protest

We have cases of improper agreement nearer home, but ours are grammatically incorrect: 'These sort of things ...', 'The whole group are coming.', 'Every student has to make their mind up.'.

25. Adverbs - general

Just as an adjective qualifies (i.e. describes or identifies) a noun or a pronoun, so an adverb modifies (i.e. describes or limits) a verb, an adjective or another adverb. Examine the structures in English:

Her work is good.	(adjective good qualifying the noun work)
She works well.	(adverb well modifying the verb works)
Her work is very good.	(adverb very modifying the adjective good)
She works very well.	(adverb very modifying the adverb well)

26. Derivation of adverbs

In Arabic, the *indefinite accusative masculine singular* form of many adjectives is used as the corresponding adverb:

كَثِير	much (adj.)	كَثِيراً	much (adverb)
جَدِيد	new	جَدِيداً	recently
قَرِيب	near	قَرِيباً	soon
سِرِّي	secret	سِرِّياً	secretly

The same formula is used to make adverbs from certain nouns, including feminine ones giving us the ending ـةً...:

تَقْرِيب	approximation	تَقْرِيباً	approximately
عَادَة	habit	عَادَةً	usually
خَاصَّة	particularity	خَاصَّةً	especially
مَثَل	example	مَثَلاً	for example

The noun derivation forms many useful phrases, with the help of a preposition:

نَظَراً لِ	in view of	نِيَابَةً عَن	deputising for

تَأييداً ل in support of عَمَلاً ب in pursuance of

Most important: In all adverbs formed like this, both the m. acc. ending اً... *-an and* the f. acc. ending ةً... *-atan* are always pronounced, even in short pronunciation.

Adverbial phrases also exist, consisting of a preposition + noun. The commonest preposition used is بِ ; the noun is sometimes definite, sometimes indefinite:

سُرْعَة	speed	بِسُرْعَة	('with speed') fast
سَلاَمَة	safety	بِالسَّلاَمَة	safely
عَكْس	opposite	بِالعَكْس	conversely; on the contrary

For some adverbs, more than one derivation exists:

فَوْر	seething (noun)	فَوْراً\عَلَى الفَور	immediately
سَرِيع	fast (adj.)	سَرِيعًا\بِسُرْعَة	fast (adverb)

Many adverbial phrases can be built with بِصُورَة ... 'in a ... way'. The noun is always indefinite:

وَاضِح	clear	وَاضِحًا\بِصُورَة وَاضِحَة	clearly
رَسْمِي	official	رَسْمِيًّا\بِصُورَة رَسْمِيَّة	officially

27. Negation of adverbs

As with adjectives, adverbial phrases beginning بِصُورَة ... can be negated with غَيْر immediately preceding the adjectival part. Adverbs in other forms have to be re-expressed with بِصُورَة ... to make negation possible:

وَاضِحًا\بِصُورَة وَاضِحَة	clearly	بِصُورَة غَيْر وَاضِحَة	unclearly
بِصُورَة غَيْر خَاصَّة	in no particular manner		
بِصُورَة غَيْر رَسْمِيَّة	unofficially		

28. Comparison of adverbs

Strictly speaking there is no comparison of adverbs as they stand in Arabic. We have to use other devices.

For simple (i.e. one-word) adverbs we use the comparative of the original adjective, in its m. s. form, also as a comparative adverb:

أَكْثَر more (adj. / adverb) أَقَلّ lesser (adj.); less (adverb)

أَطْوَل longer (adj.); at greater length (adverb)

أَسْرَع faster (adj. / adverb)

For the adverbial phrases made with a noun, we can add أَكْثَر 'more' to the noun, which must be indefinite since the comparative is always indefinite:

بِالضَّبْط accurately بِضَبْط أَكْثَر with more accuracy; more accurately

بِالتَّفْصِيل in detail بِتَفْصِيل أَكْثَر more in detail; in greater detail

For the adverbial phrases made with بِصُورَة and an adjective, we simply make that adjective comparative, as shown in para. 17 above:

بِصُورَة واضِحَة clearly بِصُورَة أَوْضَح more clearly

'than' is مِن before a noun or a pronoun, مِمَّا before a whole clause:

هُوَ يَكْتُب بِصُورَة أَوْضَح مِنّي. He writes more clearly than I / me.

يَكْتُب بِصُورَة أَوْضَح مِمَّا يَتَكَلَّم. He writes more clearly than he speaks.

Similarly, there is no real superlative of adverbs. We can use a comparative followed by 'than all':

هُوَ يَدْرُس بِاجْتِهاد أَشَدّ مِن الجَمِيع. He studies the hardest ('harder than everybody').

29. Absolute object

'He laughed a hearty laugh'. In English expressions like this, we use the noun corresponding to the verb, and add a qualifying adjective. The expression often has adverbial meaning, i.e. it shows *how* the verb was performed; this sentence means no more than 'He laughed heartily'.

Arabic has an almost unlimited range of such expressions, called the *absolute object*; wherever the meaning permits it, we can follow a verb (even an intransitive one) with a corresponding indefinite accusative verbal noun and an adjective, to give adverbial meaning. Verb and noun may be of different forms (I to X):

تَرَدَّدُوا تَرَدُّداً طَوِيلاً. They hesitated for a long time ('a long hesitation'). (V/V)

أَجاب جَوَابًا واضِحًا. He answered clearly ('a clear answer'). (IV/III)

Appendix B
PRONOUNS AND PREPOSITIONS

1. Pronouns - general

The standard definition of a pronoun is that it is a word substituting for a known or already identified noun. In fact this is true only of the 3rd person pronouns ('he, she, him, it, they, them'). The 1st and 2nd person pronouns ('I, you, we, me, us') are the only words available to indicate the person(s) speaking or the person(s) spoken to; there are no equivalent nouns. It is, however, true to say that the pronouns perform the same function as nouns; they can be the subject or object of a verb, or they can be governed by a preposition.

2. Subject pronouns

The pronouns used as subject of a verb ('I, you, he ...') are:

Person	Plural	Dual	Singular
1st person m./f.	نَحْنُ we	(no form)	أَنَا I
2nd person m.	أَنْتُمْ you	(أَنْتُمَا you both)	أَنْتَ you
2nd person f.	(أَنْتُنَّ you)		أَنْتِ you
3rd person m.	هُمْ they	هُمَا they both	هُوَ he/it
3rd person f.	(هُنَّ they)		هِيَ she/it/they*

This table shows the pronouns in the same order as the persons of the verbs in the tables, i.e. singular on the right.

Important things to note:

- The persons are used exactly in the same manner as the persons of the verbs (see para. 23 of the introductory chapter), except that the 3rd person dual pronoun ('they both') is also the same for both genders. The 2nd person dual, and the feminine plural persons, shown in parentheses, are rarely encountered. They are included to keep the table complete. They also feature in the verb tables, for the

same reason.

- هي 'they' (marked * in the table), is used for all inanimate plurals, irrespective of gender. All other plurals are used to stand for animate nouns only, while the dual is used to stand for both animate and inanimate nouns.
- Where there is no verb and no noun subject in the sentence, a subject pronoun is usually necessary. Otherwise the subject pronouns are used only for emphasis, as the subject is usually clear from the verb:

وَصَلُوا They have arrived. يَشْكُو He is complaining.

3. Direct object pronouns

The direct object pronouns ('me, you, him ...') take the form of a suffix added to the verb:

Person	Singular	Dual	Plural
1st person m./f.	...نِي me	(no form)	...نَا us
2nd person m.	...كَ you	(...كُمَا you both)	...كُمْ you
2nd person f.	...كِ you		...كُنَّ you)
3rd person m.	...هُ him/it	...هُمَا them both	...هُمْ them
3rd person f.	...هَا her/it/them*		...هُنَّ them)

This table is set in the conventional European manner, with the singular on the left.

The persons correspond exactly to those of the subject pronouns, para. 2 above:

كَتَبَتْهُ. She wrote it. نَعْرِفُكُمْ. We know you.

The verb-endings ...تُمْ and ...وا\...وا are modified when an object pronoun suffix is added:

- ...تُمْ becomes ...تُمُو...,
- ...وا\...وا become respectively ...وْ\...وُ (pronunciation unchanged):

هَل تَسَلَّمْتُمُوهَا ؟ Have you received it?

تَسَلَّمُوهَا. They have received it. أُكْتُبُوهُ. Write it.

Short pronunciation of the verb is not possible when an object pronoun suffix is attached.

The direct object pronouns are also attached to the conjunctions of the أَنَّ family, similarly to the use of the accusative noun. Like the accusative noun in this structure, the pronoun suffix denotes the *subject* of the verb (or implied verb), not a direct object:

قَالَ إِنَّهُ مُتَأَسِّف He said that he was sorry.

إِنَّنَا نَغِيبُ غَداً. We shall be absent tomorrow.

تَكَلَّمَ كَأَنَّهُ يَعْرِفُكَ. He spoke as if he knew ('knows') you.

أَنَّ and إِنَّ have alternative forms for the first-person suffixes:

إِنَّنَا\إِنَّا, إِنَّنِي\إِنِّي; أَنَّنَا\أَنَّا, أَنَّنِي\أَنِّي

4. Demonstrative pronouns

The demonstrative adjectives هٰذَا\هٰذِه 'this' (etc.) can also be used as pronouns, that is, with the noun not stated but implied. The pronoun agrees with the implied noun when that is known. When the implied pronoun is unknown, we use the m. pronoun:

هَل تَفْهَم هٰذَا ؟ Do you understand this?

أَيَّة رِسَالَة؟ - هٰذِه. Which letter? - This (one).

هٰؤُلاَءِ these (people; m., mixed, or gender not known)

هٰذِه this (f.), these (things)

In verbless expressions such as 'This is the ...', 'These are the ...', where the demonstrative is followed by the article ...الـ , we have to use the appropriate subject pronoun as well:

هٰذَا هُوَ المَلَفّ. This ('it') is the file.

هَل هٰذِه هِيَ الرِسَالَة؟ Is this the letter?

(هٰذَا المَلَفّ is not a sentence; it means 'this file', while هَل هٰذِه الرِسَالَة is only the beginning of an incomplete sentence: 'Does this letter...?'.)

When the demonstrative in a verbless sentence is followed by anything other than ...الـ (e.g. when the noun is indefinite, or has a possessive suffix, or is in construct), there is no confusion and the subject pronoun

is usually left out:

هٰذَا مَلَفٌ هَامٌ. This is an important file.

هٰذَا مَلَفِي This is my file.

هَل هٰذِهِ رِسَالَة البَنْك؟ Is this the bank's letter?

5. Prepositions - general

A preposition shows the relationship between a noun or pronoun and the rest of the sentence: '*in* the bank', '*during* this time', '*because of* that', '*for* me'. One important linking function is that between a prepositional verb and its object. Common Arabic prepositions are:

فِي	in	عَلَى	on	إِلَى	to, for
بِ	with (by means of), in			مَعَ	with (accompanied by)
لِ	to, for, of	دَاخِلَ	inside	خَارِجَ	outside
مِنْ\عَنْ	from	دُونَ\بِدُونِ	without	حَتَّى	as far as, until
مُنْذُ	since	عِنْدَ\لَدَى	with, at, in the presence of	حَسَبَ	according to
فَوْقَ	above	تَحْتَ	below	غَيْرَ	except, other than
أَمَامَ\قُدَّامَ	in front of	وَرَاءَ\خَلْفَ	behind	ضِدَّ	against
خِلَالَ	during (part of)	طُولَ	during (all of)	بَيْنَ	among, between
حَوْلَ\حَوَالَى	around, about	جَنْبَ	*jamba* beside	عَبْرَ	through, beyond
بِسَبَبِ	because of	بِالرَّغْمِ مِنْ	despite	بِخُصُوصِ	concerning

A preposition is said to 'govern' the noun or pronoun depending on it. Important things to note:

- The governed noun stands in the genitive case:

  مَعَ المُوَظَّفِين with the employees

  One preposition, not listed above, is an exception to this rule. It is studied in para. 12 below.
- A pronoun governed by a preposition is attached to it as a suffix. See para. 6 below for details.
- Following the general rule, a final long vowel is pronounced short before the definite article. The spelling is unchanged:

  إِلَى بَيْتِي *'ilā baytī* to my house

but: إِلَى البَيْت *'ila l-bayt* to the house

- Just as for verbs and nouns, so there is a short pronunciation for prepositions, in which any pointed final vowel is not pronounced, and the preposition ends on its last written consonant:

  حسب هذا الكتاب *ḥasaba hāḏha l-kitāb(i)* (full pronunciation)
  ḥasab hāḏha l-kitāb (short) according to this book

  Any following definite article then regains its 'own' vowel, *a*:

  مع الموظَّفين *ma'a l-muwaẓẓafīn(a)* (full pronunciation)
  ma' al-muwaẓẓafīn (short) with the employees

6. Pronouns after prepositions

A pronoun governed by a preposition is attached to it as a suffix. The suffix has the same form as the appropriate *possessive* suffix. The suffix is added directly to the preposition, subject to the following modifications:

- Any short vowel ending the preposition is dropped before the suffix ...ي 'me': مَعِي\بِي 'with me', لِي 'to / for me'.
  But before any other suffix, a final short vowel is pronounced. Short pronunciation cannot apply before such a suffix: مَعَهُ *ma'ahu* 'with him'.
- The prepositions مِن and عن 'from' double their ن before the suffix ...ي 'me': مِنِّي\عَنِّي 'from me'.
- The prepositions ending in ...ى change this vowel to ...يْ before the suffix is added: إِلَيْكُمْ 'to you'. See also immediately below.
- After the prepositions ب 'with, in' and في 'in', and after the modified ending ...يْ (see immediately above) certain suffixes are modified:
  - *ī* + ...ي 'me' becomes ...يَّ *-īya*; *ay* + ...ي 'me' becomes ...يَّ *-ayya*
  - all the 3rd person suffixes except ...هَا 'her' change their vowel ... to ... .

  Examine ب, في and إلى with the whole series of suffixes:

  ب: s. (with me; with you; with him/her/it): بِي؛ بِكَ، بِكِ؛ بِهِ، بِهَا
  bī; bika, biki; bihi, bihā
  dual (with you both; with them both): بِكُمَا؛ بِهِمَا
  bikumā; bihimā
  pl. (with us; with you; with them): بِنَا؛ بِكُمْ، بِكُنَّ؛ بِهِمْ، بِهِنَّ

binā; bikum, bikunna; bihim, bihinna

في : s. (in me; in you; in him/her/it): فِيَّ؛ فِيكَ، فِيكِ؛ فِيهِ، فِيهَا

fīya; fīka, fīki; fīhi, fīhā

dual (in you both; in them both): فِيكُمَا؛ فِيهِمَا *fīkumā; fīhimā*

pl. (in us; in you; in them): فِينَا؛ فِيكُمْ، فِيكُنَّ؛ فِيهِمْ، فِيهِنَّ

fīnā; fīkum, fīkunna; fīhim, fīhinna

إلى : s. (to me; to you; to him/her/it): إِلَيَّ؛ إِلَيْكَ، إِلَيْكِ؛ إِلَيْهِ، إِلَيْهَا

'ilayya; 'ilayka, 'ilayki; 'ilayhi, 'ilayhā

dual (to you both; to them both): إِلَيْكُمَا؛ إِلَيْهِمَا

'ilaykumā; 'ilayhimā

pl. (to us; to you; to them): إِلَيْنَا؛ إِلَيْكُمْ، إِلَيْكُنَّ؛ إِلَيْهِمْ، إِلَيْهِنَّ

'ilaynā; 'ilaykum, 'ilaykunna; 'ilayhim, 'ilayhinna

So also: عَلَى 'on', لَدَى 'at, in the presence of', حَوَالَى 'around, about'.

- The preposition لِ 'to, for, of' becomes لـ... before any suffix except ي... 'me': لَكَ 'to you', لَهُ 'to him'.
- Suffixes are not added to the preposition حَتَّى 'as far as, until'.

7. To have

The concept 'to have' is not normally expressed with a verb in Arabic. We use instead a preposition + noun, or a preposition + pronoun suffix. The commonest preposition used for this purpose is عِنْدَ 'with, in the possession of'. In present time, this gives us a verbless sentence:

عِنْدَ المُهَنْدِسِ خِبْرَةٌ طَوِيلَةٌ. The engineer has ('With the engineer is') long experience.

عِنْدَهُ أَمْوَالٌ كَافِيَةٌ. He has sufficient funds.

Past, future and negative statements of this kind are made with كان\يكون\ليس (etc.) as shown in para. 8 of the introductory chapter:

لَيْسَ\مَا كَانَ عِنْدَهُ مَالٌ كَثِيرٌ. He has / He had no great wealth.

Other prepositions are used, less commonly: لِ has the same general meaning as عند in this usage, مع implies having on one's person, and لدى is used more with abstract than concrete words:

كَانَ لِلْكِتَابِ مُقَدِّمَةٌ شَامِلَةٌ. The book had a comprehensive introduction.

لَدَيْهَا عِلْمٌ وَاسِعٌ فِي هَذَا الحَقْلِ. She has (a) wide knowledge in this field.

هَل مَعَكَ قَامُوس؟ Do you have a dictionary (with you)?

8. Relative pronouns.

Relative pronouns ('who, that, which') connect a clause to a preceding noun or pronoun known as the 'antecedent': '... the person who said this ...', '... a book (which) I read ...'. In these expressions, 'person' and 'book' are the antecedents of the relative pronouns 'who' and 'which' respectively. Relative pronouns are also called relative conjunctions.

The Arabic relative pronouns are:

	Masculine	Feminine
Singular, all cases	اَلَّذِي	اَلَّتِي
Dual, nom.	اَللَّذَانِ	اَللَّتَانِ
acc. and gen.	اَللَّذَيْنِ	اَللَّتَيْنِ
Plural, all cases	اَلَّذِينَ	اَللاَّتِي

The relative pronoun agrees as far as possible with its antecedent, in the manner described in paras. 2 and 3 of Appendix A. The unusual spelling لل of some of the forms is pronounced like the more usual لّ *-ll-*. Further, the relative pronouns have no short pronunciation.

You will note that the pronoun begins with *hamzat al-waṣl*. After a word pronounced short, the pronoun keeps its initial vowel *a-*.

When the relative pronoun is the subject of its own verb, it is used as are 'who, that, which' in English:

هٰذَا هُوَ الشَّخْص الَّذِي كَتَب التَقْرِير. This is the person who wrote the report.

هَل تَعْرِف المُعَلِّمَات الأَتِي اسْتَقَلْنَ؟ Do you know the teachers who resigned?

When the relative pronoun is the direct object of its own verb, we reflect that fact by suffixing the appropriate direct-object pronoun (para. 3 above) to the verb:

هٰذَا هُوَ الشَخْص الَّذِي اسْتَشَرْنَاهُ. This is the person (whom) we consulted ('him').

قَرَأْت الرسَالاَت الَّتِي كَتَبَهَا. I read the letters (which) he wrote ('them').

Similarly, when the relative pronoun is governed by a preposition (or

when the verb has a prepositional object), the preposition is kept, with the appropriate pronoun suffix:

أَيْنَ المَقَالَة الَّتِي تُشِير إِلَيْهَا؟ Where is the article (which) you refer to ('it')?

But the relative pronoun is used only when the antecedent is definite. When the antecedent is indefinite, the relative pronoun is omitted. All the other rules still apply:

subject: أَعْرِف شَخْصًا يُسَاعِدُنَا. I know a person who will help us.

direct object: هٰذَا نَصّ نَفْهَمُهُ. This is a text (which) we understand.

preposition: هٰذَا رَجُل نَعْتَمِد عَلَيْهِ. This is a man (whom) we rely on.

When the antecedent is a pronoun, we use مَنْ for persons ('he who ...') and مَا for things ('that which ...'). Each word covers both antecedent and relative pronoun in one. In this structure, the 'reiteration' of the direct object can be left out:

subject: مَنْ كَتَبَ هٰذَا هُوَ مُخْطِئ. Whoever / He who wrote that is mistaken.

direct object: اشْرَح مَا قُلْت\قُلْتَهُ. Explain what / that which you said.

preposition: هٰذَا مَا تَعَجَّبْت مِنْهُ. This is what I was surprised at.

When the antecedent is not a noun or pronoun in the preceding statement, but the whole preceding statement itself, then an all-purpose antecedent + relative pronoun is used. It is الأَمْر الَّذِي ('the matter which'):

أَفْلَسَت الشَّرِكَة الأَمْر الَّذِي تَعَجَّبْنَا مِنْهُ. The firm went bankrupt, at which we were surprised.

You will have noticed from some of the examples that the English relative pronoun may often be omitted. The omission of the relative pronoun in Arabic is not optional, and follows entirely different rules.

9. Interrogative pronouns.

All interrogative pronouns ('who...?' 'what...?') are singular. Most are only masculine, and do not change for case:

مَنْ who(m)...? مَاذَا\مَا what...? كَمْ how much/many...?

أَيّ (m.), أَيَّة (f.) which...? لِمَنْ whose...?

The prepositions مِن and عن 'from' combine with مَن and مَا to give us مِمَّن\عَمَّن 'from whom?' and مِمَّا\عَمَّا 'from what?'.

The interrogative pronouns may introduce either direct or indirect questions. Examples:

مَن هُوَ؟ Who is he?

سَأَلْنَاهُ مَن هُوَ. We asked him who he was ('is').

قُلْ لِي مَاذَا طَلَب. Tell me what he asked for.

كَم يَطْلُبُونَ؟ How much are they asking?

ممَن سَمِعُوهُ؟ From whom did they hear it?

كَم is also used before a noun, often giving adjectival meaning. The noun is always in the *indefinite accusative singular*, the verb in the singular:

كَم شَخْصًا حَضَرَ المُؤْتَمَر؟ How many people attended the conference?

أَيّ\أَيَّة is the only declinable interrogative pronoun (though short pronunciation applies to the case-ending):

لأَيّ من زُمَلائه طَلَبَهُ؟ For which of his colleagues did he request it?

Often the masculine is used for the feminine, especially when the latter is separated from the noun to which it refers:

أَيًّا مِن التَرَاجِم تُفَضِّل؟ Which of the translations do you prefer?

أَيّ\أَيَّة is also used like an adjective, with a singular noun, in indefinite construct:

أَيَّة نُسْخَة أَرْسَلُوا لَنَا؟ Which copy did they send us?

We use the pronoun لِمَن 'whose...?' only as subject of a verbless sentence, 'Whose is ...?':

لِمَن هذَا التَّوْقِيع؟ Whose is this signature?

'Whose ...?' in any other use, including as an adjective or with a verb, is مَن preceded by a noun, in construct ('the ... of whom?'):

تَلَفَن مُمَثِّل مَن؟ Whose representative telephoned?

10. Independent object pronouns.

A doubly transitive verb does not normally take two object pronoun suffixes. The 3rd-person inanimate object pronoun is commonly expressed with the word إِيَّاهُ (m.) 'it' or إِيَّاهَا (f./inan. pl.) 'it/them':

أَعْطَانِي إِيَّاهَا. He gave me it / them. سَأَلُوهُم إِيَّاهُ. They asked them it.

We also find forms such as أَعْطَانِيهَا, with a double suffix.

11. Indefinite pronouns.

The two nouns أَحَد 'one' and شَيْء 'thing' are used to express 'someone' and 'something':

تَلَفَن أَحَد مِن طَرَابُلُس اليَوْم. Someone rang from Tripoli today.

لَم نَقُل لَهُم شَيْئًا. We told them nothing.

In a negative sentence, the meanings are 'nobody' and 'nothing'. As subject in such a sentence, they are best expressed as 'There is nobody who / nothing which ...':

لاَ أَحَدَ يَفْهَم هذَا. Nobody understands that ('There is nobody who ...').

لاَ شيءَ أَجْمَل. Nothing is ('There is nothing') more beautiful.

أَحَد has a feminine form إِحْدَى. These forms can express 'one of ...':

أَحَد أَصْدِقَائِي one of my friends

لأَحَدِهِم\لإِحْدَاهَا for one of them (animate pl. / inanimate pl.)

Avoid confusing any of these words with 'one' as a number, which is different (see Appendix C).

12. An exceptional preposition.

The preposition إِلاَّ 'except' is exceptional not only in meaning:

- It does not take a pronoun suffix.
- It is used mostly in a negative expression, to mean 'only'.
- The noun which it governs stands not in the genitive case, but in the case demanded by the noun's function in the sentence. The pronoun which it governs always stands in the subject form:

subject: لَم يَذْهَب إِلاَّ شَخْص وَاحِد. Only one person went. ('None went except ...')

object: لاَ نَعْرِف إِلاَّ رَئِيس الهَنْدَسَة. We know only the Chief Engineer.

لاَ نَعْرِف إِلاَّ هُوَ. We know only him. ('... none but he')

prep.: مَا اتَّصَلُوا إِلاَّ بِالسَّفِير. They contacted only the ambassador.

إِلاَّ إِنْ 'except if', with a negative verb in the perfect, expresses 'unless':

لَن نَنْجَح إلاَّ إنْ حَاوَلْنَا. We shall not succeed unless we try.
Such a sentence is in fact doubly negative (= affirmative) in meaning; it can be recast in English as 'We shall succeed only if we try'.

Appendix C
NUMBERS

1. General

Cardinal numbers

The formally correct Arabic system of cardinal numbers (i. e. those indicating quantity) is so complicated that hardly any Arab uses it as it stands. Many Arabs, including educated Arabs, do not know the formal system fully. Very few can use it fluently.

Since numbers are so important, almost all Arabs use a greatly simplified system, based on colloquial Arabic. Radio or television newsreaders use it even when reading out numbers written as words.

You are very strongly recommended to do the same. Paragraphs 2 to 4 below give *simplified* or colloquial forms of the cardinal numbers which you should always use (there are variants, depending on the speaker; the forms shown here are universally acceptable). In paragraphs 5 to 8 we show the *formal* system, to keep the record complete.

Ordinal numbers, fractions etc.

The ordinal numbers (i.e. those indicating a place in a sequence), fractions etc. are relatively simple as they stand, and they are commonly used without further simplification.

2. Simplified cardinal numbers 1 to 10

Most of the simplified cardinal numbers 1 to 10 do not distinguish in gender. The numbers are shown here in transliteration; don't be confused by the fact that in the examples the simplified form often differs from the Arabic script:

١	*wāḥid* (m.), *wāḥida* (f.)	٢	*i<u>th</u>nayn* (m.), *<u>th</u>intayn* (f.)
٣	*<u>th</u>alā<u>th</u>a*	٤	*'arba'a*
٥	*<u>kh</u>amsa*	٦	*sitta*
٧	*sab'a*	٨	*<u>th</u>amāniya*
٩	*tis'a*	١٠	*'a<u>sh</u>ara*

Only ١ and ٢ agree in gender. ١ usually follows its noun. ٢ is used with a noun (and then after it) only for emphasis, since the dual of the noun already means 'two':

لِشَخْص واحد *(wāḥid)* for one person

لِشَخْصَيْن اثْنَيْن فَقَط *(ithnayn)* for only *two* people

For ٣ to ١٠ , note:

- When the numbers are used with a noun:
  - if the noun is indefinite, the noun (and its qualifying adjective, if any) stands in the *genitive plural* (which fact is evident only with masculine sound plurals, case-ending ...ين), irrespective of its function in the sentence. The number then precedes the noun:

    وَصَل ثَلاثَة مُهَنْدِسِين إِيرانِيِّين. *(thalātha)* Three Iranian engineers arrived.

  - if the noun is definite, then the noun (and its qualifying adjective, if any) stands in the case required by its function in the sentence. The number is then used adjectivally, i.e. it follows the noun (or noun + qualifying adjective), and is itself made definite:

    وَصَل المَنْدُوبُون البَرِيطانِيُّون السِّتَّة. *(as-sitta)* The six British delegates arrived.

- Before a noun beginning with *hamzat al-qaṭ'*, a final *-t* is added to the number:

  ٦ أَشْهُر *(sittat)* 6 months ٧ أَيَّام *(sab'at)* 7 days

- Some speakers drop the final *-a* before a noun beginning with anything other than *hamzat al-qaṭ'* : ٣ مُهَنْدِسِين *(thalāth)*

3. Simplified cardinal numbers 11 to 99

١١	*'iḥd'ashar*	١٢	*ithn'ashar*
١٣	*thalatt'ashar*	١٤	*'arba't'ashar*
١٥	*khamst'ashar*	١٦	*sitt'ashar*
١٧	*sab'at'ashar*	١٨	*thamant'ashar*
١٩	*tis'at'ashar*	٢٠	*'ishrīn*
٢١	*wāḥid u-'ishrīn*	٢٢	*ithnayn u-'ishrīn*
٣٠	*thalāthīn*	٤٠	*'arba'īn*
٥٠	*khamsīn*	٦٠	*sittīn*
٧٠	*sab'īn*	٨٠	*thamānīn, thamāniyīn*
٩٠	*tis'īn*	٩٩	*tis'a u-tis'īn*

These numbers do not change for gender. The rules concerning their use with nouns are the same as for the numbers ٣ to ١٠ , except that in the

indefinite form the noun (+ adjective if any) goes into the *accusative singular* (which fact is evident only with masculine nouns, case-ending ...اً\...), irrespective of its function in the sentence.

You will note that compound numbers are assembled as in German, i.e. units first. *u-* is the colloquial form of وَ ; although it consists of a weak vowel, it is never dropped in pronunciation:

لمُدَّة ١٤ يَوْمًا *('arba't'ashar)* for (a period of) fourteen days

لِمُدَّة الأَيَّام الأَرْبَعَة عَشَر المُشْتَرَطَة *(al-'arba't'ashar)* for the 14 days stipulated

عَقْد ذُو خَمْسَة وَعِشْرِين بَنْدًا *(khamsa u-'ishrīn)* a contract with 35 clauses

4. Simplified cardinal numbers above 99

١٠٠	*mīya*	٢٠٠	*mitayn*
٣٠٠	*thalāth mīya*	٤٠٠	*'arba' mīya*
٥٠٠	*khams mīya*	٦٠٠	*sitt mīya*
٧٠٠	*saba' mīya*	٨٠٠	*thamān mīya*
٩٠٠	*tisa' mīya*	١٠٠٠	*'alf*
٢٠٠٠	*'alfayn*	٣٠٠٠	*thalāthat 'ālāf*
١٠٠٠٠٠٠	*milyūn*	٢٠٠٠٠٠٠	*milyūnayn*
٥٠٠٠٠٠٠	*khamsa malāyīn*		

٢٤٨٦٣ *'arba'a u-'ishrīn 'alf u-thamān mīya u-thalātha u-sittīn*

For these numbers, we need to note:

- *mīya* is used in the singular after numbers ٣ to ٩. It is not used at all with any number above ٩ . For e.g. 'thirteen hundred' we must say *'alf u-thalāth mīya.*
- Hundred(s), thousand(s) and million(s) do not change for gender. The rules concerning their use with nouns are the same as for the numbers ٣ to ١٠ , except that in the indefinite form the noun (+ adjective if any) goes into the *genitive singular* (not evident in short pronunciation), irrespective of its function in the sentence. *mīya* before a noun becomes *mīt*:

٣٠٠ شَخْص	*(thalāth mīt)*	300 people
نَفْس الأَشْخَاص الثَلاثُمِئَة	*(ath-thalāth mīya)*	the same 300 people
٥٠٠٠ لِيرَة	*(khamsat 'ālāf)*	5000 lira

- When the number is definite, we repeat the article after every conjunction *u-*:

اللِيرَات الأَرْبَعَة وَالعِشْرُون أَلْفًا اللازِمَة *(al-'arba'a u-l-'ishrīn 'alf)* the necessary 24,000 lira

- In compound numbers, it is the last spoken element which determines the form of a following indefinite noun:

٢٠١ شَخْص	*(mitayn u-wāḥid)*	201 people
٢٠٥ أَشْخَاص	*(mitayn u-khamsat)*	205 people
٢٤٥ شَخْصًا	*(mitayn u-khamsa u-'arba'īn)*	245 people
٢٠٠ شَخْص	*(mitayn)*	200 people

- *'alf* and *milyūn* are nouns; they therefore go into the (genitive) plural after a number ٣ to ١٠ and into the accusative singular after a number ١١ to ٩٩; see the examples in the list given above.

5. Formal cardinal numbers - general

In the 'formal' use of numbers, everything except the sound of the numbers is as described in paras. 2 to 4 above; all the rules for their use still apply, except where specifically contradicted below. The following paragraphs give the correct written forms; in reading them aloud you are recommended to keep to the simplified pronunciation, which is always acceptable.

6. Formal cardinal numbers 1 to 10

١	وَاحِد (m.), وَاحِدَة (f.)	٢	اثْنَان (m.), اثْنَتَان (f.)

اثْنَان (etc.) declines like a dual noun (acc. + gen. اثْنَيْن\اثْنَتَيْن).

٣	ثَلاثَة\ثَلاث	٤	أَرْبَعَة\أَرْبَع
٥	خَمْسَة\خَمْس	٦	سِتَّة\سِتّ
٧	سَبْعَة\سَبْع	٨	ثَمَانِيَة\ثَمَانِي
٩	تِسْعَة\تِسْع	١٠	عَشَرَة\عَشْر

Numbers ٣ to ١٠ have so-called 'polarity', which means that they use a feminine-looking form (ending in ـَة...) for masculine nouns and a masculine-looking form (without ـَة...) for feminine nouns. This rule holds

whether the noun is definite or definite:

ثلاثَة كُتُب	three books	الكُتُب الثَلاثَة	the three books
ثلاث وَثَائق	three documents	الوَثَائق الثَلاث	the three documents

If you look carefully at an expression like سَبعَة أيَّام 'seven days', you can see where the extra final *-t* in *sab' at 'ayyām* (para. 2 above) comes from.

7. Formal cardinal numbers 11 to 99

١١ أَحَدَ عَشَرَ (m.), إحْدَى عَشْرَة (f.) ١٢ اثْنَا عَشَرَ (m.), اثْنَتَا عَشْرَة (f.)

١١ and ١٢ agree normally with their noun or implied noun; ١١ is indeclinable, while the ٢ of ١٢ has the acc. + gen case-endings اِثْنَيْ (m.) and اِثْنَتَيْ (f.):

أَحَدَ عَشَرَ مَكْتَبًا 11 offices

فِي اِثْنَتَيْ عَشْرَة بِنَايَة جَدِيدَة in 12 new buildings

١٣	ثَلاثَة عَشَرَ\ثَلاث عَشْرَة	١٤	أَرْبَعَة عَشَرَ\أَرْبَع عَشْرَة
١٥	خَمْسَة عَشَرَ\خَمْس عَشْرَة	١٦	ستَّة عَشَرَ\ستّ عَشْرَة
١٧	سَبْعَة عَشَرَ\سَبْع عَشْرَة	١٨	ثَمَانِيَة عَشَرَ\ثَمَانِي عَشْرَة
١٩	تسْعَة عَشَرَ\تسْع عَشْرَة		

In the numbers ١٣ to ١٩ the units have polarity (see para. 6 above), while the tens agree normally with their noun or implied noun:

مَع خَمْسَة عَشَرَ مُتَخَصِّصًا أَجْنَبِيًّا with 15 foreign specialists

فِي البُنُود الثَمَانِيَة عَشَرَ المَذْكُورَة in the 18 clauses mentioned

٢٠	عشْرُونَ	٢١	وَاحِد\وَاحِدَة وَعِشْرُونَ
٢٢	اثْنَان\اثْنَتَان وَعِشْرُونَ	٣٠	ثَلاثُونَ
٤٠	أَرْبَعُونَ	٥٠	خَمْسُونَ
٦٠	ستُّونَ	٧٠	سَبْعُونَ
٨٠	ثَمَانُونَ	٩٠	تِسْعُونَ
٩٩	تسْعَة\تسْع وَتسْعُونَ		

In the numbers ٢٠ to ٩٩ the units have polarity, while the multiples of ten decline like masculine sound plurals for both genders (i.e. acc. + gen.

ending ...ين):

خَلال أَرْبَعَة وَعِشْرِين يَوْمًا مِن الشَّهْر for 24 days of ('from') the month

فِي الصَفَحَات السِّتّ والخَمْسِين البَاقِيَة in the remaining 56 pages

8. Formal cardinal numbers above 99

مِئَتَان	٢٠٠	مِئَة	١٠٠
أَرْبَعُمِئَة	٤٠٠	ثَلاثُمِئَة	٣٠٠
سِتُّمِئَة	٦٠٠	خَمْسُمِئَة	٥٠٠
ثَمَانِيمِئَة	٨٠٠	سَبْعُمِئَة	٧٠٠
أَلْف	١٠٠٠	تِسْعُمِئَة	٩٠٠
ثَلاثَة آلاف	٣٠٠٠	أَلْفَان	٢٠٠٠
مِلْيُونَان	٢٠٠٠٠٠٠	مِلْيُون	١٠٠٠٠٠٠

خَمْسَة مِلايِين ٥٠٠٠٠٠٠

أَرْبَعَة وَعِشْرُون أَلْفًا وَثَمَانِيمِئَة وَثَلاثَة وَسِتُّون ٢٤٨٦٣

Worth noting:

- مِئَة has a less common alternative spelling مِائَة . The formal pronunciation is the same, *mi'a*.
- You will also encounter the hundreds ٣٠٠ to ٩٠٠ written as two words, e.g. ثَلاث مِئَة . مِئَة stands in the (genitive) *singular* in these compounds, however they are written.
- The hundreds, thousands and millions are in fact nouns which form a construct with a following indefinite noun. This means that مِئَتَان, أَلْفَان and مِلْيُونَان are dual nouns, i.e. they have an acc. / gen. case-ending ...يْن , and lose their final ...ن before the noun: مِئَتَا\مِئَتَيْ شَخْص 200 people.
- We also have 'indeterminate' plurals for ١٠٠ and ١٠٠٠ : مِئَات and أُلُوف. These are used only in a general sense, and can be followed by مِن with a possessive suffix or with a definite noun, to convey the meaning 'of ...':

مِئَات مِن النَّاس hundreds of people

مَع أُلُوف مِنْهُم with thousands of them

9. Ordinal numbers 1st to 10th

The ordinal numbers 'first' to 'tenth' decline normally, but since they almost always have the article, the case-ending can be ignored in short pronunciation. 'First' and 'second' need special attention:

1st الأَوَّل (m.), الأُولَى (f.) 2nd الثَّانِي (m.), الثَّانِيَة (f)

We have met الأَوَّل\الأُولَى in Appendix A, para. 17. Take care with the pronunciation of الثَّانِي\الثَّانِيَة ; the f. ending is ـيَة... *-iya*, not (ـيَّة... *-ī̆ya/ -ī̆yya*). The stress is on the first syllable of the ordinal number throughout: *ath-thā́niya*.

The remaining ordinals of this group have the measure فَاعِل :

3rd الثَّالِث 4th الرَّابِع 5th الخَامِس 6th السَّادِس

7th السَّابِع 8th الثَّامِن 9th التَّاسِع 10th العَاشِر

The feminine is formed regularly, by adding ـَة... : الرَّابِعَة, الثَّالِثَة (etc.)

These ordinals can be used in the same way as superlative adjectives:

أَوَّل مَرَّة\المَرَّة الأُولَى the first time

ثَالِث بِنَايَة\البِنَايَة الثَّالِثَة the third building

Learn also the expression ثَانِي يَوْم 'the next day' and one indefinite expression, مَرَّة ثَانِيَة 'another time', 'once again'.

10. Ordinal numbers 11th to 19th

The ordinal numbers 'eleventh' to 'nineteenth' vary for gender but not for case. Only the units are ordinal and definite; the tens keep their cardinal form. 'Eleventh' needs special care:

11th الحَادِي عَشَر (m.), الحَادِيَة عَشْرَة (f.) *(al-ḥā́diya 'ashra)*

For 'twelfth' to 'nineteenth' we simply take the cardinal number and put the units into the ordinal form:

13th الثَّالِث عَشَر\الثَّالِثَة عَشْرَة 14th الرَّابِع عَشَر\الرَّابِعَة عَشْرَة (etc.)

These ordinals are used only adjectivally, i.e. after the noun:

البَنْد الثَّامِن عَشَر Article 18 ('the eighteenth')

11. Ordinal numbers above 19th

The ordinal multiples of ten are identical to the cardinal numbers, but

they carry the article: المليُون, الأَلف, المئَة; الثَّلاثُون, العشرُون.
In the compound numbers, the units have the same form as in '11th' etc. Both parts of the compound have the article: الحَادي\الحَادِيَة والعشرُون; المئَة والثَالث etc.; '101st' and '1001st' have special forms, however:

101st المئَة والواحد\والواحدَة 1001st الأَلف والواحد\والواحدَة

You will also encounter, in newspapers, المِئَوِي\المِئَوِيَّة for '100th' and الأَلفِي\الأَلفِيَّة for '1000th'.

12. Fractions

'Half' is نصف, broken pl. أَنْصَاف. Fractions from 'third' to 'tenth' have the measure فُعْل, broken pl. أَفْعَال:

3rd	ثُلْث, pl. أَثْلاث	4th	رُبْع	5th	خُمْس	6th	سُدْس
7th	سُبْع	8th	ثُمْن	9th	تُسْع	10th	عُشْر

ثُلثَا السِّعْر $^{2}/_{3}$ of the price

ثَلاثَة أَرْبَاع الحَجْم (*thalāthat 'arbā'*) $^{3}/_{4}$ of the volume

Fractions above 'tenth' are expressed with the cardinal number, so:

عَشَرَة عَلَى\مِن اِثْنَي عَشَر (*'ashara 'alā / min ithn'ashar*) $^{10}/_{12}$

13. 'I, II, III' etc.

Just as we use Roman numerals and letters of the alphabet to number paragraphs and the like, so Arabic uses letters of the alphabet. Every letter has its numerical value, but only the first ten are widely known. They are remembered with a mnemonic expression أَبْجَد هَوَّز حُطِي:

أ بـ جـ د هـ و ز حـ طـ ي
١ ٠ ٩٨ ٧٦٥ ٤٣٢١

أ I, i, A, a ب II, ii, B, b ج III, iii, C, c (etc.)

14. Adverbial numbers

The adverbial forms of the lower numbers are often used to number paragraphs etc., where English uses the cardinal forms:

أَوَّلاً 1, first(ly) ثَانِيًا 2, second(ly) ثَالِثًا 3, third(ly) (etc.)

15. Clock

Time on the hour is expressed with السَّاعَة 'the hour'; in formal announcements a speaker will follow the written grammar, using the cardinal number for 'one' and the ordinal numbers for the other hours - but in most situations, even when reading from a text, most Arabs use the simplified indefinite cardinal forms (see paras 2 and 3) throughout:

السَّاعَة الْوَاحِدَة *as-sā'a wāḥida* one o'clock

السَّاعَة الْخَامِسَة *as-sā'a khamsa* five o'clock

Time in the first half of the hour is expressed with وَ for 'past'; in the second half of the hour we use إِلاَّ 'except' as we do 'moins' in French. Quarters and halves are expressed with fractions, as in English, but note also the use of 'a third' for twenty minutes. The written and formal fraction is definite; the informal or simplified form is usually indefinite. Note the spoken form of 'half', *nuṣṣ*:

السَّاعَة الرَّابِعَة وَالرُّبْع *as-sā'a 'arba'a u-rub'* a quarter past four

السَّاعَة السَّادِسَة وَالثُّلُث *as-sā'a sitta u-thulth* twenty past six

السَّاعَة السَّابِعَة وَالنِّصْف *as-sā'a sab'a u-nuṣṣ* half past seven

السَّاعَة الثَّامِنَة إِلاَّ الثُّلُث *as-sā'a thamāniya 'illā thulth* twenty to eight

السَّاعَة التَّاسِعَة إِلاَّ الرُّبْع *as-sā'a tis'a 'illā rub'* a quarter to nine

Minutes are quoted with دَقِيقَة, pl. دَقَائِق ; this noun may be omitted with multiples of five minutes:

السَّاعَة الْعَاشِرَة وَخَمْس (دَقَائِق) *as-sā'a 'ashara u-khamsa (daqā'iq)* five (minutes) past ten

السَّاعَة الْحَادِيَة عَشْرَة إِلاَّ سَبْع دَقَائِق *as-sā'a 'iḥd'ashar 'illā sab'a daqā'iq* seven minutes to eleven

Time between twenty past and twenty to the hour may also be expressed with reference to the half-hour:

السَّاعَة الْعَاشِرَة وَالنِّصْف إِلاَّ خَمْس (دَقَائِق)

as-sā'a 'ashara u-nuṣṣ 'illā khamsa 25 twenty-five past ten

'at' is فِي : فِي السَّاعَة الثَّامِنَة *fi s-sā'a thamāniya* at 8 o'clock.

16. Calendar

We express the date with the masculine singular ordinal number. The

year is always preceded by سَنَة or عَام (both meaning 'year'), in construct with the number. 'On' is فِي:

فِي يَوْمِ الخَمِيسِ العِشْرِين مِن تِشْرِين الثَّانِي سَنَة أَلف وَتِسْع مِئَة وَ سَبعْ وَأَرْبَعِين

which even the most erudite Arab will quote in simplified form. i.e.:
fī yawm al-khamīs al-'ishrīn min tishrīn ath-thanī sanat 'alf u-tisi' mīya u-sab'a u-'arba'īn 'on Thursday 20th November 1947'

For clarity, dates in the international calendar are often followed by م (for مِيلاَدِيَّة 'A.D.'), while dates in the Muslim calendar are often followed by هـ (for هِجْرِيَّة, 'A.H.' or Anno Hegiræ, 'Year of the Flight' [of the Prophet Muhammad from Mecca to Medina, 622 A.D.]):

١٤١٨ هـ 1418 A.H. ٢٠٠٢ م 2002 A.D.

TEACH YOURSELF

GULF ARABIC

Jack Smart and Frances Altorfer

This is a complete course in understanding and speaking Gulf Arabic. If you have never learnt Gulf Arabic before, or if your Gulf Arabic needs brushing up, *Teach Yourself Gulf Arabic* will give you a thorough grounding in the basics and will take you onto a level where you can communicate with confidence.

The authors have created a practical course that is both fun and easy to work through. They explain everything along the way and give you plenty of opportunities to practise what you have learnt. The course structure means you can work at your own pace, arranging your learning to suit your needs.

Based on the Council of Europe's guidelines on language learning, the course contains:

- Graded units of dialogues, culture notes, grammar and exercises
- Pronunciation sections
- A Gulf Arabic–English and English–Gulf Arabic vocabulary

By the end of the course you'll be able to communicate effectively and appreciate the culture of Gulf Arabic-speaking countries.

TEACH YOURSELF

ARABIC

J.R. Smart

This is a complete course in written and spoken Arabic. If you have never learnt Arabic before, or if your Arabic needs brushing up, *Teach Yourself Arabic* is for you.

Teach Yourself Arabic is unique. Jack Smart explains everything clearly along the way and gives you plenty of opportunities to practise what you have learnt. The graded structure means that you can work at you own pace, arranging your learning to suit your needs. The course contains:

- A detailed introduction to the Arabic script and pronunciation
- Units introducing and explaining the basic constructions of Arabic
- Further units of dialogues, reading passages, notes on culture and more functions of Arabic
- A section on the verb in Arabic
- A section on Arabic numerals

By the end of this course you will be able to take a fully active part in the everyday life and culture of Arabic-speaking countries.

11

TEACH YOURSELF

ARABIC VERBS AND ESSENTIAL GRAMMAR

John Mace

If you are learning Arabic or want to refresh your skills, and you need an easy guide to the formation and use of the written language, this book is for you. It gives:

- full coverage of the main tenses for over 350 frequently used Arabic verbs for quick-and-easy reference
- examples of the verbs in everyday use, with key words based on the verbs
- a glossary of approximately 1250 verbs, with details of the patterns they follow
- a brief guide to the other essential grammar of written Arabic

There are helpful hints on how and when various tenses are used. Verb categories and their patterns and conjugations are clearly explained.

Whatever your skill level, *Teach Yourself Arabic Verbs and Essential Grammar* will increase your knowledge and proficiency.

TEACH YOURSELF

Long-renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning—with more than 30 million copies sold worldwide—the *Teach Yourself* series includes over 200 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, sports, and other leisure activities.

NTC Publishing Group

US $14.95 / CAN $21.95

ISBN 0-8442-2685-8

9 780844 226859

51495